

V.PJ.  
AA2  
(2)

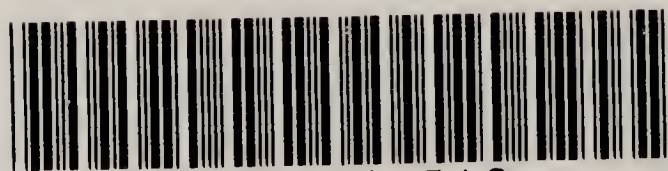


V. PJ. AA2 (2).

~~B. 185.139~~

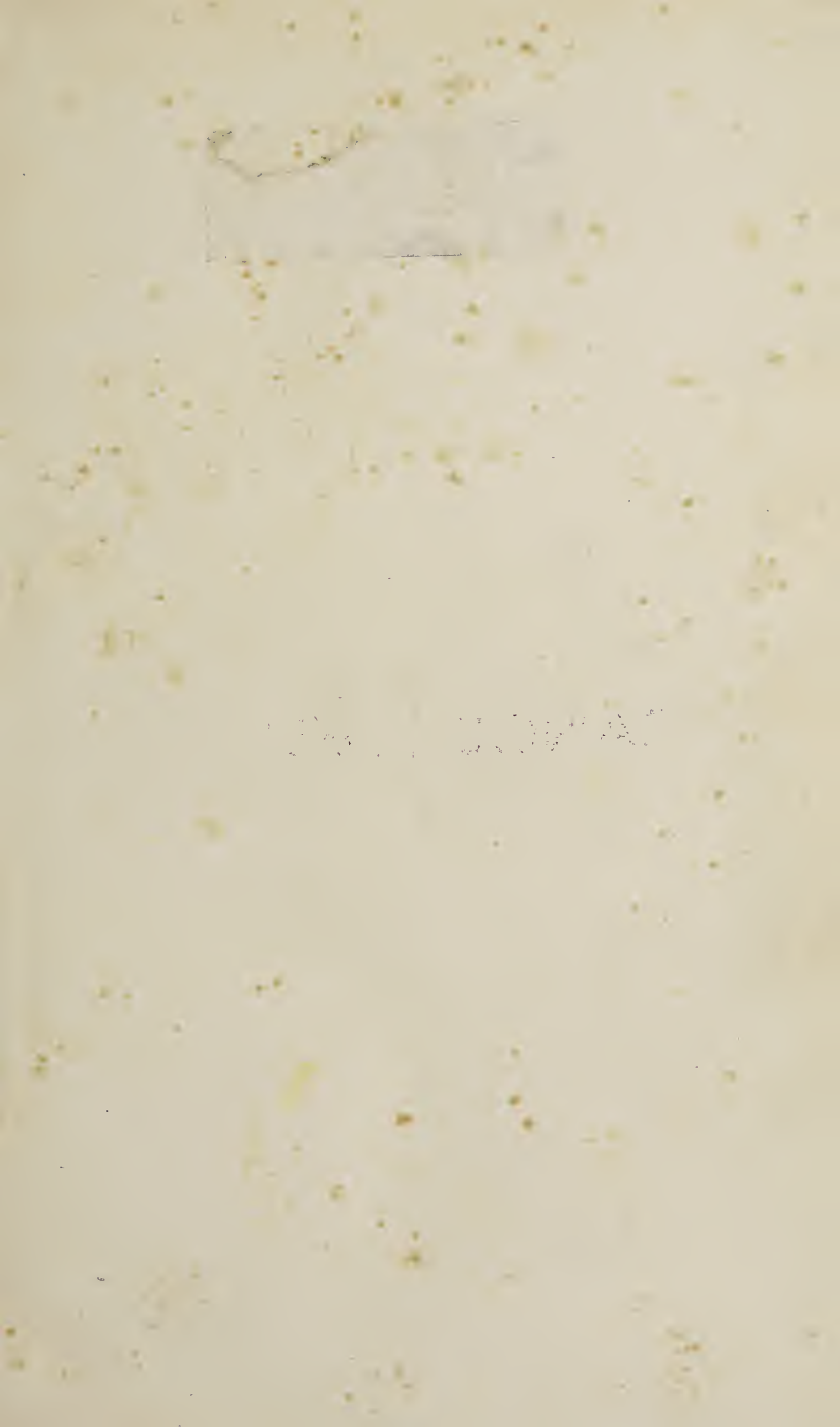
~~2.27.4~~

YBM  
EAR



22500224548


X 3 0316











Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2019 with funding from  
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b31350409>









Treatises  
of  
*Fistula in Ano*

AND OF FISTULÆ IN OTHER PARTS OF THE BODY,  
AND OF APOSTEMES MAKING FISTULÆ, AND OF HÆMORRHOID  
AND TENASMON, AND OF CLYSTERS,  
ALSO OF CERTAIN OINTMENTS, POWDERS AND OILS.

---

Early English Text Society.

Original Series. No. 139.

1910.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.









Sloane MS. 2002, leaf 24, back.

PLATE I. A Fourteenth-Century Master Surgeon operating for Fistula in Ano.



Treatises  
of  
Fistula in Ano  
Hæmorrhoids, and Clysters

BY

JOHN ARDERNE,

FROM

AN EARLY FIFTEENTH-CENTURY MANUSCRIPT TRANSLATION.

EDITED,

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, ETC.,

BY

D'ARCY POWER, F.R.C.S. ENG.

SURGEON TO, AND LECTURER ON SURGERY AT, ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43 GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.

1910.

Y  
V. P. J. A A 2



Original Series, 139.

---

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

To  
Joseph Frank Payne,  
M.D. OXON., F.R.C.P. LOND.,  
THESE TREATISES  
OF ARDERNE  
ARE DEDICATED  
AS AN ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF HIS  
ZEAL IN THE CAUSE OF  
THE HISTORY OF ENGLISH MEDICINE.



LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

A Master of Surgery in the act of operating upon a fistula in ano. He wears the cap and gown of his degree		<i>Frontispiece</i>
PLATE I.	A Mastery of Surgery in the fourteenth century	<i>Facing page</i> 1
PLATE II.	The instruments used by John Arderne in the cure of fistula, from a fifteenth-century manuscript in the British Museum (Sloane 2002) . . . . .	<i>page</i> 10
PLATE III.	The instruments used in the operation of a fistula in ano from the early fifteenth-century manuscript (Sloane 6) printed in this book. The instruments named from above downwards are:—the sequere me or probe: the syringa or syringe: the acus rostrata or snowted needle: the frænum Cæsaris or fourfold thread: the cochlear or shield: the tendiculum and wrayste or vertile (cf. p. 112). The left-hand figure shows the surgeon probing a sinus in the buttock; the right-hand figure shows the tendiculum, wrayste and frænum Cæsaris in position just before two sinuses are laid open in the left buttock. The snowted needle is about to be drawn through a series of fistulæ in the right buttock . . . . .	<i>Facing page</i> 10
PLATE IV.	A series of drawings to illustrate the various occupations of a leech . . . . .	<i>page</i> 99

## FOREWORDS

THE history of mediæval medicine, says Prof. E. Nicaise,<sup>1</sup> has been divided into four great epochs. The first, lasting from the fifth to the eleventh century, was remarkable for the Arabian school of medicine. The second period embraced the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and witnessed the rise of the schola Salernitana: it was the time of the Crusades and of that intermingling of the East and West from which sprang the marvellous work of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The work of the third period was all too short, and was brought to a sudden close by the Black Death which ravaged the world in 1348-9. It is properly described as the beginning of the modern era, the pre-Renaissance. A mere list of the Universities established will give some idea of the intellectual activity of the time. Montpellier (1137); Paris (1176); Oxford (1200); Cambridge (1209); Padua (1222); Naples (1224); Salamanca (1230); Toulouse (1230); Orléans (1231); Valladolid (1250); Seville (1254); Coimbra-Lisbon (1290); Lerida (1300); Avignon (1303); Rome (1303); Grenoble (1332); Angers (1337); Pisa (1343); Prague (1347); Florence (1349); Perpignan (1349); Huesca (1359); Cracovia (1364); Pavia (1365); Orange (1365); Vienna (1365); Erfurt (1379); Heidelberg (1385); Cologne (1388); Buda (1389).<sup>2</sup> The fourth period was retrograde. Wars abroad and economic troubles at home seemed to have crushed the spirit of the few survivors from the previous generation.

John Arderne belongs to the thirteenth century in spirit and in thought, although the accident of birth placed him in the next generation. He was well educated, and he reflects the current ideas of his time just as every well-educated surgeon at the present day is an epitome of his surroundings. Nothing is known of his history except for the autobiographical details given in the various manuscripts of his works and a small body of floating tradition which has been handed down through the centuries.

<sup>1</sup> "La grande chirurgie de Guy de Chauliac." Paris, 1890, pp. x-xv.

<sup>2</sup> The dates appended to the Universities are merely intended to show when each was known to be actually in existence—a few were created, the majority developed from small beginnings.

## BIOGRAPHICAL FACTS.

There seems to be little doubt that he was a member of the family of Arderne, or Arden, who claimed descent from Saxon times. The best known representative of the family was Turchill or Turketil, styled de Warwic in Domesday, and De Eardene in the Register of Abingdon Abbey, "being one of the first here in England that, in imitation of the Normans, assumed a surname."<sup>1</sup> The Ardernes were Lords of Watford in Northamptonshire from 1140, and spread thence to Cheshire and Staffordshire. In the Aldford, Cheshire, branch the name of John was borne hereditarily by John de Arderne (fl. 1220); Sir John de Arderne (1266–1308?); Sir John de Arderne (1307–1349); and John de Arderne (fl. 1332).<sup>2</sup> It was possibly the last-named John Arderne<sup>3</sup> who received a grant of land in Connaught from Edward the Black Prince (Appendix, p. 105), and who is mentioned in John of Gaunt's Register<sup>4</sup> as having been appointed Seneschal of the manor of Passenham in Northamptonshire on October 7th, 1374. The name of John Arderne, or John de Arderne, therefore, was well known in London,<sup>5</sup> in the midlands and in the counties of Cheshire and Lancaster during the fourteenth century, but there is no evidence forthcoming at present to show to which branch of the family the surgeon belonged.

The date of Arderne's birth is fixed by his own statement that he was seventy in the first year of the reign of Richard II. Edward III died at Sheen on June 21, 1377, and was immediately succeeded by Richard II. Arderne, therefore, was born in 1307.<sup>6</sup> It is clear too that he practised abroad, for he says that he tried a remedy "in foreign

<sup>1</sup> Dugdale, 675.

<sup>2</sup> "Parentalia," Genealogical Memoirs, compiled by George Ormerod, D.C.L. F.R.S., privately printed 1851.

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps it was this John Arderne who is mentioned in Rymer's "Fœdera" (vol. ii, part 2, p. 119, col. 2). He was commanded to attend the King in war to Guienne in the year 1324.

<sup>4</sup> I, 337, leaf 64, back. I am indebted to the kindness of Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith for this reference.

<sup>5</sup> In London John Arderne was a Fishmonger in 1361, and Richard Arderne was a prominent Skinner in 1376. John Arderne, esquire, was living in the parish of St. Mary Aldermariachurch in 1425. (Dr. Reginald Sharpe's "Calendar of Wills—Court of Husting." London, part 2, pp. 63 and 439.)

<sup>6</sup> Sloane MS. 75, leaf 146. De Curâ Oculi. "Et sciant presentes et futuri quoad Ego Magister Johannes de Ardern, cirurgorum minimus, hunc libellum propriâ manu meâ exaravi apud London; anno, videlicet regis Ricardi 2di primo et etatis me lxx. ("And be it known to present and future generations that I, Master John of Ardern, the least of the surgeons, scribbled this book with my own hand in London in the year, viz. the first year of the reign of King Richard the Second and in the seventieth year of my age.")



parts upon one King and two Bishops.”<sup>1</sup> I have no doubt in my own mind that the king was John of Gaunt, “Roy de Castell et de Leon, Duc de Lancastre,” who was always addressed as “Monseigneur d’Espagne.”<sup>2</sup> In 1376 John of Gaunt was the best hated man in England, says Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith in his valuable study of his life. It was undesirable, therefore, John Arderne would think, to draw too close attention to the fact that he had once been attached to his person, for the book was written in this very year 1376. The precaution was wise in view of the events which happened when a London mob burnt the Duke’s palace at the Savoy in 1381 and killed his physician, merely because he was a trusted and valued friend.<sup>3</sup> Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith<sup>4</sup> says that the name of the physician was William de Appleton, and that he was retained by the Duke of Lancaster at 40 marcs per annum for life. An interesting example of the caution which was habitual to Ardern in this matter is to be found in two of the manuscripts in the British Museum. The one<sup>5</sup> tells of a certain noble knight in the service of the Duke of Lancaster at Algeçiras, in Spain, who had a sudden attack of facial paralysis, which so twisted his mouth that it was drawn back nearly to his ear and prevented him from speaking. The manuscript continues, “I, the aforesaid John Ardern, made a cure of him.” The second manuscript<sup>6</sup> gives an account of the same case, but, instead of giving any name to the leech who cured him, it merely says “for whom the King of Spain’s doctor made a cure in this way.”<sup>7</sup> The latter MS. is a magnificently written copy on vellum, with such carefully executed illustrations that it is usually exhibited in the British Museum as an example of fourteenth-century work. It was possibly a presentation copy to John of Gaunt himself; the first one is a poorly written paper manuscript, such as would have an ordinary

<sup>1</sup> MS. bought at the Towneley Sale. It is now in the Surgeon General’s Library at Washington, U.S.A. The extract on leaf 54 is, “Hoc probavi in uno rege et duobus episcopis in transmarinis partibus.” It is quoted in the “Johns Hopkins Bulletin,” vol. v, 1894, pp. 21 and 67, but I am indebted to the courtesy of Lieut.-Col. Walter D. McCaw, Librarian S. G. O., for a complete transcription of the passage.

<sup>2</sup> “John of Gaunt,” by Sydney Armitage-Smith, p. 258.

<sup>3</sup> Johannes de ordine Minorum in armis bellicis strenuus, in physica peritissimus, domino Johanni duci Lancastriae familiarissimus.”—Knighton’s Chronicle-Rolls Series, ii, 133.

<sup>4</sup> *Op. cit.* p. 248, note.

<sup>5</sup> Sloane MS. 3548.

<sup>6</sup> Sloane 29301.

<sup>7</sup> “Quidam miles nobilis Ducis Lancastriae apud Agezir in Hispania passus est subito torturam oris ita quod os ejus distractum fuit fere retro aurem nec loqui poterat. Ego Predictus Joh. Ardern talem feci sibi curam” (MS. 3548). “Cui medicus regis hyspaniae talem curam fecit,” says MS. 29301.



circulation. It was copied at a much later date, for the scribe, by mistake, has written *Henrici de Arderne*, and it belonged to Robert May.

Haeser<sup>1</sup> says that perhaps Arderne was educated at Montpellier and practised in France as a military surgeon on the English side during the earlier and most brilliant years of the One Hundred Years' War. E. H., who translated his "*Latin practises and consailes concerning the helping of all diseases*,"<sup>2</sup> in the early part of the seventeenth century, is responsible for the statement that he practised at Antwerp, and he certainly knew a few words of Flemish, for, in speaking of the Nightshade, he says that in Flanders it is called "*Naghtstach*" (p. 32).

Dr. Milward<sup>3</sup> believed that he was present at the battle of Crecy, but this I take leave to doubt. He practised, or at any rate he treated patients, in Wiltshire,<sup>4</sup> and from 1349 until 1370 he lived at Newark in Nottinghamshire.<sup>5</sup> He came to London in 1370, but I have found no record of where he lived. It was the year of his grand climacteric, in an age when men lived a much shorter time than now, yet he practised with vigour and success for five or six years. By this time he had secured a competence and he set himself to write. In 1376 he issued his treatise on the cure of *Fistula in ano* which is here printed, "written," as he says, "with my own hand, in the year when the strong and warlike Lord" (Edward the Black Prince) "was taken to God."<sup>6</sup> It is possible that the treatise on *Clysters*<sup>7</sup> was already written; it is certain that the treatise "*De cura oculorum*" was written in 1377,<sup>8</sup> but we know nothing more than this about John Arderne. There is nothing to show that he was living in the reign of Henry IV, who came to the throne in 1399. The reference to Henry IV (p. 74), "With this medicine was kyng Henry of ynglond cured of the going out of the lure," is a side-note written in a different hand in some of the MSS. and has only crept into the English text in

<sup>1</sup> "*Lehrbuch d. geschichte der Med.*," ed. 3, Jena, 1875, i, 784.

<sup>2</sup> Sloane MS. 2271.

<sup>3</sup> A circular invitational letter . . . concerning . . . British Physical and Chirurgical Authors, by Edward Milward, M.D., Lond. 1740, p. 23.

<sup>4</sup> "*Hoc probavi in vicecomite Wilteshure*," says the MS. in the Surgeon-General's Library at Washington, U.S.A., quoted in the "*Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin*," vol. v, 1894, pp. 21 and 67, and I am again indebted to Lieut.-Col. McCaw for verifying the reference.

<sup>5</sup> Teste all the MSS.

<sup>6</sup> "*Et eodem anno quo Dominus strenuus et bellicosus Princeps migravit ad Dominum, scripsi libellum istum manu propria, viz. Millesimo cccclxxvi. . . . quem Deus absolvat, quia fuit flos Milicie Mundi sine pare.*"

<sup>7</sup> See postea, p. 74 *et seqq.*

<sup>8</sup> P. x, note 6, of these Forewords.

process of time. The Hunterian copy of the Commentary in English on “*Aegidii Corboliensis tractatus metricus de Urinis*,” which mentions the leech of “our Lord King the most illustrious prince Henry the Fourth, on whose soul may God have Mercy, Amen,” was clearly written after 20 March, 1413, and the scribe has forgotten Arderne’s right name, for he says that it is written by Master John Arderon.<sup>1</sup>

It seems to me that the easiest way to correlate the various facts recorded about John Arderne is to assume that he was attached at first to Henry Plantagenet, the first Duke of Lancaster, and afterwards to John of Gaunt, who married his younger daughter Blanche as his first wife—the White Lady of Chaucer’s “*Book of the Duchess*.” Henry, as Earl of Derby, was at Antwerp in 1338, and John Arderne is said to have practised there. Henry, in company with the Earl of Salisbury, fought against the Moors at the siege of Algeçiras in 1343, when much use was made of Greek fire, and gunpowder is said to have been employed for the first time. John Arderne had been to Algeçiras because he treated a knight there who was suffering from a trivial complaint from which he would have recovered during the long journey, if he had visited Arderne in England. Arderne was interested both in Greek fire and in gunpowder, for he gives a receipt for making *Ignis Græcus* and for an artificial fire to burn ships. Henry of Lancaster was Lieutenant and Captain of Aquitaine in 1345, and was granted the town of Bergerac with the right of coinage in 1347. John Arderne nowhere says specifically that he served with the Earl of Derby, Duke of Lancaster, but he betrays an intimate knowledge of this campaign, for he gives the names of the towns in the order in which they were reached by the invading army and not in their geographical succession; his knowledge is even remarkable, for he gives the towns in the order in which they were reached by a single column of the army, and he was writing more than thirty years after the events.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> “*Ego Magister Johannes Arderonn hoc opusculum composui de judiciis urinarum per colores et contenta secundum indicium Egidii et Ypocratis, Walterii, Gilis, Gilberti, Gordoni, Johannis de Sancto Amando, Ysaac, Auicenne, theophili, Galyeni, Galterii et tholomei in medicinam et medicum domini regis illustrissimi principis henrici quarti cujus anime propicietur deus. Amen.*” The MS. is in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow, No. 328, U. 7, 22 (cf. Notes, 59/32).

<sup>2</sup> “The forsaid sir Adam (p. 1, line 12 *et seqq.*) forsooth suffering from fistula in ano asked counsel of all the leeches and surgeons that he could find in Gascony, at Bordeaux, at Bergerac, Toulouse, Narbonne and Poitiers.” Arderne seems to have had a soft place in his heart for Narbonne. He calls one of his favourite plaisters *Emplastron de Nerbon*, and says, “*Istud emplastron dicitur Norbon quia quamvis sit nigrum tamen bonum.*” (“This emplastre is called Noirbon, for although it be black nevertheless it is good.” P. 91, l. 31.)



The campaign ended and the Duke of Lancaster returned to London, 13th January, 1347-8, and died of the plague at Leicester in 1361. John Arderne may then have attached himself to John of Gaunt, the son-in-law of the Duke, who called himself King of Castile and Leon from his marriage with Constance, daughter of Don Pedro I of Castile, in September 1371, until his own daughter Katherine married Enrique III in 1388, and became Queen of Castile and Leon in 1390. If Arderne was really surgeon to the King of Castile it must have been after the year 1370, and this perhaps gives the reason why John Arderne left Newark after he had practised there for so many years. Mr. Armitage-Smith tells me, however, that there is no record of such an appointment in the Duke's roll which he has lately published.

#### ARDERNE AS A SURGEON.

John Arderne is a good example of a type of surgeon who has happily never been absent from England. He is the earliest example that we know at present, but he was followed in direct succession by Thomas Morstede, who was present at Agincourt in 1415, and was buried in St. Olave, Upwell, in the Jewry, in 1450; by Richard Ferris, who wrote nothing, but was revered as their master by many succeeding generations of surgeons in London. He died, an old man, in 1566, and had seen much service in the wars of Henry VIII. William Clowes (1540-1604), my great predecessor at St. Bartholomew's Hospital, learnt much of him. Clowes handed on the tradition to John Woodall (1556-1643), and Woodall to Richard Wiseman (1622-1676), the surgeon of the Commonwealth. Wiseman was succeeded by Samuel Sharp (1700 (?) - 1778) of Guy's Hospital, and by Percivall Pott (1714-1788) at St. Bartholomew's. The distinguishing mark of each was the possession of the qualities which make an English gentleman as well as a fine surgeon. They were all men of good education, wide experience, and sound judgment. John Arderne possessed these qualities in abundance. He preferred personal experience to the teaching of the schools. He would rather learn by experiment than by authority, and with characteristic frankness he related his failures as well as his successes (p. 83). He was not in advance of his time, for he believed, like every one else, in Astrology (p. 16). He kept his methods as secret as he could by giving fancy names to his ointments and plaisters (p. 89), and by writing his charm in Greek letters "*ne a laicis perspicietur*" (p. 103).

John Arderne wrote on *Fistula*, on diseases of the Eye, on Clysters, on Bleeding; on Plants and their Uses, and he also published a common-place book containing various receipts and notes of cases arranged without any method. There exists also his Commentary on Giles de Corbeil's metrical treatise "*de Urinis*" (p. xiii, note 1), and he is the author of a "*Scala Sanitatis contra plagas*." By some means he had access to a large medical library, for he quotes the very words of the manuscripts to which he refers in his treatise on *Hæmorrhoids* (p. 55, line 3), and it is evident that they were lying before him as he wrote. It is clear from the number of manuscripts which still remain in the various libraries (Bibliography, pp. xxxiv and xxxv) that Arderne's works were read and valued by his contemporaries and immediate successors. They were written originally in Latin, and, as he is careful to explain, with his own hand, but English translations were soon produced. The Latin is of the colloquial type like that in which the "*Epistolæ Obscurorum Virorum*" was written in the early years of the sixteenth century, neither better nor worse, and when Arderne was at fault for a Latin word he never scrupled to use its English or French equivalent. His handwriting was as crabbed as his style, if, as there is some reason for believing, the Sloane MS., No. 75, is a holograph in so far as it deals with diseases of the eyes. The treatise on *Fistula in Ano* is certainly the most interesting and practical of Arderne's works. John Read published an abstract of a part of this treatise in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, but it has never been printed in full until now, and for this purpose an early fifteenth-century translation has been selected.

#### THE TREATMENT OF FISTULA IN ANO.

Arderne's attention was no doubt called to the subject of *Fistula* by the actual cases which came to him for relief. The hardship of the Hundred Years' War must have produced many cases of ischio-rectal abscess which ended in fistula. Wet, cold, long hours in the saddle weighted down by the heavy armour of the time, would readily lead to this condition in the knightly class; whilst the sedentary habits and gross feeding causing chronic constipation would account for it in the religious and civic population. Tubercle, too, was rife in the fourteenth century, but it would be interesting to learn whether the Black Death left an aftermath of boils and abscesses. The work is full of detail, and shows the author to be original, thoughtful, observant, and a master of his art both in theory and practice. He



says, very rightly, that the treatment of fistula in ano had fallen into disrepute because it was a troublesome condition which brought very little credit to surgeons, whilst it required long and patient treatment for which the majority of the sufferers were not prepared to pay. An examination of the writings of the immediate predecessors and contemporaries of John Arderne shows that these statements are literally correct. To go back no farther than Albucasis, who died in 1013,<sup>1</sup> it was taught that complete fistulæ were incurable, and that all operations and the application of ointments was but labour in vain. Some believed that a cure could be obtained occasionally, and Albucasis advised, therefore, that a small copper or iron probe should be introduced into the bowel through the fistula which should then be laid open in its whole extent until the probe fell out. But if the bleeding were so severe as to stop the operation, or the surgeon was afraid of the hæmorrhage, the actual cautery might be used. In other cases, Albucasis taught, a probe armed with a ligature of five strands might be passed from the external orifice of the fistula through its track into the rectum. The end of the probe was then caught by the finger and drawn out through the anus bringing with it one end of the ligature. The two ends of the ligature, the one hanging out of the fistula and the other from the anus, were then tied tightly together, care being taken to include as much tissue as possible. The knot was tightened on the second or third day, and as often afterwards as was necessary. The fistula was thus cured by the ligature cutting its way out, the track behind it healing by granulation.

William de Salicet (fl. 1245), who taught surgery at Bologna, and was considered the most skilful surgeon of his age, had so great a dread of fistula that he wrote:<sup>2</sup> "When the fistula is complete it is assuredly so difficult to cure that it is better and more honourable for the surgeon to give up the case at once. But if he decide to undertake it the orifice should be dilated with a sponge tent and the whole track burnt with the actual cautery. If this fails the fistula may be laid open into the bowel by a seton of silk, horsehair or cow's hair pulled to and fro daily like a saw until it cuts its way out; but," he adds, as a warning, "I have seen bad results from this method of cure."

Lanfrank, the most distinguished pupil of William de Salicet, who

<sup>1</sup> "Methodus Medendi certa, clara et brevis," Lib. ii, cap. 810. Basil, 1541, p. 132.

<sup>2</sup> "Chirurgie de Guillaume de Salicet." Paul Pifteau. Toulouse, 1898, p. 139.

died in 1306, the year before John Arderne was born, contents himself with saying that *fistulæ* are incurable, and he utters a lamentable cry against those who would attempt to operate even if it were only by applying a corrosive.<sup>1</sup>

Henri de Mondeville (1260(?)–1320(?)) merely enlarged the orifice of the fistula with a tent, and utterly condemns the teaching of the school of Salernum, as represented by Roger and Roland, who would operate and afterwards apply a painful corrosive,<sup>2</sup>—and de Mondeville was in Paris what Arderne was in London, a first-rate surgeon.

Guy de Chauliac (d. 1368), prince of the mediæval writers of surgical text-books, published his “Great Surgery” thirteen years before Arderne wrote his treatise on *Fistula*. After the manner of text-books various operations are described for the cure of fistula, each with insufficient details, and the reader is left in doubt as to which, if any, is to be employed.<sup>3</sup>

#### ARDERNE'S OPERATION FOR FISTULA.

John Arderne's operation is clearly a modification of the method recommended by Albucasis, and, like a good surgeon, he preferred a clean incision to fretting the fistula through with a ligature tied tightly. He recommends that the patient should be secured in the lithotomy position. A probe—called appropriately enough, *sequere me*—is passed through the fistula until it is felt in the rectum. The eye of the probe is then threaded with a ligature of four strands—the *frænum Cæsaris*—which is drawn through the fistula as the probe is pulled out of the rectum until one end hangs out of the anus and the other from the opening of the fistula. These two ends are knotted together and the whole ligature is tightened by means of a peg—the *wrayste*—fixed into the widest part of a gorget—the *tendiculum*—in the same way that a violin peg tightens the strings passing round it. The use of the ligature is partly to control the bleeding and partly to maintain a correct line while the fistula is being divided. The gorget or *tendiculum* is pushed well up into the fistula and a grooved director with a curved end—the *acus rostrata*, or snowted needle—is passed along it until the end projects into the rectum where the probe had

<sup>1</sup> Lanfrank's “*Science of Chirurgie*,” Early English Text Society, No. 102, pp. 292–3.

<sup>2</sup> “*Chirurgie de Maître Henri de Mondeville*.” E. Nicaise. Paris, 1893, p. 465.

<sup>3</sup> “*La Grande Chirurgie de Guy de Chauliac, composée en l'an 1363*.” E. Nicaise. Paris, 1890, p. 134.



been previously inserted. A shield—the cochlearia, or spoon—with a depression in its centre is then passed through the anus until the grooved director engages in the depressed notch. The object of this shield is partly to prevent the surgeon cutting down upon his own finger and partly to protect the opposite wall of the rectum should the patient struggle or make a sudden movement at the moment the fistula is divided. A scalpel—the razor or lance—is passed along the groove in the acus rostrata, and the fistula is cleanly divided along its whole length by drawing the knife, the acus rostrata, and the spoon out of the rectum with a single movement, the ligature or frænum Cæsaris coming away at the same time. Each branch of the fistula may be laid open in turn if the patient can bear it, or any farther operation can be postponed, as Arderne had found by experience that when the main track was laid open the other channels often healed of themselves.

The operation was a good one, except that his instruments were needlessly cumbersome, and would cure a fistula equally well at the present day, but the great advance which Arderne made was in avoiding the corrosive and irritating after-treatment used by every one else. It is difficult now to put ourselves in his position and to realize what an amount of originality it meant for a surgeon in the fourteenth century to leave a wound alone and not to try and kill it with the actual cautery or with caustics. Such a method was contrary to all teaching, and would seem to be undertaken with the very greatest risk. Yet John Arderne only applied a little oil of roses with the white or yolk of an egg, and he washed the wound with tepid water and a sponge. He never changed the dressings oftener than he could help (p. 87), but he was careful to see that they were not soiled, whilst his experience with simple enemata led him to prefer a clyster of salt and water to the powerful purgatives in ordinary use. Some of his patients recovered, therefore, and he was not slow to advertise the fact; but the weight of authority was against him, and in spite of his success, surgeons preferred to mundify their wounds and use incarnatives for nearly five hundred years after his death.

#### THE MASTER SURGEONS.

The position which Arderne occupied was perfectly well recognized both in England and France, and was identical with that which we occupy at the present time as consulting and operating surgeons. In France such surgeons were known in Arderne's time as surgeons of the



long robe, to distinguish them from the barbers practising surgery, who were surgeons of the short robe. In England the prefix of Master indicated the difference, and John Arderne is careful therefore always to style himself Magister Johannes de Arderne, Magister being his title as Master of Surgery, which distinguished him, on the one hand, from the Doctor of Physic who was his superior, and, on the other, from the Barber and the Apothecary who ranked below him. The Master Surgeons formed a small guild in London from very early times, and records of persons entrusted with its supervision are known as early as 1369.<sup>1</sup> Arderne calls himself "*cirurgorum minimus*" (p. x, note 6), and he was probably admitted a member of this guild when he came to London in 1370, in which case Master John Dunheued, Master John Hyndstoke and Master Nicholas Kildesby would be three of his colleagues. The guild never contained many members, but what it lacked in numbers it made up in influence, and, in spite of many struggles with the more numerous Guild of Barbers, it was able to hold its own for many years. The Guild of Surgeons united for a short time with the Physicians about 1423, and finally became merged into the United Company of Barbers and Surgeons in 1540. But it is unnecessary to trace the growth and development of the Guild of Surgeons, and those who are interested in it will find a fuller account in "*The Medical Magazine*" for 1899. The present treatise contains slight references to the struggle which was going on between the Surgeons and the Barbers at the time it was written. There is the case, for instance (p. 100), of the rich fishmonger who had a lacerated wound of the arm which was made worse by the incompetent treatment of a barber who had stuffed it with corrosive dressings. Arderne tore off the dressings and replaced them by a soothing fomentation which allowed the patient to have a good night's rest.

But the human interest of the treatises here published is concentrated in Arderne's description of the qualities required in a good surgeon (p. 4). It sets forth his ideal of the morals and etiquette of the highest class of surgeons—the Masters of Surgery—during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and shows that it was at least as high as it is amongst the best men of the present day. Pity, charity, continence in all things, the patient first but the fee not unimportant, because then as now the labourer was worthy of his hire, were the distinguishing characteristics of the educated surgeon.

Henri de Mondeville gives similar rules in somewhat greater detail.

<sup>1</sup> South's "*Craft of Surgery*," p. 17. Messrs. Cassell & Co., London, 1886.

I quote partly from Prof. E. Nicaise's splendid edition of his works,<sup>1</sup> and partly from the contemporary translation into French, published by Dr. A. Bos:<sup>2</sup> "A Surgeon ought to be fairly bold. He ought not to quarrel before the laity, and although he should operate wisely and prudently, he should never undertake any dangerous operation unless he is sure that it is the only way to avoid a greater danger. His limbs, and especially his hands, should be well-shaped with long, delicate and supple fingers which must not be tremulous. He ought to promise a cure to every patient, but he should tell the parents or the friends if there is any danger. He should refuse as far as possible all difficult cases, and he should never mix himself up with desperate ones. He may give advice to the poor for the love of God only, but the wealthy should be made to pay well. He should neither praise himself nor blame others, and he should not hate any of his colleagues. He ought to sympathise with his patients in their distress and fall in with their lawful requests so far as they do not interfere with the treatment. Patients, on the other hand, should obey their surgeons implicitly in everything appertaining to their cure. The surgeon's assistants must be loyal to their surgeon and friendly to his patients. They should not tell the patient what the surgeon said unless the news is pleasant, and they should always appear cheerful. They must agree amongst themselves as well as with the patients, and they must not be always grumbling, because this inspires fear and doubt in the patient."

De Mondeville then shows how an honest surgeon may be replaced and damaged by one who is less conscientious, for he says: "A rich man has the beginning of an inflammation. He calls in an upright surgeon, who says after examining him, 'Seigneur, there is no need for any operation here, because nature will relieve herself, etc.; but if the inflammation gets worse, send for me.' It then happens that the patient calls in another man who is a quack, and he is told, 'Seigneur, you have a great deal of inflammation, I can feel it inside, and if you are not treated at once you will certainly regret it.' This surgeon then sets to work and makes an inflammation, which he afterwards cures, so that the whole proceeding redounds to his credit and profit, for he discovered an inflammation which did not exist, whilst the first surgeon is damaged both in his reputation and his pocket because he did not find out what was not there."

<sup>1</sup> "Chirurgie de Maître Henri de Mondeville, composée de 1306 à 1320," par Ed. Nicaise. Paris, 1893, pp. 91 *et seqq.*

<sup>2</sup> "Soc. des Anciens Textes Français." Paris, 1897, tome i, p. 140.



“Then again, one of these second-rate surgeons will come to a sick man who is wealthy, and will say to him, with the voice of an archangel—taking care that no witnesses are present—‘Seigneur, you must remember that you are the one who is ill and in pain. It is not your son or your nephew. It is you who are kept awake by the pain whilst your friends and servants sleep. Others won’t take care of you if you don’t take care of yourself. You are rich enough to get advice and to buy health and whatever else you want if you choose to do so. Riches are not more than health, nor is poverty worse than sickness. Have you not made the greater part of your money yourself and for yourself, so that if you are not a miser you can apply it to relieve your wants? Would to God that those who look after you so badly had your complaint. But all this is between ourselves, and what I tell you is only out of pity for you and for your good.’ Then, in the absence of the patient, he speaks to the relatives and says, ‘Seigneurs, this man has the greatest confidence in you, and, truly, if you lose him, you will lose an excellent friend. It is not to your credit either to let him go without advice, for if he died without advice you would be blamed everlastingly, even if it made him as poor as Job. He is really in great danger, and it is a serious case, but nature sometimes does better than we have any right to expect. He is sure to die if no one treats him, but if he is properly treated it is just possible that he will escape and not die. If he dies it won’t be the result of the treatment, because he is nearly dead already, his only chance is to have a consultation, etc. I am speaking to you as a friend and not as a doctor.’

“But it is quite another matter when this same surgeon has to treat a poor man, for he says, ‘I am really sorry for you, and I would gladly help you for the love of God only. But I am very busy just now with a lot of difficult cases, and, besides, the season is not a very favourable one for an operation. You can’t afford to buy what is necessary for your case, such as drugs and dressings, so I would put it off until the summer. You will then be able to get the herbs and whatever else is wanted and so save expense. The summer, too, is the best time for the poor.’ When the same pauper comes back in the summer the surgeon says to him, ‘I am very sorry that I put you off in the winter and told you to wait until the summer, because the winter is really the best time. Summer is too hot and there is a fear of stirring up the disease. I should advise you to wait until the hot weather is over.’ And this goes on everlastingly, for this kind of surgeon never finds time to operate upon a pauper.”

De Mondeville classifies his patients according to their ability to pay fees. "The first class are paupers who must be treated for nothing; the second class are a little better off, and may send presents of fowls and ducks; they pay in kind. The third class are friends and relations who pay no fixed fee, but send victuals or presents in token of gratitude, but no money. Our assistants ought to suggest the presents to this class, saying behind our backs, and as if we knew nothing about it, when anything is said about money, 'No, indeed, the Master would not like it, and you would do much better to make him a little present, though I am sure that he does not expect anything.' Indeed, a sharp assistant sometimes makes more by such suggestions than the Master does by his operation, and it is just like doubling the fee on account of the horse when the Master makes his visits on horseback. Then there is a class embracing those who are notoriously bad payers, such as our nobility and their households, government officials, judges, baillies and lawyers, whom we are obliged to treat because we dare not offend them. In fact, the longer we treat these people the more we lose. It is best to cure them as quickly as possible, and to give them the best medicines. Lastly, there is a class who pay in full and in advance, and they should be prevented from getting ill at all, because we are paid a salary to keep them in health."

The difficulty of obtaining payment for operations in the fourteenth century must have been very great, for De Mondeville still further emphasizes it and says, "The chief object of the patient, and the one idea which dominates all his actions, is to get cured, and when once he is cured he forgets his own obligation and omits to pay; the object of the surgeon, on the other hand, is to obtain his money, and he should never be satisfied with a promise or a pledge, but he should either have the money in advance or take a bond for it. As the poet says, 'Sæpe fides data fallit, plegius plaidit, vadium valet—The promise is often broken, the security is worthless, the bond alone holds good.' " De Mondeville also thinks that it is better on the whole for the surgeon to be paid for what he does rather than by a retaining fee, because a salary is apt to make him so hopeful that he will think the blind can certainly see and the lame can walk or even run. The surgeon too must beware of those who will make infamous proposals to him, because from time immemorial it has been an article of faith with the common people that every surgeon is a thief, a murderer or a swindler. He should also be careful to estimate the strength of a patient before he operates. If a patient dies of the operation and not of mere weakness the surgeon is held excused so long as the friends



think the wound looks healthy, but if the wound looks badly the surgeon is credited with the death even though the patient has simply died of weakness. The surgeon must not put too much faith in appearances. The rich have a nasty habit of coming to him in old clothes, or, if they are properly dressed as befits their station they invent all kinds of excuses for beating down his fees. They say Charity is a flower when they find a man who helps the poor, and think that a surgeon ought to assist the unfortunate, but they never consider that a like rule is binding upon them. "I often say to such folk," De Mondeville adds, "Well, then, pay me for yourself and for three paupers and I will cure them as well as you. But they never make any answer, and I have never yet found any one in any position, whether he was a cleric or a layman, who was rich enough, or rather honest enough, to pay what he had promised until he was made to do so." Lesser surgeons must have fared very badly if this was the experience of the surgeon to the King of France.

De Mondeville returns to the question of fees in another part of his book (Nicaise, *op. cit.* p. 199). "The surgeon ought to consider three things when a patient comes to see him and arrange about the fee for an operation. First, his own position; secondly, the condition of the patient; thirdly, the state of the disease. As regards himself the surgeon should think whether he is celebrated or at least better known than his colleagues, whether he is the only surgeon in the country, whether he is rich and not obliged to practise, whether he has enough cases to fill up his time, and whether he is on the point of undertaking more important cases. On the second point, viz. the condition of the patient. He either knows or he does not know him; if he knows him he is aware whether he is rich or poor, whether, for example, he is the nephew of a bishop or of an abbé. But if he does not know him he ought to make careful inquiries, or rather he ought to get his assistants to make them, because sometimes, indeed often, it happens that the rich come to the leech dressed like paupers. If the surgeon suspects this he should say to his patient, 'Seigneur, I have examined your case but I must think it over, and I should like to see you again when I have done so, because he who judges in haste repents at leisure,' and in the interval the surgeon should make inquiries. As to the third point, the surgeon should think of the disease whether it is serious, if it is difficult to cure, and if long attendance will be required, whether few people know how to treat it, if it is chronic, and if it presents any unusual characters.

"When the surgeon has considered all the points under these three

headings he ought to charge the patient boldly a very large fee, though he may moderate it according to circumstances. To a rich man he should say, 'The fee a surgeon ought to receive is a hundred pounds for this operation,' and if the patient is staggered by the sum he would continue, 'but I did not say that I was going to charge you that amount,' and thus little by little he lowers his fee. But he should always have a minimum for each operation and never go below it. In such cases it is more graceful for him to say, 'I am ready to do this operation as you and your friends wish, but I would rather do it for nothing to please you than for so small a fee.' And the surgeon should pretend that he has no living (prebende) nor capital except his profession, and that everything is as dear as possible, especially drugs, and ointment; that the fee is as nothing compared with his services; and the wages of all other artisans, masons, for example, have doubled of late. I repeat that the surgeon ought to charge the rich as much as possible and to get all he can out of them, provided that he does all he can to cure the poor. You then, Surgeons, if you operate conscientiously upon the rich for a sufficient fee and upon the poor for charity, you ought not to fear the ravages of fire, nor of rain nor of wind; you need not take orders or make pilgrimages nor undertake any work of that kind, because by your science you can save your souls alive, live without poverty and die in your houses. Live in peace and joy and rejoice because your recompense is so great in heaven, as necessarily follows from the words of the Saviour, spoken in the psalm by the mouth of His prophet, 'Beatus qui intelligit super egenum et pauperem. . .' For this reason surgeons enjoy such immunities and are free from all personal service and from all common burdens, such as the repair of walls, moats and roads, from the night watch in towns, and from all kinds of things. The Surgeons are classed as Surgeon-major and as Surgeons of the palace or Examiners, who are generally called *Archiatres* by the common people."

William of Salicet, another surgeon, experienced in war and of the same high standard as Arderne and De Mondeville, had written in 1275 ("Chirurgie de Guillaume de Salicet Achevée en 1275, Traduction et Commentaire, par Paul Pifteau." Toulouse, 1898, p. 3) in somewhat similar terms. He says a surgeon should grant the wishes of his patient so long as they do not interfere with the operation. He ought also to comfort his patient as far as possible by kind actions and by soothing words. He should hold out hope even in the most desperate cases, because the patient's courage reacts to these words and promises,



and they may have a more powerful influence on his recovery than any of the surgeon's remedies. But the matter should be discussed with the friends whenever there is danger, partly to save them the shock of an unexpected death, and partly to protect the surgeon from any suspicion of having caused it. Neither a surgeon nor a physician should talk to the women of the house with closed doors, whether she be mistress or servant. He should never speak improperly to her, nor make eyes at her, especially in the presence of the patient. Such actions may cause a patient to lose confidence in his surgeon, and thus the operation may prove unsuccessful because the patient has lost the good opinion he had of the operator. A wise surgeon too will do well to refrain from stealing anything whilst he is in attendance; he will not stir up strife amongst the patient's friends or quarrel with the people of the house; he will be careful, too, not to employ notoriously bad characters as his assistants, for all these things may spoil a good operation and thus detract from the dignity of medicine. Above all things, he must refrain from becoming too familiar with the laity. They are always ready to speak ill of doctors, and too great familiarity merely means that one cannot demand the proper fees for an operation with any assurance and safety. It is well known that a large fee increases the authority of the doctor as well as the confidence the patient puts in him, even though the doctor is very ignorant, because it is thought that a large fee secures better attention. The surgeon ought to observe the rules of those with whom he is living or amongst whom he finds himself. He should visit the poor because it is a good thing to have a reputation for Charity, partly because it increases his estimation in the eyes of the people, and partly because it enables the Divine Power to extend its influence over his spirit. The surgeon ought not to allow himself to be swayed by the entreaties of the patient, because if he yields the patient will lose faith in the operator, and the operator may himself become timid and hesitating. The assistants ought to be amiable and helpful to the patient, and they should never repeat to him what the surgeon has said unless it is pleasant and encouraging. Leeches should be especially careful not to discuss matters with the patient or in his presence, and above all things, they must avoid whispering or talking together in corners, for such actions rouse all kinds of suspicion in the mind of the patient and his friends.

Lanfrank, who was in Paris in 1295, and is looked upon as the founder of French surgery, says in the English version transcribed in



1380 (Early English Text Society, No. 102, 1894, p. 8): "Needful it is that a surgeon be of a complexion well proportioned. . . He must have hands well shaped, long small fingers, and his body not quaking. Also he must be of subtle wit, for all things that (be)longeth to surgery may not with letters be written. . . Be he no glutton, nor not envious nor a niggard; be he true; humble and pleasingly bear himself to his patients; speak he no ribaldry in the sick man's house; give he no counsel but if he be asked; nor speak he with no woman in folly in the man's house; nor chide he not with the sick man nor none of his household, but courteously speak to the sick man, and in all manner of sickness promise him health although you despair of him, but nevertheless tell his friends the truth. Love no hard cures and undertake no desperate cases. Help poor men as far as possible and ask good reward of the rich. Praise he not himself with his own mouth, nor blame he over sharply other leeches. Love he all leeches and clerics, and, as far as possible, make he no leech his enemy. So clothe he himself with virtue that he may obtain a good name and a fair reputation. This is the ethical teaching."

It is clear from these extracts that Arderne had read Lanfrank's rules for a surgeon, and that he amplified them from his own experience, which corresponded very much with that of the French surgeons who were his contemporaries. But Arderne's teaching of the duties of a surgeon compares very favourably with that of William Salicet or Henri de Mondeville. He had a higher moral tone, or, at any rate, he based his warnings on morality rather than upon self-interest, and there is nowhere any reference to a surgeon as a common thief. His fees are high, but, as a contemporary writer explains, this is to make up for the long periods when he had nothing to do, and it is clear that it was extremely difficult to obtain money from patients.

Every surgeon was taught never to treat cases which appeared incurable or were unlikely to run a straightforward course. This was due to ignorance, to the weakness of the law, and to the arbitrary treatment to which individuals might be exposed. Throughout the Middle Ages, and long afterwards, there was no science of toxicology and very little knowledge of morbid anatomy. Persons who died suddenly, therefore, were usually thought to have been killed by poison, and the histories of the present day are full of accounts of the deaths of great men who are said to have been poisoned, when it is clear to every medical reader that they died a natural death from some acute disease. A perforated gastric ulcer, a perforated duodenal ulcer, an acute gan-

grenous inflammation of the vermiform appendix would present all the characters of poisoning to the lay mind. Failure after an operation was liable to be followed by the most undesirable consequences to the leech. King John of Bohemia, from whose body Edward the Black Prince took an ostrich feather for his crest, sewed up his French leech in a sack and threw him into the Oder because he had not cured his cataract as he had promised.

Arderne must have led an interesting and adventurous life, and his treatises contain many sidelights on contemporary events. He appears to be the only contemporary authority for the story of the means by which Edward the Black Prince obtained the ostrich feather which has since become the cognisance of the heir apparent to the English throne. The passage runs as follows, "We are not able to cure rhagades unless the remedy can be put through the anus either as a clyster or by means of a suppository, since remedies applied outside are either useless or do very little good. We ought, therefore, to work with stimulating applications until the wound is clean, and afterwards with applications which both heal and dry, as has been said already in the chapter on internal piles, to wit, where Nastar is painted—and Nastar is a kind of clyster or enema known as a glister-pipe.—The feather of the Prince of Wales is also shown there, viz. on the preceding page. And note that Edward the eldest son of Edward King of England bore a similar feather above his crest, and he obtained the feather from the King of Bohemia, whom he killed at Cressy in France. And so he took the feather which is called an 'ostrich feather,' which that most noble Lord King had used hitherto to bear above his crest. And in that year when our Lord the strenuous and warlike Prince departed to God, I wrote this little book of mine with my own hand, viz. in the year one thousand three hundred and seventy-six. And our Lord Edward the Prince died on the sixth June on Trinity Sunday at Westminster during the great Parliament, and may God assoil him, for he was the very flower of chivalry, without peer in the world."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "Rhagades curare non possumus nisi medicinis infra anum inferamus aut in clystere aut modo suppositorii quia medicinæ exterius appositæ parum vel nihil prosunt, unde primo oportet cum corrosivis operare ad mundificationem et postea cum consolidantibus et desiccantibus ut prædictum est capitulo de hæmorrhoid. infra anum latentibus ubi nastare depingitur et penna Principis Walliæ, viz. folio præcedente. Et nota quod talem pennam albam portabat Edwardus primogenitus filius Edwardi Regis Angliæ, super crestam suam. Et illam pennam conquisivit de rege Boëmo, quem interfecit apud Cresse in Francia. Et sic assumpsit sibi illam pennam quæ dicitur 'Ostrich fether,' quam prius Dominus Rex nobillissimus portebat super crestam suam et eodem anno quo



This passage is omitted from the English translation which is here printed (Sloane 6), as well as from the later and different English translation (Sloane 76), which are often merely abstracts of what Arderne wrote. But it is present in the Latin texts (Sloane MSS. 56, leaf 74; 335, leaf 68; 2002, leaf 333; 176, back; 29301, leaf 42, col. 157; in MS. 1153, leaf 41, in Trin. Coll. Camb.; and in the MS. No. 339 in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow, leaf 77).

It was from the last MS., which was then called Sloane 2, that Thomas Hearn copied it in the "*Chronici Walteri Hemingford.*"<sup>1</sup> In each case it is a part of the text, and is written by the same hand as the rest of the manuscript. The scribes have not copied from each other, and there is very little doubt in my own mind that Arderne wrote it originally, and that it contains the story current in his day about the source of the feather, and Arderne was in a position to obtain the story at first hand. Incidentally it bears out an interesting point, for it says that both the King of Bohemia and the Prince of Wales bore the feather *above* his crest, not *as* his crest, so that it was used in exactly the same manner as was the Garter at first, viz. as an ornament to be worn at jousts or tournaments.<sup>2</sup> It only became a crest in later years, and so long as it was a mere ornament or distinguishing badge there was no need for it to be associated with a motto; indeed, in each of Arderne's figures the scroll placed upon the quill of the feather, which is single, is left blank instead of being charged. This use of the ostrich feather as an ornament at jousts further explains the passage in the Black Prince's will, in which he desired that his corpse should be taken through the City of Canterbury as far as the Priory, and that "two war horses, covered with our Arms and two men armed in our Arms and in our crests," should precede his corpse; that is to say, "the one for War, with our entire Arms quarterly, and the other for Peace, with our Badge of Ostrich Feathers," with four banners of the same suite.<sup>3</sup>

---

Dominus strenuus et bellicosus Princeps migravit ad Dominum, scripsi libellum istum manu propriâ, viz. anno Millesimo cccclxxvi. Et Dominus Edwardus princeps obiit vi Idus Junii, viz. die Sanctæ Trinitatis, apud Westmonasterium in magno parlamento, quem Deus absolvat, quia fuit flos Miliciæ Mundi sine pare. Nastare species est clysteris sive enematis 'a glister pipe.'"

<sup>1</sup> Vol. 2, pp. 444, 446, in note.

<sup>2</sup> "Observations on the Institution of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, by Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas." "*Archæologia*," vol. 31, p. 130.

<sup>3</sup> "On the Badge and Mottoes of the Prince of Wales," vol. 3. "*Archæologia*," vol. 31, p. 356.

"Et volons qe a quele heure qe notre corps soit amenez parmy la ville de Cantirbirie tantq'a la priorie, q'deux destre3 covert3 de nos arme3, et deu3 home3



The directions for making Nerbone plaister (p. 91) show the difficulties in reckoning small subdivisions of time. Arderne directs that the melted diachylon should be allowed to stand without moving by the space of a "pater noster" and an "ave maria." I asked a patient recently, the Mother Superior of a Convent, how long it would take to repeat these prayers, and she replied about three quarters of a minute. When I next saw her, after she had spent a sleepless night with a clock in front of her, she said that the question had interested her, and she found that a pater and an ave took exactly half a minute. Dr. Norman Moore draws attention ("The Progress of Medicine at St. Bartholomew's Hospital," 1888, p. 13) to a similar method employed by John Mirfeld, a Canon of the priory of St. Bartholomew, who wrote a general treatise on medicine—*Breviarium Bartholomei*—about the year 1380. He says, "Mirfeld treated chronic rheumatism by rubbing the part with olive oil. This was to be prepared with ceremony. It was to be put into a clean vessel while the preparer made the sign of the cross and said the Lord's Prayer and an Ave Maria, and when the vessel was put to the fire the Psalm, 'Why do the heathen rage,' was to be said as far as the verse 'Desire of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance.' The Gloria, Pater Noster, and Ave Maria are to be said, and the whole gone through seven times. 'Which done let that oil be kept.'" . . . "The time occupied I have tried," says Dr. Norman Moore, "and found to be a quarter of an hour."

The charm against Cramp (p. 102) was obtained from one who was at Milan when Lionel, Duke of Clarence, married Violante, the daughter of Galeazzo Visconti, at the door of the Cathedral, on June 5th, 1368. Five months of continuous jousts, feasts and revels were followed by the inevitable consequences of delirium tremens and epileptiform convulsions.

The sober testimony to the profligacy of the times given in the receipt for making confection of Sanguis Veneris (p. 89) is the natural outcome of the conditions described in Dr. Furnivall's "Early English Meals and Manners" (Early English Text Society, Original Series, No. 32). The boys and girls of the upper classes were transferred

---

armez en nos armez et en nos heaumes voient devant dit n're corps, c'est assavoir l'un pur la guerre de noz armez entiers quartellez, at l'autre pur la paix de noz bages des plumes d'ostrace, ove quarter baneres de mesme la sute, et qe chacun de ceaux q'porteront les ditez baneres ait sur sa teste un chapeau de noz armes." "Nichols's Royal Wills," p. 68. See also "Notes and Queries," Series ii, 1861, vol. xi, pp. 224 and 294.

from their own homes to be educated in the houses of the nobility as pages and maids of honour. They were well fed, spent their lives in a round of pleasure, and were often badly looked after.

The account of juniper shows that Arderne knew London and its neighbourhood and talked with the countryfolk as he went amongst them. He says, "Juniper grows in Kent upon Shooter's Hill on the road to Canterbury, at Dorking also in Surrey as well as in many other places in that County, at Bedington too near Croydon, and the inhabitants of that country call it gorst because they do not know its proper name."<sup>1</sup> The Black Death does not seem to have left much impression upon Arderne's mind, because, like most contemporary medical writers, he only mentions it incidentally, and what we look upon as an appalling visitation had already faded from his mind, and its impression had been replaced by more recent epidemics.

Arderne lived through the most chivalrous period of English history, and in all probability he knew personally many of the peerless knights and splendid champions who survive for ever in the pages of Froissart. To have known such men was in itself an education, and to have lived in the household of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, and of John of Gaunt was sufficient to make Arderne the best type of an English surgeon—a scholar and a gentleman. The chivalry of the age is well brought out in the extant manuscripts of Arderne's treatises. In some cases he mentions the names of the patients, but in many instances he tricks their coat-armour instead of giving names, and thus some early shields are preserved, amongst others that of the great Douglas.

Arderne left a few traces on the sands of time, but very few. Johannis Argentin, a physician at Cambridge, wrote a treatise, which still remains in the Bodleian Library as Ashmol. MS. No. 1437. Tanner<sup>2</sup> thinks that it was written about 1476. He mentions Arderne no less than eleven times, and copies his style, especially his manner of quoting cases in illustration of his various subjects.

Arderne's fame as a pharmacist long outlasted his reputation as a surgeon. *Tapsimel* (p. 31), *Pulvis sine pari* (pp. 26 and 86), *Tapsivalencia* (p. 69), and the valences of *Scabious* and *Wormwood* (p. 97),

<sup>1</sup> "Et crescat in cancia super Scheteres hylde in viâ versus cantuariam, apud Dorkyng, eciam in Soberay et eciam in aliis pluribus illius provincie, crescit eciam apud Bedyngton iuxta Croyden quam incole patrie illius vocant gorst, quia proprium nomen illius ignorant." (MS. Digby 161, leaf 23, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

<sup>2</sup> "Bibliotheca," p. 48.



remained until the time of the first Pharmacopœia, 1618. Dr. Alleyne<sup>1</sup> speaks thus of them:—

“*Powers of Scabious, Valentia Scabiosæ.*—Take of the juice of green Scabious, pressed out and strained through a cloth, and of Hog’s lard cleared of its membranes, each as much as you please. Let the Lard be beat in a stone mortar, and the juice poured in by little at a time, for the conveniency of mixture, and giving its tincture; and then put them together into a proper vessel, to be exposed to the sun, and so that the juice may cover the lard; after nine days put them again into the mortar as before, and throw away that thin and discoloured humidity, which separates upon beating, without rubbing them together; and again put into its vessel for five days. And afterwards beat it again and by little at a time, mix with it fresh juice of scabious, and after a fresh insolation of fifteen days in its proper vessel in the Sun, let it be cleared as before of its watery humidity. Let it then stand again in the same manner for fifteen days longer with fresh juice, and after a little beating let it be kept for use in a glass or earthen vessel. This, we are told by the first compilers of the College Dispensatory, was the contrivance of John Arden, an experienced surgeon at Newark in Nottinghamshire, who lived in the reign of Edward III. After insertion of this, which they had from an ancient manuscript, they particularly direct to repeat the processes with fresh juice till the Lard looks of a deep green; and that is made the measure of the repetition necessary. The powers and honey of Mullein were from the same author, and almost three hundred years ago were in great esteem amongst the surgeons of our own country, though they have now been long in disuse.”

“*The Powers of Mullein; Tapsi Valentia.*—Take of the juice of Mullen and of Hog’s lard, each as much as you please; let the Lard be cleansed of its membranes and fibres, and broke into small parcels; then beat it with the expressed juice, press out and strain as directed in the preceding process. Let it afterwards be put into a proper vessel for nine or ten days, and then be twice more impregnated with fresh juice until it is quite green. Lastly, after all the humidity that will separate is poured off, beat it again briskly, and put it by in a proper manner for use.”

The first contriver of these processes, as appears from the first edition of the College Dispensatory, directs the medicines thus made to be fresh beat once in a month.

<sup>1</sup> “A New English Dispensatory,” 1733, p. 336.



“*Honey of Mullen ; Tapsimel.*—Take of the juice of Celandine and one part Mullen, of despumated Honey two parts ; boil gradually till the juices are evaporated, adding thereto, if the Operator pleases, calcined Vitriol and Alum with Copperas, and again boil secundum artem.”

The first College Dispensatory adds from the Author, that “if occasion requires this should be at last boiled up to a pretty thick consistence ; and says that it will certainly cure itchings in any part of the body, and is a most noble ointment. But it seems the present Practice hath not faith enough to rely upon it for anything, for neither this nor the foregoing are ever prescribed or made. However, it hath been thought fit to continue such extraordinary discoveries still upon record for the sake of any that may think proper to make trial with them.”

It is my pleasant duty, in conclusion, to thank those who have given me much help in the preparation of this volume. First, to Dr. Warner, the Keeper of Manuscripts, who allowed me to study the Sloane MSS. at the British Museum in comfort in the room which is doing duty as the large room ; secondly, to Mr. L. Galbraith, who afforded me similar facilities in the University Library at Glasgow ; and, lastly, to Mr. Falconer Madan, who made me feel at home in the Bodleian. Lieut.-Col. Walter D. McCaw, Surgeon of the United States Army, responded kindly, promptly and fully to my questions about the only manuscript of Arderne which Dr. Harvey Cushing of Baltimore has been able to obtain tidings of in America. Miss Evaline G. Parker at Oxford, and Miss Margaret E. Thompson in London, have helped me by transcribing obscure passages which I was quite unable to decipher ; whilst my friend, Mr. J. H. Noble, has assisted me with the heraldry of the various MSS., a subject of much interest, which I hope some day to consider in greater detail. My obligations to Mr. S. Armitage-Smith are great ; and I have endeavoured to show my appreciation of the interest which Dr. Frank Payne has always taken in Arderne, and the help I have received by dedicating to him this edition of his treatises. I have tried to make the text literally accurate, and to elucidate it by such notes as were needed to explain to myself the various difficulties which occurred in reading it. No one can be more conscious of the defects in the notes than myself, but the work has been a labour of love, and if they

seem extremely bad it must be remembered that, after all, I am but a surgeon, whose business in life is to act and not to write.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

The following table shows the manuscripts which I have examined personally at the British Museum, and in Oxford, Cambridge and Glasgow. There is said to be a French version in Paris and a Latin one at Stockholm, but I have not yet been able to obtain any information about them: there is a manuscript in Washington and another in Dublin.

Arderne issued his writings in the form of treatises, written in Latin, and with his own hand. These treatises were afterwards collected and were sometimes translated. The manuscripts therefore contain different combinations. The collection here printed is one of the more usual groups, but the translator has not rendered the whole of the last part on the preparation of various remedies. It is given in greater detail in the Ashmole MS. 1434 in the Bodleian Library.

## MANUSCRIPTS OF JOHN OF ARDERNE IN THE VARIOUS LIBRARIES.

### I. PRACTICA DE FISTULA IN ANO, &c.

- Sæc. xiv.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 341, ff. 41-69 b.  
 " " " No. 3844, ff. 2-16 b.  
 " " " No. 3548, ff. 65-88.  
 " University Library, Glasgow, No. 339.
- Sæc. xiv-xv.* University Library, Glasgow, No. 112, ff. 38-98.  
 " Surgeon-General's Lib., Washington, U.S.A., ff. 41-138.
- Sæc. xv.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 6, ff. 141-154 b. [English].  
 " " " No. 76, ff. 143 and 144. [English].  
 " " " No. 238, ff. 99-214.  
 " " " No. 277, ff. 60 b.-75 b. [English].  
 " " " No. 347, ff. 122-240.  
 " " " No. 563, ff. 63-121 b. [English].  
 " " " No. 795, ff. 96 b.-163 b.  
 " " " No. 2002, ff. 1-180.  
 " " " No. 2122, ff. 10-32.  
 " " " No. 29301, ff. 22-32 b.  
 " " " No. 8093, ff. 140-174 [English].  
 " " Harleian MSS. No. 3371, ff. 13-39 b.  
 " " " No. 5401, ff. 34 b.-52.  
 " University Library, Glasgow, No. 251, formerly Sloane 2.  
 " Bodley's Library, Oxford, Ash. 1434, ff. 11-107.  
 " St. John's College, Oxford, No. 132, ff. 68.  
 " Emmanuel Coll., Cambridge, No. 69.  
 " Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland.
- Sæc. xvi.* Bodley's Library, Oxford, Ash. 829, ff. 76-80 and 81-115.  
 " University Library, Glasgow, No. 135.  
 " " " " No. 403.
- Sæc. xvii.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 1991, ff. 142-159.  
 " Bodley's Library, Oxford, Rawl. No. 355 c.

### II. LIBER MEDICINARUM SIVE RECEPTORUM LIBER MEDICINALIUM.

- Sæc. xiv.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 56, ff. 1-100.  
 " " " No. 335, ff. 1-78 b.  
 " " " No. 341, ff. 1-40 b.  
 " " " No. 3548, ff. 26-99.  
 " Bodley's Library, Oxford, Digby 161, ff. 16-23 b.  
 " St. John's College, Oxford, No. 86, ff. 53.  
 " University Library, Glasgow, No. 339, ff. 232.  
 " Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland. ? date.



*Sæc. xiv-xv.* University Library, Glasgow, No. 112.

*Sæc. xv.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 76, ff. 1-143.

„ „ „ No. 238, ff. 8-96 b.

„ „ „ No. 347, ff. 2-75.

„ „ „ No. 795, ff. 20 b.-96 b.

„ „ „ No. 962, ff. 123 b.-248 b.

„ „ „ No. 2122, ff. 32-74.

„ „ „ No. 29301, ff. 3-22, and 32 b.-47 b.

„ Bodley's Library, Oxford, Ash. 1434, ff. 117-131.

„ University Library, Glasgow, No. 251.

„ Caius Coll., Cambridge, No. 219.

„ University Library, Cambridge, No. 292.

„ Trinity Coll., Cambridge, No. 1153, ff. 99 + 3.

„ Emmanuel Coll., Cambridge, No. 69 [English].

*Sæc. xvi.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 563, ff. 122-129 b.

„ University Library, Glasgow, No. 403.

*Sæc. xvii.* Brit. Museum, Sloane MSS. No. 1991, ff. 168-224.

„ „ „ No. 2271 [English].

„ Bodley's Library, Oxford, Rawl. 355 c.

*Sæc. xix.* Royal College of Surgeons, England. Transcript of E. H.'s  
[Sloane 2271] abstract.

### III. COMMENTARY "DE JUDICIIS URINARUM."

*Sæc. xiv.* University Library, Glasgow, No. 328 [English].

### IV. HOC EST SPECULUM PHLEBOTOMIÆ.

*Sæc. xiv.* Brit. Museum, Sloane 56, ff. 1-2.

*Sæc. xiv-xv.* University Library, Glasgow, No. 112.

„ *xv.* „ „ „ No. 251.

„ „ Emmanuel College, Cambridge No. 69 [English].

### V. SCALA SANITATIS.

*Sæc. xv.* Brit. Museum, 1080 A, ff. 31 b.-36 b.

[Sloane MS. 6, leaf 141.]

A tretis extracte of Maistre Iohn Arden of fistula in ano and of fistula in oþer place; of þe body and of aposteme; makyng fistule; and of emoraide; & tenasmon and of clistere; of certayn oyntemente; poudre; & oyles.

*Fistula in ano.*

1. Of þe ploge of ffistula in ano & of the manere of þe leche & of instrumentis necessary for þe fistle. [p. 1]
2. Of aposteme; in þe lure causyng þe fistul & of þe cure of þam. [p. 11]
3. Of diffinicion of a fistule and place; þat it is bred in & when it is curable or nouȝt. [p. 20]
4. Of a maner of wirchyng in fistul in ano & þe curyng þerof. [p. 21]
5. Of anoþer maner wirchyng in þe same fistule and þe cure wiþ diuerse exemple;. [p. 28]
6. Of bubo wiþin þe lure & þe impossibilite or myche hardnes of þe cure of it. [p. 37]

*Fistula in the limbs.*

7. Of fistule; in þe fyngers & hardness of cure of it. [p. 42]
8. Of fistule; in þe lawe joyntour of þe fyngers & in þe legges, knees fete & ankles wiþ corruptyng of þe bones and þe hardnes of þe cure of it. [p. 46]
9. Of þe maner of cure of oon þat had þe fistule in þe legges aboue þe ankle. [p. 47]
10. Of þe maner of cure of ane aposteme in þe boȝt of þe knee þat was disposid to þe fistule. [p. 47]
11. Of þe maner of a ful hard cure in bolnyng of al a manne; arme. [p. 49]
12. Of þe maner of a cure of a man þat was smyten on the schyn bone. [p. 51]
13. Of the maner of cure of a man whose legge was sodenly bolned. [p. 52]

*Of Mormales.*

14. Of maner of mormales & of þe cure of þam. [p. 55]

*Of Piles.*

15. Of emoraides & of þe cure of þam<sup>1</sup> [p. 64]

*Of Tenesmus.*

16. Of þenasmon & rhagade; and of þe cure of þam. [p. 71]

*Of Prolapse.*

17. Of goyng out of þe lure & þe cure þere-of. [p. 74]

*Of Clysters.*

18. Of clistere3 and þe maner of þam. [p. 74]

*Of Powders.*

19. Of þe properte3 of Vitriol. [p. 79]  
 20. Of þe properte3 of Alum. [p. 81]  
 21. Of þe properte3 of Vertgre3. [p. 82]  
 22. Of þe properte3 of arsenic & auripigment. [p. 82]  
 23. Of makyng of þem & of þe werchyng. [p. 85]  
 24. Of makyng of pulv. sine pari & of þe wirchyng. [p. 86]  
 25. Of makyng of sanguis veneris & of þe wirchyng. [p. 89]  
 26. Of makyng of salus populi & of þe werchyng. [p. 90]  
 27. Of makyng of nerbone & of þe werchyng. [p. 91]

*Of Oils and Waters.*

28. Of makyng of Olei Seriac. [p. 91]  
 29. { Of makyng of Unguentum arabicum.  
 { Of makyng of tapsimel.  
 { Of makyng of diaflosmus. [p. 92]  
 30. Of makyng of puluis grecus. [p. 92]  
 31. Of makyng of oyle of roses. [p. 92]  
 32. Of makyng of oyle of violette3. [p. 93]  
 33. Of makyng of oyle of camamulle. [p. 94]  
 34. Of makyng of oyle of mastikk. [p. 95]  
 35. Of makyng of oyle of almaunde3. [p. 95]  
 36. Of makyng of water of almande3. [p. 95]  
 37. Of makyng of oyle of juniper. [p. 96]  
 38. Of makyng of ane enoyntment of juniper. [p. 96]  
 39. Of makyng of a gode emplastre for þe goute. [p. 96]  
 40. Of the properte of walwort & makyng of þe juse & poudre  
 of it. [p. 97]

*Of Valences.*

41. Of makyng of valence of scabious or mattefelon. [p. 97]  
 42. Of makyng of valence of wormode. [p. 98]  
 43. Of makyng a man slepe without pulvere3 or pille3 or enoy[n]te-  
 ment. [p. 100]  
 44. Of þe maner of wakyng of hym. [p. 101]





Sloane MS. 2002, leaf 24, back.  
PLATE I.—A Master of Surgery in the fourteenth century.

# John Arderne's Treatises on Surgery.

[Sloane 6, leaf 141, back.]

Of the ploge of fistula in ano, and of þe manere of þe leche, and of instrumentis necessary for þe fistule.

4 [I, I]ohn Arderne fro the first pestilence that was  
in the 3ere of oure lord 1349 duellid in Newerk in  
Notyngnam-shire vnto the 3ere of oure lord 1370, and  
ther I helid many men of fistula in ano. Of whiche the  
8 first was Sire Adam Eueryngham of laxton-in-the-clay  
byside Tukkesford; whiche Sire Adam, forsoth, was in  
Gascone with sir Henry, that tyme named Erle of  
derby and aftir was made duke of lancastre, a noble and  
12 worthi lord. The forsaid sir Adam, forsoth, suffrand  
fistulam in ano, made for to aske counsel at aH the leche3  
and cirurgien3 that he my3t fynde in Gascone, at Bur-  
deux, at Briggerac, Tolows, and Neyrbon, and Peyters,  
16 and many other places. And all forsoke hym for vncur-  
able; whiche y-se and y-herde, þe forseid Adam hastied  
for to torne hom to his contre. And when he come  
home, he did of al his kny3tly clothinges and cladde  
20 mornyng clothes, in purpose of abydyng dissoluyng, or  
lesyng, of his body beyng ni3 to hym. At last I, forseid  
Ioħn Arderne, y-sou3t and couenant y-made, come to hym  
and did my cure to hym and, oure lord beyng mene,<sup>1</sup> I  
24 helid hym perfitely within half a 3ere; and aftirward,  
hole and sounde, he ledde a glad lif by 30 3ere and more,  
ffor whiche cure I gatte myche honour and louyng pur3  
al ynglond. And the forseid duke of lancastre and many  
28 othir gentile3 wondred ther-of. Aftirward I cured hugon  
derlyng of ffowick of Balne by Snaype. Aftirward I

Sir Adam de  
Everyng-  
ham  
Arderne's  
first patient.

He had lost  
all hope of  
recovery,

but lived in  
health and  
strength  
from about  
1346 until  
1387 after an  
operation.

<sup>1</sup> Domino  
mediante.



cured Iohn Schefeld of Brixtwell a-side Tekyll. Aftir-  
 ward I cured sir Reynald Grey, lord of Wilton in Wale3  
 and lord of Schirlond biside Chesterfelde, whiche asked  
 counsel at the most famose leches of yngland, and none 4  
 availed hym. Aftirward I cured sir Henry Blakborne,  
 clerk, Tresorer of the lord Prince of Wale3. Aftirward I  
 cured Adam Oumfray of Shelforde byside Notyngnam,  
 and sir Iohn, preste of the same toune; and Iohn of 8  
 holle of Shirlande; and Sir Thomas hamelden, *parsons*  
 of langare in the Vale of Beuare. Aftirward I curid frere  
 Thomas Gunny, custode of the frere Mynours of 3orke.  
 Aftirward, in the 3ere of oure lord 1370, I come to 12  
 london, and ther I cured Iohn Colyn, Mair of North-  
 ampton, that asked counsel at many leche3. Aftirward  
 I helid or cured Hew Denny, ffishmanger of london,  
 in Briggestrete; and William Polle, and Raufe Double; 16  
 and oon that was called Thomas Broune, that had 15  
 holes by whiche went out wynde with egestious odour;  
 that is to sey, 8 hole3 of the to[ne] party of the ersse,  
 and 7 on the tothir side; Of whiche some hole3 was 20  
 distant fro the towell by the space of the handbrede of a  
 man, so that bothe his buttokis was so vlcerat and  
 putrefied with-in that the quitour and filthe went out ich  
 day als mych as an egg-shel mi3t take. Afterward \*I 24  
 cured 4 frere3 prechours, that is to sey ffrere Iohn Writell,  
 ffrere Iohn haket, ffrere Petre Browne, ffrere Thomas  
 Apperley, and a 3ong man called Thomas Voke. Of  
 whiche forseid som had only on hol y-distaunte fro the 28  
 towel by oon ynche, or by two, or by thre. And other[s]  
 had 4 or 5 hole3 procedyng to the codde of the testicle3;  
 And many other maners of whiche the tellyng war ful  
 hard. All these forseid cured I afore the makyng of this 32  
 boke. Oure lord Ihesu y-blessid God knoweth that I lye  
 not, and therefore no man dout of this, þof-al old famous  
 men and ful clere in studie haue confessed tham that  
 thei fand nat the wey of curacion in this case. ffor god, 36  
 that is deler or rewarder of wisdom, hath hid many thingis  
 fro wise men and sly3e whiche he vouchesaf aftirward for  
 to shewe to symple men. Therefore al men þat ar to  
 come aftirward witte thai that old maistrez war no3t 40

Patients  
cured by  
Arderne,

knights and  
priests,

merchants  
and friars.

[\* leaf 142]

Arderne  
gives the  
glory to God  
and humbles  
himself.



bisie ne *pertinaceȝ* in sekyng and serchyng of this forseid  
cure. But for thai miȝt noȝt take the hardnes of it at the  
first frount, thei kest it vtterly byhinde þair bak. Of  
4 whiche, forsop, som demed it holy for to be incurable ;  
oþer applied doutful opinions. Therefore for-als-miche  
in hard thingis it spedith to studiers for to perseuere and  
abide, and for to turne subtilly thair wittes. ffor it is opned  
8 not to þam that ar passand but to tham þat ar perseuer-  
and.<sup>1</sup> Therefore to the honour of god almyȝti that hath  
opned witte to me that I shuld fynde tresour hidde in the  
felde of studiers that long tyme and [with] pantyng breest  
12 I haue swette and trauailed ful bisily and *pertinacely* in  
diuanudiis.<sup>2</sup> As my faculte sufficeþ without fair spekyng  
of endityng, I haue brouȝt for to shew it openly to tham  
that cometh aftur, our lord beyng me[ne] and this boke.  
16 Noȝt that I shewe myself more worthi of louyng of suche  
a gifte than other, but that I greue not god, and for the  
dragme that he hath giffen to me that I be not constreyned  
for treson. Therefore I pray that the grace of the holy  
20 gost be to this werke, that he vouch-saf for to spede it ;  
that tho thingis whiche in wrokyng trewly I am ofte  
tymes experte, I may plenerly explaine tham in this litel  
boke. And this I sey that I know noȝt in al my tyme,  
24 ne hard not in al my tyme, of any man, nouþer in  
yngland ne in *partieȝ* biȝond þe see, that kouthe cure  
fistula in ano ; outake a frere minour that was *with* the  
prince of Waleȝ in gascon & gyan, whiche rosed & bosted  
28 hym that he had cured the forseid sekenes. And at  
london he deceyued many men ; and when he miȝt noȝt  
cure som man, he made suggestion to tham that no man  
miȝt cure tham, and that affermed he with sweryng that  
32 ȝif the fistule war dried, that the pacient at the next shuld  
noȝt eschape dethe ; whiche, forsoþe, y-lefte & forsake of  
hym I cured *perfitely*. And to remoue false opinions of  
ignorant men, for witnes I putte experience. Auicen,  
36 forsop, seiþ, ‘experience ouercomeþ reson’ ; and galien  
in pantegni seiþ, ‘No man \*ow for to trust in reson  
al-oon but ȝit it be proued of experience.’ And he seiþ  
in anoþer place, ‘Experience without reson is feble, &  
40 so is reson withoute experience fest vnto hym.’ Neþer-

The old  
masters in  
surgery  
neglected  
cases of  
fistula,

<sup>1</sup> non tran-  
seuntibus  
sed persever-  
antibus pul-  
santibus  
aperitur.

<sup>2</sup> “ diu  
avidius ”  
says the best  
Latin text.

but Arderne  
devoted  
himself  
specially to  
their study,  
and fears to  
hide his  
talent in a  
napkin  
(Matt. xxv.  
14-29).

No one in  
England or  
abroad  
undertakes  
cases of  
fistula  
except one  
minorite in  
the retinue  
of the Black  
Prince, and  
he is a fraud.

Avicenna’s  
opinion of  
the value of  
practice and  
theory.  
[\* leaf 142  
back]

Arderne  
recognises  
that some  
fistulae are  
incurable.

The qualities  
required in  
a good  
surgeon :  
piety,

charity,

modesty,

wariness,

gravity,

careful in  
the company  
he keeps ;

studious,

sober,

not  
gluttonous,

nor cynical ;

lesse I afferme noȝt that I miȝt hele al ffistulae in ano. ffor  
som ben vncurable as it shal be seid [more fully]<sup>1</sup> within  
when I shal trete of tham. ffirst it bihoueth hym that  
wil profite in this crafte that he sette god afore euermore in 4  
all his werkis, and euermore calle mekely with hert and  
mouth his help ; and som tyme visite of his wynnyngis  
poure men aftir his myȝt, that thai by thair prayers may  
gete hym grace of the holy goste. And that he be noȝt 8  
y-founden temerarie or bosteful in his seyingis or in his  
dedes ; and abstene he hym fro moche speche, and most  
among grete men ; and answeere he sleizly to thingis  
y-asked, that he be noȝt y-take in his wordes. fforsoth 12  
ȝif his werkes be oft tyme knowen for to discorde fro his  
wordes and his byhestis, he shal be halden more vnworthi,  
and he shal blemmyssh his oone gode fame. Wherefore  
seip a versifiour, ‘vincat opus verbum, minuit iactantia 16  
famam’ ; ‘lat werke ouercome thi worde, for boste  
lessenep gode lose.’ Also be a leche noȝt mich laughyng  
ne mich playing. And als moche as he may withoute  
harne fle he þe felawshippe of knafes and of vnu[n]este 20  
persones. And be he euermore occupied in thingis that  
biholdith to his crafte ; outhir rede he, or studie he, or  
write or pray he ; for the excercyse of bokes worshippeþ  
a leche. ffor why ; he shal bop byholden and he shal 24  
be more wise. And aboue al pise it profiteth to hym  
that he be founden euermore sobre ; ffor dronkenneȝ  
destroyeth al vertu and bringith it to not, as seith a wise  
man, ‘Ebrietas frangit quicquid sapiencia tangit’ : ‘Dron- 28  
kenes breketh what-so wisdom toucheth.’ Be he content  
in strange places of metes and drinkes þer y-founden,  
vsyng mesure in al thingis. ffor the wise man seith,  
‘Sicut ad omne quod est mensuram ponere prodest, Sic 32  
sine mensura deperit omne quod est’ : ‘As it profiteth to  
putte mesure to al thing that is, So without mesure  
perissheþ all þing þat is.’ Skorne he no man. ffor of  
that it is seid, ‘Deridens alios non inderisus abibit’ : ‘He 36  
that skorneþ other men shal not go away vnskorned.’  
ȝif ther be made speche to hym of any leche, nouthur  
sette he hym at nouȝt ne preise hym to mich or com-  
mende hym, but thus may he curteysly answeere ; ‘I haue 40

<sup>1</sup> “Plenius”  
says the  
Latin text.



<sup>1</sup> "non habeo de eo veram notitiam" says the Latin version.

<sup>2</sup> in domibus magnatum.

<sup>3</sup> aut pubem.

<sup>4</sup> colloquia mala.

<sup>5</sup> nimis severus nec nimis familiaris sed in gestu mediocris secundum exigentiam personarum.

<sup>6</sup> et si viderit patientem attentius curam prosequi.

noȝt vrey knowleche of hym,<sup>1</sup> but I lerned noȝt ne I haue not herd of hym but gode and honeste.' And of this shal honour and thankyngis of eche party encresse and multi-  
4 plie to hym ; aftur this, honour is in the honorant & noȝt in the honored. Considere he noȝt ouer openly the lady or the douȝters or oper fair wymmen in gret mennes<sup>2</sup> [houses] ne profre tham noȝt to kisse, ne touche not  
8 priuely ne apertely thair pappes, ne thair handes, ne thair share,<sup>3</sup> that he renne noȝt into the indignacion of the lord ne of noon of his. In as moche as he may, greue he no seruant, but \* gete he thair loue and thair gode wille.  
12 Abstene he hym fro harlotrie als wele in wordes as in dedes in euery place, for ȝif he vse hym to harlotery in priue places som tyme in opene place ther may falle to hym vnworship of yuel vsage ; aftir þat it is seyde,  
16 'Pede super colles pedes vbi pedere nolles.' 'ffart vpon hilleȝ and thou shalt fart whar thou wolde noȝt agayn thi willeȝ.' And it is seid in anoþer place, 'Shrewed speche<sup>4</sup> corruptith gode maners.' When seke men, forsoth, or  
20 any of tham bysyde comeþ to the leche to aske help or counsel of hym, be he noȝt to tham ouer felle ne ouer homely, but mene in beryng aftir the askyngis of the personeȝ<sup>5</sup> ; to som reuerently, to som comonly. Ifor after  
24 wise men, Ouer moche homelynes bredeþ dispisyng. Also it spedeþ þat he haue semyng excusacions that he may not incline to þair askyngis, without harmyng or without indignacion of som gret man or frende, or for  
28 necessarie occupacion. Or feyne he hym hurt, or for to be seke, or som other couenable cause by whiche he may likely be excused. Therfor, ȝif he will fauoure to any mannes askyng, make he couenant for his trauaile, and  
32 take it byforehandeȝ. But avise þe leche hym-self wele that he giffe no certayn answer in any cause, but he se first þe sikenes and the maner of it ; and whan he hap seen and assaied it, þof-al hym seme that the seke may  
36 be heled, neþerlesse he shal make pronosticacion to þe pacient þe perileȝ to come ȝif the cure be differred. And ȝif he se þe pacient persewe bisily the cure,<sup>6</sup> þan after that þe state of þe pacient askep aske he boldly more  
40 or lesse ; but euer be he warre of scarce askyngis, ffor

courteous, and not jealous of other leeches ;

continent,

friendly to servants, [\* leaf 148]

chaste ;

easy of address, neither too rough nor too familiar

not too ready to undertake a case, and always to see it before giving advice ;

to have a clear understanding about the fee before operating.



The cost  
of an  
operation.

Prognosis as  
regards the  
duration of  
cure and the  
reasons  
thereof.

[\* leaf 143,  
back]  
The leech to  
be dressed  
soberly,

to be clean  
in his  
person,

to cultivate  
silence.

ouer scarce askyngis setteþ at not both þe markette  
and the thing. Therefore for the cure of fistula in  
ano, when it is curable, aske he competently, of a  
worthi man and a gret an hundred marke or fourty 4  
pounde, wiþ robeþ and feeþ<sup>1</sup> of an hundred shillyng  
terme of lyfe by 3ere. Of lesse men fourty pounde, or  
fourty marke aske he without feeþ; And take he noȝt  
lesse þan an hundred shillyngis. ffor neuer in all my lyf 8  
toke I lesse than an hundred shillyng for cure of that  
sekenes. Neþerlesse do another man as hym þink better  
and more spedefulle. And 3if the pacientes or thair  
frendeþ or seruauentþ aske by how moche tyme he hopeth 12  
to hele it, euermore lat the leche byhete þe double þat  
he supposeth to spede by half; that is 3if the leche hope  
to hele þe pacient by twenty wekes—that is the comon  
course of curyng—adde he so many ouer. ffor it is better 16  
that the terme be lengthed þan the cure. ffor prolonga-  
cion of the cure giffeþ cause of dispairyng to the pacienteþ  
when triste to the leche is moste hope of helthe. And  
3if the pacient considere or wondre or aske why that he 20  
putte hym so long a tyme of curyng, siþe þat he heled  
hym by the half, answeze he that it was for that the  
pacient was strong-herted, and suffrid wele sharp þingis,  
and that he was of gode complexion and hadde able flesshe 24  
to hele; & feyne he othir causes pleseable to the pacient,  
ffor pacienteþ of syche wordeþ are proude and delited. Also  
dispose a leche \*hym that in clothes and othir apparalyngis  
be he honeste, noȝt likkenyng hymself in apparalyng or 28  
beryng to mynistralleþ, but in clothing and beryng shew  
he the maner of clerkes. ffor why; it semeth any dis-  
crete man y-cladde with clerkis clothing for to occupie  
gentil menneþ bordeþ. ¶ Haue the leche also clene handes 32  
and wele shapen naileþ & clensed fro all blaknes and filthe.  
And be he curtaise at lordeþ bordeþ, and displese he noȝt  
in wordes or dedes to the gestes syttyng by; here he many  
þingis but speke he but fewe. ¶ For a wise man seith, 36  
'It semeth more to vse the eres than þe tunge'; And in  
an-oþer place, '3if thou had bene stille thou had bene  
holden a philosophre.' And whan he shal speke, be the  
wordeþ short, and, als mich as he may, faire and resonable 40

<sup>1</sup> cum robis  
et feodis.

1 dupliciter  
sermo.

and not to  
be foul-  
mouthed  
or lying.

He should  
have a store  
of comfort-  
able sayings.

2 Si mens  
vestra  
appetat  
quod  
demulcat,  
prius bibite  
quod dolet  
et sic per  
amarum  
poculum  
confectionis  
pervenitur  
ad gaudia  
salutis.

and withoute sweryng. ¶ Be war that ther be neuer  
founden double worde<sup>1</sup> in his mouthe, ffor 3if he be  
founden trew in his wordes ffewe or noon shal doute in  
4 his dedez. Lere also a 3ong leche gode prouerbez per-  
tenyng to his crafte in counfortyng of paciente3. ¶ Or  
3if pacientes pleyne that ther medicynes bene bitter or  
sharp or sich other, than shal the leche sey to the pacient  
8 thus; “It is redde in the last lesson of matyns of the  
natiuitè of oure lord that oure lorde Ihesus criste come  
into this world for the helthe of mannes kynd to the  
maner of a gode leche and wise. And when he cometh  
12 to the seke man he sheweth hym medicynes, som lizt  
and som hard; and he seip to the seke man, ‘3if pou  
wilt be made hole þise and þise shal thou tak.’ ¶ Also  
in another place in an omely vpon the gospel of the sone3  
16 of Zebedee, wher per moder askid seying, ‘lord, sey þat  
my two sones sitte in thy kyngdome, þe tone on þi rizt  
hand and the toþer on the left.’ And Ihesus answeyng  
seide, ‘3e wote neuer what 3e aske’; þan seid he to the  
20 sone3 of Zebedee, ‘May 3e drink þe chalice þat I am to  
drink?’ þai seid to him, ‘We may’; as 3if he seid to  
þam, ‘3if 3oure soule or mynd couaite þat deliteþ,  
drinke þe first þat soroweþ or akeþ.’ And so by bitter  
24 drinkis of confeccion it is come to the ioyes of helpe.”<sup>2</sup>  
Ouer that hym ow to comforte þe pacient in monysshying  
hym that in anguisshez he be of gret hert. ffor gret hert  
makeþ a man hardy and strong to suffre sharp þingis  
28 and greuous: And it is a gret vertue and an happy, ffor  
Boecius seip, *De disciplina scolarium*, ‘He is no3t worpi of  
þe poynt of swetnes that kan no3t be lymed with greu-  
yng of bitternes. ffor why; a strong medicine answerith  
32 to a strong sekenes.’ And þeron seip a wise man, ‘Be  
no cure sene heuy or greuous to the to whiche folowep  
ane heleful effecte.’ ¶ And in anoper place it is seid,  
‘happy or blessid be þat day þat ordeyneþ mery 3eres.’  
36 And anoper seith, ‘he may neuer be in reste of body þat  
is oute of reste of soule; I wil suffre lesse þingis þat I  
suffre no3t more greuous.’ It semeþ a gret herted man  
for to suffre sharp þingis; he, forsop, þat is wayke of  
40 hert is no3t in way of curacion, ffor \*why; for-soþe in al

The effect  
of mind on  
body.

[\* leaf 144]



my lyf I haue sene but fewe laborante in þis vice heled  
 in any sikeness: þerfore it is to be-war to wise men þat  
 þei entremette noȝt with sich. ffor whi; þe wise man  
 seiþ, 'All þinges ar hard to a waik hert man, for þai 4  
 trow euermore yuelleȝ to be nyȝe to þam; þei drede  
 euermore, þai suffre no þingis, þai are euermore vnstable  
 and vnwise; þerfore a versifiour seiþ of tham, 'Quominus<sup>1</sup>  
 nil pacior paciendi me tenet horror': þat is þof-al I 8  
 suffre no-þing, vgglynes of suffryng holdeth me. ¶ Also  
 it spedeth þat a leche kunne talke of gode taleȝ and of  
 honest that may make þe pacientes to laugh, as wele of the  
 biblee as of other tragedieȝ; & any othir þingis of which it 12  
 is noȝt to charge whileȝ þat þey make or induce a list hert  
 to þe pacient or þe sike man. ¶ Discouer neuer the leche  
 vnwarly the counselleȝ of his pacienteȝ, als wele of men as  
 of wymmen, ne<sup>2</sup> sette noȝt oon to anoper at noȝt, þof-al 16  
 he haue cause, þat he be noȝt gilty of counsell; ffor ȝif a  
 man se þe hele wele anoper mannes counsel he wil trist  
 better in þe. Many þinges, forsoþe, bene to be kepte  
 of a leche, wipoute þese þat ar seid afore, þat may noȝt 20  
 be noted here for ouer moche occupying. But it is noȝt  
 to dout þat if þe forseid be wele kepte þat-ne þai shal  
 giffe a gracious going to þe vser to þe hize of worship  
 and of wynnyng<sup>3</sup>; for Caton seiþ, 'Virtutem primam puta 24  
 esse compescere linguam': The first vertu trow you to be  
 to refreyne þe tong. Aftur al þise it houeth that he  
 knowe þe names of þe instrumentis þat perteneþ to þe  
 cure of þe fistule, withoute whiche a leche may noȝt wele 28  
 spede hym. Of whiche þe first is called 'Sequere me'  
 —'follow me'—whose shap is shewed wher þe instrumenteȝ  
 ar paynted [fig. 1]. And it is called 'Sequere me' for it  
 is þe first instrument pertenyng to þat werk; for a lech 32  
 ow for to serche þer-with þe way of þe fistule whider it  
 goþ, wheþer by þe middeȝ of longaon or noȝt. And it  
 ow to be made on þe same maner as wymmen vseþ in  
 pair heuedeȝ,<sup>4</sup> and of þe same metal; and it ow to be 36  
 smal þat it may listly be plied & replied. And be þe  
 heuedeȝ<sup>5</sup> als little as þai may wele be, elleȝ þai miȝt noȝt  
 wele entere þe moup of þe fistule for þe streitnes of it.

<sup>1</sup> Quamvis.<sup>3</sup> quia ea  
exercenti  
ad culmen  
honoris et  
lucis aditum  
præbeant  
generosum.<sup>4</sup> in capitibus.<sup>5</sup> capita.<sup>2</sup> MS. þe.

The leech  
 should have  
 also a good  
 stock of  
 merry tales,

and should  
 most strictly  
 keep his own  
 counsel  
 about the  
 patient.

The names  
 of the  
 instruments  
 used in the  
 operation  
 for fistula:

the probe,



ffor why ; oft tyme<sup>3</sup> ffistule in ano hath riȝt smale hole<sup>3</sup>,  
 so þat som tyme þai shew noȝt but þat þer appereth  
 bolnyng in þe moupes of þam. Afterward is þer  
 4 anoper instrument, þat is called ‘Acus rostrata,’ a the grooved  
director,  
 snowted nedle, for it hath þe tone heued like a snowte,  
 and in þe toper an yȝe like a nedel by whiche þrede  
 ow to be drawn agayn by middeȝ of þe fistule, as it shal  
 8 be seid *within* in his place. And it ow to be of siluer, as  
 it is paynted ; and it ow to be no gretter ne lenger in þe  
 snowte þan as it is paynted, but it ow to be longer atte  
 þe left, þat it contene in al 8 ynches in lengþe.<sup>1</sup> ¶ Þe  
 12 þrid instrument is called ‘tendiculum,’ and it ow to be the dilator,  
 made of boxe or of anopir competent tree, nouper  
 lenger ne gretter þan his shap is paynted. And it  
 ow to haue an hole þurgh in þe side, as it is peynted, the peg.  
 16 In whiche hole be þer putte \*<sup>2</sup> in a wrayst,<sup>3</sup> by middeȝ [\* leaf 144,  
back]  
 of whiche wraiste in þe ouer ende shal be a litel hole  
 þurgh whiche shal be putte þe two endeȝ of grete þrede  
 four folde, goyng atte firste by þe towel<sup>4</sup> and þe hole of  
 20 þe fistule ; whiche þrede is called ffrenum cesaris, and  
 the whiche also goyng atuyx þe wraiste, in wraistyng þe  
 skynne atuyx þe tewel & þe fistule be faste constreyned  
 aboue þe snowte of þe nedel, vnto þat kittyng be done.  
 24 ‘Siringa’ is an holow instrument by þe middeȝ, and it the  
“Syringe.”  
 ow to be made of the shappe as it is peynted here,  
 nouper gretter ne lenger, but euen after þe shappe as it  
 is peynted here ; ne haue it noȝt but oon hole in þe neper  
 28 ende or smaller ende, as it is peynted here [see p. 10,  
 Plates II and III].

<sup>1</sup> ad minus-  
octo  
pollices  
contineat.

“unum  
vertile  
Anglicè  
‘a wrayste’  
imponatur.”

<sup>4</sup> per anum.

<sup>2</sup> The words from here to the end of this page are reproduced in facsimile in Plate III.



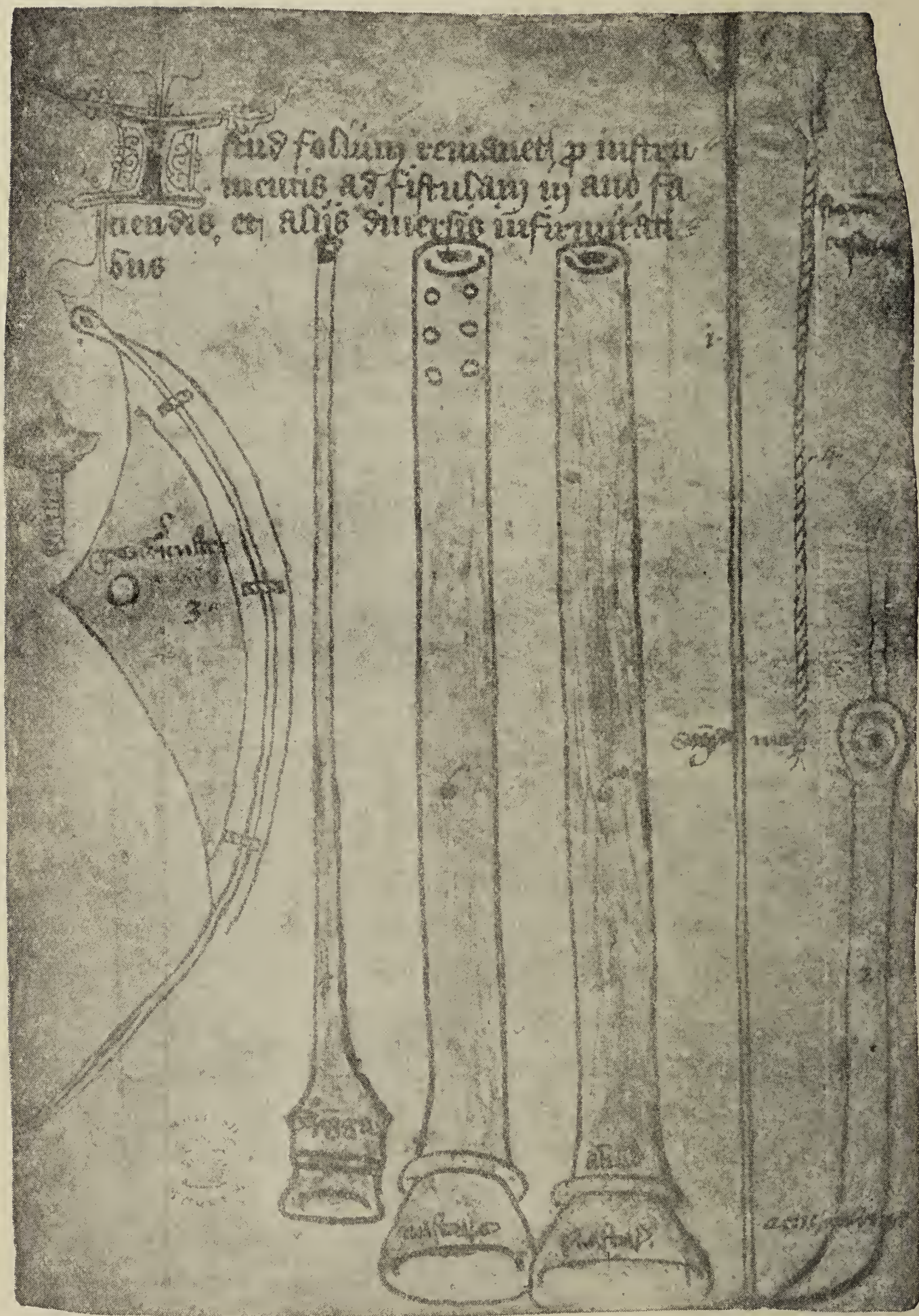


PLATE II.—The instruments used by John Arderne in the cure of fistula.

(1) The probe—sequare me; (2) The snouted needle—acus rostrata; (3) The dilator—tendiculum; (4) The strong thread—Frænum Cæsaris; (5) The peg—vertile—fitting into the hole in the wide part of the tendiculum; (6) The syringe in general use with lateral openings; (6a) Arderne's modification of the syringe with a terminal opening only. [From Sloane MS. 2002, leaf 24.]



in a wayst by mydder of schiche dwaste in pe ouer ende shal be a lital hole yung  
 schiche shal be putte pe ello endez of grette pvede four folde goyns sette faste by pe  
 todel and pe hole of pe fistule. schiche pvede is called *offenū cesarie*. And the  
 schiche also goyns atwix pe dwaste in dwastyns. pe *seymen tux* pe reddel a  
 pe fistule be faste constreyned above pe snodde of pe nedel yn to pat luttyns be  
 done. *Sirmga* is an holoth instrument by pe mydder and it oold to be made of the  
 schappe as it is peynted here. now grette ne lenger. but euen aft<sup>r</sup> pe shappe as it is  
 peynted here. ne haue it nozt but von hole in pe ney ende oz snaller ende as it  
 is peynted here.

*Seymen tux* oz *proba*

*Sirmga*

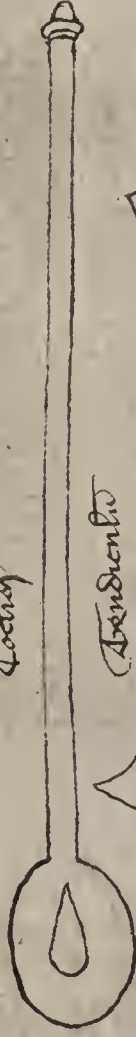


*Dons postata*

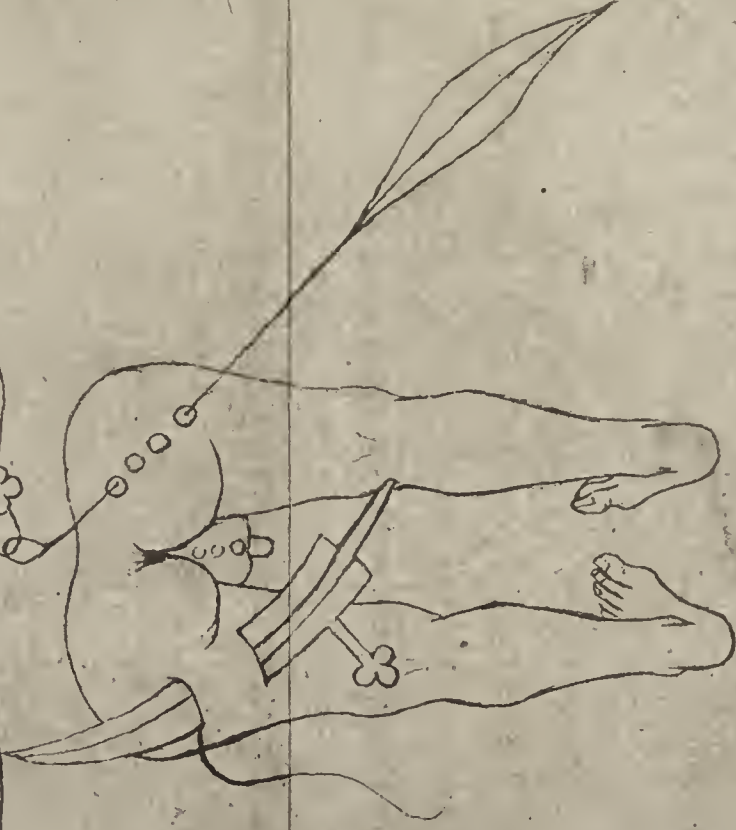


*ffromū cesarie*

*Tocho*



*Stendicula*







Of þe aposteme<sup>5</sup> in þe lure causyng þe fistule, [leaf 145]  
and þe cure of tham.

2. [T]hof-al þe principal entent was for to trete de  
4 fistula in ano, Neþerles it spedep first for to touche som-  
what of aposteme bredyng þer-in or nize,<sup>1</sup> siþe oft tyme  
aposteme<sup>3</sup> bredyng þer bene cause of fistule or of cancre.  
ffor, after auctours, Aposteme y-bred in any place of þe  
8 body, if it be not y-helid by þre or four monepes, it is  
turned into a fistule or a cancre. Therfore when ther  
falleth ane aposteme in þe lure or nize<sup>1</sup> þou shalt knowe  
it by þese signes; þat is by bolnyng, akyng, brynnynge,  
12 þekyng & prikyng.<sup>2</sup> And the pacient for akyng and  
anguissh may nouper sitte ne ligge ne slepe. Whiche  
apperyng, first it is to labour to þe slakyng or esyng of  
the akyng and brennyng and of oper accidente<sup>3</sup> without  
16 repercussione. ffor in þe lure ow noȝt to be repercussion,  
siþe it is ane emunctorie, and in emunctorie<sup>3</sup> ow it noȝt to  
be done; þese bene emunctorie<sup>3</sup>:—þe armeholes, þe  
peholes, þe chawelle<sup>3</sup>,<sup>3</sup> &c. And witte þou after  
20 Gilbertyne þat ane aposteme beyng within þe lure is  
cured with þe infusion of oile roset in which is ceruse  
distempred, or led brent, or litarge, or all þise if þai be  
hadde, or with þe zolk of an ey. And he be euermore  
24 warre of paynyng of egestion. And ȝif his wombe be  
costyue<sup>4</sup> be it softned þat þe hardnes of þe ordure bryng  
noȝt in anguissh in egestion doying. And be it softned  
with ane emplastre of malue<sup>3</sup> & swynes grese; Or with  
28 water of decoccioun of malue<sup>3</sup> and branne, with oile or  
butter fressh, or suche other, and be it ȝette in by a  
clistere. Therfore take oyle roset and medle it with þe  
zolke of a rawe ey in euen porcion. Aftir putte it in a  
32 little bleddere, þan take a Nastar of tree<sup>5</sup> and putte it in  
þe bladder and bynde it aboute wip a strong prede, and  
enoynt þe for ende wele with oyle roset, and softly putte  
it in þe lure and presse þat is in þe bleddre with þi  
36 fyngres in-to þe lure. þis, forsoþe, swageþ and  
softenep þe brynnynge, þe prikyng, smertyng &  
akyng, and comfortep þe membre in boþe cause,<sup>6</sup> þat is

Ischio-rectal  
abscess a  
common  
cause of fis-  
tula.

Signs of an  
ischio-rectal  
abscess.

Gilbertyn's  
treatment  
with litharge  
and rose oil.

A plaster  
of mallows  
and pork fat  
is good if  
injected  
through a  
glyster pipe.

<sup>1</sup> vel exterius  
prope anum.

<sup>2</sup> per  
tunorem et  
dolorem,  
ardorem  
atque  
prurimum et  
puncturam.

<sup>3</sup> "axillæ  
inguina et  
fauces," says  
the Latin  
text.

<sup>4</sup> etsi venter  
constipetur.

<sup>5</sup> tunc  
accipe unum  
instru-  
mentum  
ligneum,  
concavum  
per medium,  
quod  
Nastare  
ligneum  
vocatur.

<sup>6</sup> in omnibus  
membris  
corporis.

boþe in hote and colde. ffor, after auctores, Oile roset  
coldeþ ane hote membre and hoteþ ane colde membre<sup>1</sup>;  
and it dop many oper profites pere and in al þe  
membres of þe body. And þerfore a gode leche puruey<sup>2</sup> 4  
hym þat he want neuer oyle roset, siþe þer procedeþ of  
it many helpyngis to mannes body; for why; after Galien  
to euery akyng hote oile roset is mytigatif. Vpon þe  
aposteme, forsoþe, vtward be putte a gode emplastre and 8  
riȝt maturatif of diaquilon resolute with oile roset, or oile  
of lilieȝ, or of camamill, or dialtred,<sup>3</sup> or comon oyle, þat is  
oyle of olyue, or swyne grese, or gandres,<sup>4</sup> or maulerdes,<sup>5</sup>  
or hennes grese. ffor whi; diaquilon þus y-ordeyned and 12  
put-to matureþ colde materieȝ & resolueþ & mollifieþ  
hard materies. Also be þer made suche a vntment þat is  
riȝt mitigatiue. *Recipe*: tame comon malueȝ<sup>6</sup> M. i or M. ij,  
& brisse þam in a mortar, and put þam in a quart of 16  
oyle of olyueȝ and lat þam putrifie þerin 7 dayes or 9.  
After boile þam long at þe fire vnto þe oile be wele  
grene; after cole it and \* kepe it: þis oyntment is ryȝt  
mitigatiue of akyng of apostemeȝ, and mollifieȝ þan if it 20  
be put vpon [tham] hote with lana succida. Lana succida  
is wolle þat groweth atuix þe leggeȝ of ane ewe about þe  
vdder, ful of swet,<sup>7</sup> noȝt y-wasshe, and it opneþ strongly  
and consumeth; oyle, forsoþe, of propirte holdeþ opne 24  
and draweth and swageþ akyng. If, forsoþ, þou haue  
noȝt lanam succidam þan dippe a lyn clout in þe forseid  
oyntement and putte it hotte vppon and bynde it warly  
þat it fal not away. Also ane emplastre of þe forseid 28  
malueȝ is a ful gode maturatif and mitigatif of akyng in  
apostemeȝ of þe lure and of wymmenȝ pappeȝ, and to al  
oper apostemeȝ þat nedep maturacion. And it is made  
þus. *Recipe*: malueȝ tame M. i. or ij; seþe þam in 32  
watir to þai wax softe, þan put þam out of þe watre  
and presse oute þe watre of þam, and aftir hakke þam  
small wiþ a sharp knyf on a clene borde; þan frye þam  
in a panne ouer þe fire with comon oyle or butter or 36  
swynes grese, Or, if þe pacient be riche or noble, with  
som of þe forseid oileȝ. And aftir vpon clene stuppes be  
it put on þe aposteme. And witte þou here þat if þou  
may haue wormed it profiteþ mich in curyng if it be 40

A prescrip-  
tion for a  
soothing  
ointment.

[\* leaf 145,  
back]

Lana suc-  
cida what  
it is

Prescrip-  
tion for an  
ointment for  
an abscess of  
the breast.

<sup>1</sup> oleum ros.  
membrum  
supercal-  
dens infrigi-  
dat et super  
infrigidatum  
calefecit.

<sup>2</sup> "provi-  
deat."

<sup>3</sup> dialthæa.

<sup>4</sup> anatis.

<sup>5</sup> mallardes.

<sup>6</sup> "Malvas  
domesticas  
communes."

<sup>7</sup> sudore  
imbuta.

Nota.  
Pappis [of]  
wommen.



soden & made wip þe forseid malueþ, for þat emplastre  
 is best mitigatiue of akyng of pappes, & bryngeþ in  
 quytour and confortep þe place, and makeþ þe mater  
 4 for to vapour by þe poreþ. And for certeyn it availeþ  
 in al apostemeþ in euery place of þe body, and also in  
 many brissureþ. With þis emplastre in cures of pappes I  
 haue y-gette many worshippeþ and benefetes, for certaynly  
 8 it is soueraynly mitigatyue. But witte þou after all  
 auctours—and I haue proued it for certayn experience—  
 þat ane aposteme bredyng nere þe lure owe not to abide  
 to it breste by itself, but þe leche owe bisily for to fele  
 12 wip his fynger þe place of the aposteme, and wher-so is  
 founden any softenens, þer, þe pacient noþt witting, warly,  
 be it boldely opned wip a ful sharp lancette, þat þe  
 quitour and þe corrupte blode may gone oute. Or elleþ,  
 16 forsope þe gutte or parme þat is called longaon, þat  
 deserueþ to þe lure, shal be bristen wip-in þe lure, and  
 presed byfore þat þe aposteme be bristen withoute-forþe.  
 Whiche case byfallyng, if it al-oonly brest within it is of  
 20 hard cure, and þan shal þer be ragadieþ or frousingez,  
 fforsop if it briste boþe within and with-out, þan may  
 it neuer be cured but by a ful experte chirurgien in his  
 crafte. ffor than may it þe firste day be called a fistule ;  
 24 siþe a fistule is noþt elleþ þan ane vlcus vndesiccable,  
 and for it is vndesiccable, þerfore by consequens it is  
 vncurable, siþe no wonde ne vlcus may be heled but if  
 it may be dried. Som tyme it bifalleth som men for to  
 28 haue ane hole apperyng outward al-oonly, persyng þurþ  
 þe longaon within þe lure by þe space of ane ynche  
 or of tuo, and bisyde þat anoþer hole with-out, noþt  
 persyng þe longaon with-in-forþ. And I haue sene som  
 32 haue 7 or 9 holeþ on þe tone party of þe buttokkis, and  
 6 or 5 on þe toþer party, of whiche noon of þam,  
 outake oon, persed longaon. And I haue sene som haue  
 2 or 3 holeþ on þe buttokke, and 2 or 3 descendyng  
 36 \*doun into þe codde of þe testiculeþ. And I haue sene  
 som haue oon hole or many in þe tone buttock, and oon  
 or tuo on þe party of þe 3erde persyng als wele longaon  
 as þe 3erde. And in þis case, as by my demyng, sich  
 40 pacientes bene vncurable, and þat for fistulyng of þe

Arderne has  
 used this  
 ointment  
 with benefit  
 in many  
 cases.

An ischio-  
 rectal  
 abscess  
 should not  
 be allowed  
 to burst,  
 but should  
 be opened  
 as soon as  
 it softens,

otherwise  
 chronic  
 ulceration  
 and fistula  
 may follow,

for a fistula  
 is only an  
 ulcer that  
 cannot be  
 dried up.

The results  
 of a fistula.  
 [\* leaf 146]

Ardene  
cured a  
priest of a  
urethral  
abscess at  
Master  
Geoffrey  
Scrope's  
house in  
Lincoln.

Urethral  
fistulæ are  
sometimes  
associated  
with uræmic  
symptoms,

which  
Bernard de  
Gordon  
teaches are  
due to a  
connection  
between the  
muscles of  
the pelvic  
floor, the  
stomach,  
and the  
brain.

zerde. And þat may be knowen, for som-tyme þe sperme goþ oute by þe hole of þe zerde infistulate, and som-tyme vryne or bothe. Neþerlesse I cured a preste, at lincolne in þe house of Maistre Giffrey Scrope, þat 4 had aposteme in his zerde, of whiche als wele vryne as quitour come doune into his codde, and sometyme blode went oute by þe hole of þe zerde, and his testicules war bolned out of mesure. Therfore, first, I putte on his 8 testicule; oon oyntement ruptorye, and I made an hole by whiche went out bothe vryne and quitour; þis i-do, þer shewed ane bolnyng vnderneþe in þe zerde riȝt be þe lure, whiche I opned wip a ruptorie; whiche y-opned, 12 þer went out boþe quitour and vryne. Whom y-cured þerfitely, oure lord beyng mene<sup>1</sup>; but for certeyne his lure & longaon war vnhurte. And witte þou þat þis cure was ful hard. þerfore in suche þingis be a leche avised 16 and discrete. Also a leche owe to be circumspecte in his askyngis, þat he enquire bisily of þe pacient if he fele ony tyme ventosite; or egestion; go out by þe holes of þe fistule. Also enquire he of þe pacient ȝif he fele 20 any heynes or greuounes in his heued; Or if it appere to hym þat þe house some-tyme is turned vp-so-doune<sup>2</sup> as it shuld falle, and þe pacient may noȝt for drede of fallyng enclyne to þe erthe; And if þe pacient fele 24 akyng and heynes or greuounes in his lende;<sup>3</sup> and feblenes in his stomake. Also sey he to þe pacient þus: 'I wote þat þe kynde of þe fistule is soche þat somtyme it is opned by itself and putteþ out quitour, 28 somtyme pikke and somtyme þynne, somtyme watery and somtyme blody. And somtyme it is closed be itself, & so by a moneþ or more þer renneþ no-þing out; and eft-sone; it bigynneþ to ake or þat it caste out quitour. 32 And aftirward it is opned by itself, and renneþ as it is seid afore, and aftirward it is sperred.'<sup>4</sup> ffor suche pronosticacions sheweþ and tokneth to þe pacient þat þe leche is experte in þe knowyng of þe fistule, and so þe 36 pacient wil better trist vnto hym. And witte þou, aftir Bernard of Gordon, þat þe synowe; closyng and openyng þe lure haþe festnyng with þe stomake and wip þe ventricule; of þe brayne, And for this cause suche 40

<sup>1</sup> Domino  
mediante.

<sup>2</sup> ut si  
appareat ei  
quod domus  
subver-  
tatur.

<sup>3</sup> "et si  
sentiat  
gravitatem  
in lumbis."

<sup>4</sup> et postea  
clauditur.



<sup>1</sup> in capite.

pacienteȝ ar som tyme vexed in þe heued<sup>1</sup> and in þe stomak. When þe leche, forsoþe, haþ talked þus to þe pacient, as it is seid, and þe pacient aske & persew  
 4 for to be cured of hym, aske þan first þe sizt of þe sekenes; Whiche y-sene, be þe leche war þat he put noȝt his fynger in þe lure of þe pacient, ne shewe no pryue instrumenteȝ wher-of þe pacient myȝt wonder or  
 8 be aferd; or if perauenture þe pacient haue wilyly broȝt in with hym any leche for to aspye, as I haue oft tyme sene. But considere þe leche bisily þe maner of þe fistule, & perceyue if it be curable. Ȝit<sup>2</sup> a leche ow for

The method of operating not to be revealed to the patient or to his leech.

<sup>2</sup> Nihilominus.

12 \*to feyne perileȝ and hardenes of curyng, and for to make pronosticacions wilely þat þe sikenes askep long tyme of curyng, for þat þat þe medicyneȝ y-putte to may not abyde long for purgyng of þe wombe, and for moche  
 16 moystenenes goyng out of þe lure, and for many opir lettyngis, as for þe lure is to streyte, or þe buttokkes be to grete or hard, or for þe pacient is waike of herte or vnobedient for to persew his cure or for to kepe his diete, and

[\* leaf 146, back]

Questions to be answered before operating on a fistula.

<sup>3</sup> quæ debet capite proprio figere quæ sibi constiterit fore necessaria.

<sup>4</sup> Domino mediante.

þat he supposeth be necessarye.<sup>3</sup> And þise pronosticated, if þe pacient stond stedfastly þat he be cured, or aske if he may be cured, þan sey þe leche þus: 'I dout noȝt,

The prognosis of an operation.

24 oure lord beyng mene,<sup>4</sup> and þi gode pacience folowyng, ȝif þou wilt competently make satisfaccion to me, as sich a cure—noȝt litle to be commended—askep, þat ne þingis y-kept þat ow to be kepte, and y-lefte þat ow  
 28 to be lefte, as it is seyde, I shal mow bryng þis cure to a loueable ende and heleful.' And þan acorde pay of couenant, of whiche couenaunt—al excusacione y-put

Arrangements for the payment of the fee.

<sup>5</sup> Quo peracto medium pretii præ manibus capiat omni excusatione propositâ.

abak—take he þe half byfore handeȝ<sup>5</sup>; And þan assigne  
 32 a day to þe pacient when he will bygynne. In þe mene tyme, forsoþe, ordeyne þe leche redy his medicynes and his instrumentis; þat is to sey þat he haue first two spongieȝ or þre at þe lest, & a rasour or a ful sharp  
 36 launcet, and oper instrumentis named afore, as Sequere me, Acum rostratam, Tendiculum; And silke þredes, and lyn cloutes, and girdelleȝ, and oper þat ar seid afore and to be seid here-after. Haue he also redy a medicyne  
 40 restrictyue of blode, and warme or leuke watre, and all

Preparations for the operation.



Choice of  
a day for  
operating.

opir necesarie3, þat no-þing wante þat the leche may nede in his wirchyng. And ouer al this it is best & most sikir þat he kutte no3t in þe lure ne do no violence ne greuounes to it in þe tyme þat þe mone is in Scorpion, 4 or Libra, or sagittarius, for þan of astronomye3 is forbede þer kuttyng. ffor as wille souerayne astronomie3 and astrologiens, þat is to sey Ptholomeus,<sup>1</sup> Pictagoras,<sup>2</sup> Rasis, and Haly, &c. A cyrurgien ow no3t for to kutte or brenne 8 in any membre of a mannes body, ne do fleobotomye whiles þe mone is in a signe gouernyng or tokenyng þat membre.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ptolomæus,  
<sup>2</sup> Pythagoras.

<sup>3</sup> The Latin texts contain a chapter headed

Nota de cognitione signorum Lunæ.

12

A method  
for finding  
the position  
of the moon  
on any given  
day by  
means of  
the calendar  
and the  
table.

Si quis scire et invenire voluerit in quo signo cœli fuerit Luna omni die, primo sciat signum in quo Luna soli jungatur et diem conjunctionis per kalendarium. Quo invento tunc scias quod ab illa hora diei vel noctis in qua fuerit conjunctio usque 16 ad talem horam diei sequentis completur, prima dies Lune. Postea computa quot sunt dies ab imprimatione prædicta usque ad diem de quo queris in kalenderio. Tunc videndum est in tabula precidente ubi invenitur numerus ille. Quo invento, queratur 20 in superiori capite tabulæ sub quo signo Luna fuerit pr<sup>ma</sup> sub quo recte descendens transeas donec directe perveneas ad signum correspondens Linealiter numero ætatis Lunæ prædictæ, et in illo signo existit Luna eodem die. Et nota quod in ista computatione dies 24 naturalis ad meridiem diei incipit secundum Astronomos. Qui, igitur, de tempore certificari voluerit tabulam sequentem de 12 signis discat et agnoscat; sic, incipit Aries, Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, &c. 28

[The Table given on pages 18, 19 follows here in Latin Text.]

The best  
astrologers  
declare that  
no operation,  
not even bleed-  
ing, should  
be undertaken  
whilst the moon  
is in the sign  
governing the  
part to be  
operated upon.

Sicunt volunt Astrologi summi videlicet Ptolomæus, Pythagoras, Rhasis, Haly, &c., non debet cirugus incidere vel urere in aliquo membro corporis humani nec facere phlebotomiam dum Luna fuerit in signo regnante illud membrum. Nam secundum est quod 32 12 signa zodiaci regunt 12 partes humani corporis prout patet in imagine prædicta, ubi aries quod est signum igneum temperate sic cum caput regit cum suis contentis. Luna vero in ariete existente cave ab incisione in capite et facie et [ne] incidas venam capitalem. 36 Luna vero in tauro existente, cave ab incisione colli vel gutturis, nec incidas venam in his locis. Luna existente in geminis cave ab incisione spatularum brachiorum et manuum nec aperias venam in his locis. Luna existente in cancro cave ab incisione in 40 mammis vel pectore aut stomacho, et a læsione pulmonis, nec incidas arteriam seu venam ad ipsam directionem. Luna existente

Luna in can-  
cro bonum /  
Luna in

leone indif-  
ferens /  
Luna in vir-  
gine indif-  
ferens /  
Luna in  
libra bo-  
num /  
Luna in  
Scorpione  
malum /  
Luna in  
sagittario  
bonum /  
Luna in  
Capricorn:  
malum /  
L. in Aquar. 12  
malum /  
Luna in  
pisce bo-  
num /

in leone cave a læsione laterum, costarum et ne incidas in dorso neque per apertionem neque per ventosam. Luna existente in virgine cave in ventre aut in locis interioribus occultis, nec minuas  
4 matricem mulierum deservientem. Luna existente in libra cave ne umbilico aut in natibus et hanc [in ano] nec in renibus, nec venam renibus servientem aperias, nec ventosam apponas. Luna existente in scorpione cave testiculorum, virgæ virilis, colli vesicæ,  
8 nec aperias venam testiculorum deservientem nec ventosam apponas. Luna in sagittario existente cave ab incisione femorum nec incidas maculas vel superfluitates quascunque in corpore humano existentes. Luna existente in Capricorno cave in genibus et a læsione venarum  
12 et nervorum in his locis. Luna existente in aquario cave ne incidis in tibiis aut in nervis earum a genibus usque ad inferiora cavillarum. Luna vero existente in pisce cave in pedibus, nec venam aperias in eorum extremitatibus.<sup>1</sup>

A note on the recognition of the Signs of the Moon.

16 If any one wishes to know and to discover in which sign of the heaven the moon is on any day, he must first discover in the almanac the sign in which the Moon is in conjunction with the Sun and the day of the conjunction. When this is found you know  
20 the first day of the moon because it is from that hour of the day or night when the conjunction occurs to the same hour of the next day. Then calculate by the almanac the number of days from the new moon thus obtained to the day you want. Look next in the  
24 previous table where the number is found, and when it is found look in the upper line of the table for the sign in which the moon is. Coming straight down from this you cross until you come directly to the sign corresponding lineally with the number  
28 of the age of the moon, and this gives the sign of the moon on that day. And note that in this calculation the natural day begins at midday according to the Astronomers. If any one wishes therefore to be sure of the time let him learn and under-  
32 stand the following table of the 12 signs. It begins thus—Aries, Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, &c.

The influ-  
ence of the  
Moon on the  
body.

To ascertain  
the house of  
the Moon.

[The table is given on pp. 18 and 19.]

The highest Astrologers, viz.: Ptolomy, Pythagoras, Rhasis, Haly, &c., aver that a surgeon ought not to cut or to cauterise any  
36 member of the human body nor to breathe a vein so long as the moon is in the house ruling that member. For the 12 signs of the Zodiac rule the twelve parts of the human body, as is clear from the aforementioned drawing, where Aries, which is a fiery sign  
40 moderately dry, governs the head with its contents. But when the moon is in Aries beware of operating upon the head or face and do not open one of the head veins. When the moon is in Taurus refrain from operating upon the neck or throat and do not  
44 bleed from a vein in these parts. When the moon is in Gemini beware of operating on the shoulders, arms or hands, and do not

The influ-  
ence of the  
Moon in  
surgery.

<sup>1</sup> Supplied from Rawlinson, C 355, in the Bodleian Library.

Table for finding the Moon's house.

Ætas Lunæ	Martius	Aprilis	Maius	Junius	Julius	Augustus	September	Octob'	Novemb'	Decemb'	Januarius	Februat'
1	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces
2												
3	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries
4												
6	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus
7												
8	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini
9												
10												
11	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer
12												
13	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo



Table for finding the Moon's house.

Libra	Scorpio	Scorpio	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo
Scorpio	Sagittarius	Sagittarius	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra
Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Capricorn.	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio
Capricorn.	Aquarius	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Sagittarius
Aquarius	Pisces	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Sagittarius	Capricorn.
Pisces	Aries	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius
Aries	Taurus	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces
Taurus	Gemini	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Sagittarius	Capricorn.	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries

14  
15

16  
17

18  
19

20  
21

22  
23

24  
25

26  
27

28  
29  
30

The influ-  
ence of the  
Moon in  
surgery.

open a vein in these parts. When the moon is in Cancer refrain from operating upon the breasts or chest or stomach and from injuring the lungs, neither open an artery or a vein in their neighbourhood. When the moon is in Leo take care not to injure the 4 flanks or the ribs, and do not operate upon the back either by cutting or by cupping. When the moon is in Virgo take care not to operate upon the belly or the internal parts, and do not bleed from the veins supplying the womb in women. When 8 the moon is in Libra refrain from operating upon the navel or upon the buttocks or upon the kidneys, and do not open the vein supplying the kidneys, nor apply a cup. When the moon is in Scorpio refrain from operating upon the testicles, the penis and 12 the neck of the bladder; do not open the testicular vein and do not apply a cup. When the moon is in Sagittarius do not operate upon the thighs, do not remove spots or superfluous parts occurring in any part of the human body. When the moon is in Capricornus 16 refrain from the knees and from injuring the veins and nerves in these parts. When the moon is in Aquarius do not operate upon the legs or upon their nerves from the knees to the bottom of the calves. When the moon is in Pisces do not operate upon the feet 20 and do not open the vein in their extremities.

---

Of diffinicion of a fistule, and places þat it  
is bred in, and when it is curable or noȝt.

Definition of  
a fistula.

[N]ow it is to procede to þe curyng of þe fistule. 24  
And aftir auctours of cirurgie, a fistule is a depe aposteme,  
hauyng oonly oon hole somtyme, and ofte-tymes two  
or þre, and oftymes mo, and bredyng in eche membre  
of þe body of aposteme or of a wounde yuel y-cured, 28  
giffyng out quitour of diuerse colour and of diuerse  
substaunce; þat is to sey now white and pinne, now  
watrye, now as wasshyng of flesshe þat is rawe, now  
clotty; somtyme myche stynkyng, somtyme litle. And 32  
somtyme þe holes ar closed be þam-self, and aftir a  
fourtenizt or a moneþ, akyng goyng afore in þe place,  
þai ar eft-sones opned. And when sicke maner fistules  
is bredde in þe armes or in the brest, or in þe costes, or 36  
in þe pies, or in þe knees, or in þe legges, or in þe  
fete, or in þe hende, or in þe ioyntours [\*of<sup>1</sup> þise, þat it  
corrumpeþ oft-tyme þe boneȝ and þai ycorrupte ar oft  
tymeȝ put out by þe holeȝ of þe fistule. ¶ Bot fistuleȝ of 40

Various  
kinds of dis-  
charge.

Fistulæ may  
heal and  
afterwards  
re-open.

[\*Sloane MS.  
277, leaf 66,  
col. 1]

Prognosis  
of fistulæ.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. Sloane 6 is defective here. The missing folios are supplied from another English version, Sloane 277, made early in the fifteenth century.

iuncture<sup>3</sup> noȝt comyng of outward cause ar called þe  
festred  
 fistulat gout. And sich fistule<sup>3</sup> almost bene all vncurable,  
 and namely in Wymmen. In ȝong<sup>1</sup> men forsoþ or waxen  
 4 men, I hafe seene few euer be cured, out-tak þat I haue  
 sene tuiyse or þrise som waxen men by long processe of tyme,  
 þurȝ benefice of nature, be cured of þe fistula in þe legge<sup>3</sup>  
 and in þe fete; þat is to sey in þe seuent ȝere or fourtent  
 8 or two and tuenty fro þe tyme þat þe fistule come to þam.  
 And þat miȝt be for, after Ypocras, alle sekeneȝ ouper is  
 termyned after þe mouyng of þe mone or of þe son. ¶ If  
 it be after þe mouyng of þe mone. so it is termined in þe  
 12 fourtened day, which is endyng of acuteȝ sekeneȝ and  
 bygynnyng of croniceȝ.

Festred  
gout  
bad in  
women,  
sometimes  
cured spon-  
taneously in  
young men.

An acute  
illness be-  
comes  
chronic at  
the end of a  
fortnight.

If it be after þe mouyng of þe son þan þe first schal  
 be in þe seuent moneþ or seuent ȝere and so ascendyng  
 16 vpward by seuen, &c. \* ¶ And witte þou þat al ȝong  
 men hauyng sich forseid fistuleȝ, if þai be in febreȝ and  
 lene of body, ful seldom abideþ þe fourtened ȝere. To  
 which for-soþ noieth most vse of milk and of fruyte and  
 20 lichery. ¶ If þe fistule for-soþ be in a fleschy place of  
 þe body al-only, it is possible to be cured and þer-for  
*fistula in ano* or bredyng nize may wele be cured.

[\* leaf 66,  
col. 2]

Milk, fruit  
and lechery  
bad for long-  
standing  
fistulæ.

Whileȝ neþerlesse it be noȝt ouer olde or depe,<sup>2</sup> þat may  
 24 be knowen by þe hardnes of þe place and discoloryng of  
 þe skynne and mich goyng out of þe egestionȝ, and  
 feblyneȝ of þe pacient, and if it haue perced þe waieȝ of  
 þe vryne. ¶ þerfor wake ȝe þat couaitise blynde noȝt  
 28 þe sizt of ȝour eizen,<sup>3</sup> þat it may noȝt deme atuix curable  
 and vncurable.

Take care  
not to  
operate for  
the sake of  
the fee only.

Of a maner of wirchyng in fistula in ano and  
 þe curyng þer-of.

32 When for-soþ thou knoweȝ þat he þat hap fistule  
 in þe lure, or niz biside, is strong and þe place of  
 þe sekeneȝ wele colored and þat the pacient is gode  
 herted and abydyng, it is noȝt to drede þat-ne þe lech  
 36 schal spede wele in þe cure of it if he be experte.  
 ¶ Which perceyued, when þe pacient and þe lech ar

Selection of  
patient.

<sup>1</sup> ȝong written above, olde deleted.

<sup>2</sup> dummodo  
tamen nota  
fuerit nimis  
inveterata  
vel profun-  
dior.

<sup>3</sup> vigilate  
ergo ne  
cupiditas  
oculorum  
aciem ex-  
teret.



To be taken  
to the oper-  
ating room.

Advice to  
patient at  
[\* leaf 67]  
time of oper-  
ation to be  
brave and  
obedient.

Patient to  
be in a good  
light;

position to  
be adjusted.

The leech's  
mate to be  
told what to  
do.

The rectum  
to be explor-  
ed with a  
finger. [Cf.  
frontispiece]

The fistula  
to be deemed  
incurable if  
the rectum  
is perfor-  
ated.

acorded in al þings, þan be þe pacient ledde to a place  
made redy Where þe lech schal do þe mynysteryng of  
cure. And all men amoued away out-take one or tuo,  
pat þe lech will haue with hym to his helping, ouþer of 4  
his owne men or of oper; þan sey þe lech þus to þe  
pacient, reward<sup>1</sup> yhadde to þe person of þe pacient.  
¶ 'Witte þour gentilnes and þour hiznes, and also þour  
godehertynes, pat þe gracious perfeccion \* of þis cure ow 8  
not only to be recced as now to þe possibilite of my gode  
bisynes, bot also to þour gode and abydyng pacience.  
¶ And for-alsmich be it noȝt hidde to þow þat if 3e be  
vnobedient and vnpacient to my commandyngs, lustyng 12  
þe tyme of wirchyng, 3e may falle in-to a ful gret perile  
or tary longer þe effecte of þe cure. Therfor beþ-war,  
For he þat is warned afore is noȝt bygiled. Paynful  
things passeþ sone when at the next foloweþ glorious 16  
helthe.'<sup>2</sup> ¶ þise things yseid, be þe pacient putte vp-on  
a bedde bifore a liȝt Wyndow, and be he putte after þe  
maner of þe sekenes þat is if þe holeȝ of þe fistule be  
in þe lefte side lye he on þe lefte side. And if þai be 20  
in the riȝt side vp-on þe riȝt side, or if þai be to-ward  
rigebone<sup>3</sup> lie he þan wide opne boþe his leggeȝ or þe  
tone raised vp after þat it semeth more spedeful and be  
þai hungen vp with a corde or with a towell festned 24  
aboue to a balk or a beme. ¶ þe felaw of þe lech sitte  
at þe bakke of þe pacient, aboue on þe bedde þat þe  
pacient lieþ in, and hold fast with his handeȝ þe ouer  
buttoke in raisyng it vpward þat þe lech may haue gode 28  
siȝt in his wyrchyng. ¶ þan at first putte the leche þe  
schewyng<sup>4</sup> fynger of his left hande enoynted with oile, or  
som oyntment, in-to þe lure of þe pacient. Which ydo  
with þe tother hand putte he þe heued of þe instrument 32  
þat is called sequare me in-to þe hole of þe fistule  
\* þat is next to þe lure, if þer be many holeȝ, and assay  
bisily on þe fynger beyng in þe lure if he fele with it  
the instrument or fynger with-out any þing atuiȝ. 36  
Which if byfall witte he with-out dout þat þe longaon  
is persed. ¶ And þan witte he for certayn þat it  
byhoueþ noȝt to cure þe pacient with no cure bot cuttyng  
with yren, or fretyng with a threde strengely yfestned. 40

<sup>1</sup> habito  
respectu ad  
personam  
patientis;  
"sciat  
generositas  
vestra et  
celsitudo  
necnon  
vestra mag-  
nanimitas."

<sup>2</sup> Cito tran-  
siebunt  
penosa,  
cū in prox-  
imo salus  
succedit  
gloriosa.

<sup>3</sup> versus  
caudam  
spinæ dorsi,  
i. e. "rig-  
bon" ejus-  
dem.

<sup>4</sup> digitum  
manus sinis-  
træ . . . qui  
index dici-  
tur.

[\* leaf 67,  
col. 2]

¶ If þat hole for-soþe be noȝt distant fro þe lure bot by  
a nynch al-one, þan schal kutting be þe moste kynde  
and sonest cure; þat if it be so, þan tak þe lech *Acum*  
4 *rostratam* and putte he þe end hauyng þe eiȝ þurȝ þe  
hole next to þe lure þe lefte fynger yputte, as it is seid,  
in-to þe lure. And when he feleþ þe nedle wip his  
fynger, labor he warly þat he may bring out with his  
8 fynger þe heued of þe instrument þurȝ þe lure applyng  
and wryping. ¶ Whiche ydo, be þer taken a four-  
fold prede of silk white or of strong lyne or twayne and it  
is called *frenum Cesaris*. And be it put in þe eiȝ of þe  
12 nedle And with þat prede anoper single threde and at  
oneȝ and to-gidre be þe nedle drawen þurȝ þe lure and  
þe hole of þe fistule. Afterward þe single prede be  
fest by itself noȝt constreynyng, bot þat it go noȝt out  
16 þe lech noȝt willyng, þar-if *paraurentur frenum cesaris* be  
kutte or brusten þan schal þer anoper *frenum cesaris*  
mow be broȝt in with þe forseid prede with-out any  
anguisch. ¶ Therfor be þe lech witty in þis wirchyng  
20 þat he may do, and kon do, tuo things þan he fyndeþ  
in wrytyngs, \*For al þings þat ow to be done about sich  
werk may noȝt be expressed in lettereȝ, and þerfor it by-  
houeþ a crafty [lech] to be wise and slyȝe wele ymagynyng  
24 subtile þings, þat in þose þings þat perteneþ to þe  
perfitenes of þis werk and aboue þo þings þat he has  
lerned in þis boke he may availe hym þurȝ benefice of  
his ovne witte; For Boecius seith ¶ *De disciplina scholar-*  
28 *ium*, He is of moste wreched witte þat euer more vseþ  
þings yfounden and noȝt things to be founden.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þer-  
for þe frene and þe prede ydrawen, as it is seid, þan  
may þou chese wheper þou will kutte it or fret it with  
þe pred. ¶ Iff thou will kutte it þan schalt þou take  
32 þe *pred.* ¶ Iff thou will kutte it þan schalt þou take  
*acum rostratam* and] <sup>2</sup> putte it þurȝ þe middeȝ of þe lengþe  
of þe instrument þat is called *tendiculum*, bygynnyng at þe  
gretter ende. After take boþe þe endes of *freni cesaris*,  
drawen þurȝ þe middes of þe lure and of þe hole of þe  
fistule, and þurȝ þe middis of þe hole of þe instrument þat  
is called *vertile*—a wraiste—. Be þai drawen þurȝ, and  
be þai faste y-knettid in proporcionyng þe lengþe of þe

Incision to  
be preferred  
to the  
ecraseur.

A pilot  
thread to be  
used in case  
the main  
ligature  
should  
break or be  
cut.

The direc-  
tions here  
given are  
merely hints  
[\* lf. 67, bk.,  
col. 1]  
which the  
leech may  
elaborate if  
he have the  
ability.

[leaf 147]

The cure of  
fistula by  
cutting.

The use of  
the ligature,

<sup>1</sup> Sic igitur  
medicus in-  
geniosus in  
hac opera-  
tione ut  
plura quam  
in scriptis  
inveniat  
agere sciat:  
quia omnia  
quæ circa  
tale opus  
fieri debent  
non possunt  
litteris ex-  
primi. Et  
ideo oportet  
artificem esse  
providen-  
tem, sub-  
tilia bene  
imagan-  
tem, ut in  
his quæ ad  
hujus operis  
perfectio-  
nem perti-  
nent super  
ea quæ in  
hoc libello  
didicerit in-  
genii bene-  
ficio valeat  
prævalere.  
Dicit enim  
Boëcius "de  
disciplina  
scholarium,"  
"Miserrimi  
est ingenii  
qui tantum  
utitur in-  
ventis et in-  
veniendis."

<sup>2</sup> MS. Sloane 6, leaf 147, continues.



which is to  
be tightened  
by the  
peg.

The end of  
the snowted  
needle to be  
fitted into  
the hole in  
the spoon or  
protector to  
prevent  
injury to the  
bowel whilst  
the fistula  
is being  
divided.

Don't try to  
do too much  
at a time.

The methods  
of stopping  
the bleeding

by sponge  
pressure,

freni cesaris as it bihoueth, þat is after þe distance of þe  
hole of þe tendiculi to þe hole of þe fistule; þan take þe  
tendicule and putte þe snowte of þe nedle in þe hole of þe  
fistule in-puttyng it strongly. Afterward take þe wraiste 4  
wip freno cesaris, and put it in þe hole of þe tendicule,  
þat is þe side of it; whiche y-putte in, putte þi fynger in  
þe lure, and wip þe toper hand prist faste þe tendicule  
with þe snowt toward þy fynger. And when þou seeþ 8  
tyme, be þe wraist turned aboute þat frenum cesaris hold  
fast þe tendicule þat it go noȝt out. And so labour þe  
leche vnto þat he bringe out þe poynt of þe snowte by  
þe middes of þe lure; and þat he streyne fast þe 12  
flesshe festned in þe frene wip þe wraiste and þe frene.  
Whiche y-do, take þe instrument þat is called coclear—  
a spone—Of whiche þe holow heued be putte in þe lure  
agayn þe poynt of þe snowte, so þat þe poynt of þe 16  
snowte stand in þe hole þat is in þe spone, noȝt þurȝ  
persed, & be þat halden of þe felaw of þe leche; þis,  
forsoþe, shal defende þe lure þat it be noȝt hurt, þurȝ  
uncouenable mouyng and sodayn styrryng of þe pacient, 20  
wip þe poynt of þe rasour or of þe launcette. As  
soon afterward—þe pacient comforted—putte þe leche þe  
poynt of þe rasour in þe holwnes of þe snowte þat is  
in þe spone, and, als sone as he may, boldly kutte þe 24  
flesshe festened in þe frene aboue þe snowte euen be  
þe middes; and it y-kutte by þe middes, þe snowte  
wip þe frene shal lepe out by it-self. If, forsoþe, þer  
be many holes þat ow to be kuttet, be it done as it is 28  
seid. Or if it be nede, differre it to anoper tyme; ffor  
in som case þe toper holes beyng outward may be heled  
wipoute kuttyng or byndyng of prede. Of whiche it  
shal be seid afterward, þan it is to labour to þe 32  
staunchyng of blode. ffirst put a spounge wette in a  
litel warme watre and wele wrongen in þe place of the  
kuttyng, and hold it þer fast to receyue þe blode, and  
lat it abide þer a gode while; þerfore when þou 36  
trowest þe sponge to be wele ful of blode, remoue it,  
and if it be nede putte agayn anoper sponge, or þe same  
ordeyned in þe forseid maner. And when þou hast  
doon þus, be þe pacient raised vp warly, and make hym 40



to sitte fast in a redy place vpon þe forseid sponge ;  
 and dout not þat ne it shal be wele staunchid. Aftir-  
 ward when þou demeȝ dew tyme, be þe pacient put  
 4 in a dewe place and þe sponge remoued ; and wheþir  
 þe blode be staunchid, or noȝt, putte in þe kuttyng by styptic  
powders.  
 puluer of boli, sanguis dracon, aloes epaticus, puluer  
 of hennes feþereȝ y-brent, or of an old lyn cloþe y-brynt,  
 8 asshen of heres of hares y-brent, \*Iuyse or puluer of [\* leaf 147,  
back]  
 walwort, &c., Of whiche it shal be seid aftirward in þair  
 place. But witte þou þat it is noȝt required þat al þise  
 at ooneȝ and to-gidre be putte to, but I putte þam here  
 12 þat a leche, som wantyng or noȝt y-had of þe forseid  
 þingis, may competently spede wip þe toþer his nedeȝ  
 or occupacion. ffor why ; eueriche of þise medicynes  
 symply by hymself or medled wip þe white of an ey  
 16 staunchep wele blode per and in opir places. But witte The better  
class not to  
have too  
homely  
remedies.  
 þou þat to worpi men and noble it semeþ to putte to  
 more noble medicynes and more dere. And witte þou  
 þat þe iuse of walwort or puluer of þe same, if it be had  
 20 redy, is namely in euery medicine þat is restrictiue of  
 blode. How, forsoþe, þe poudre of walwort ow to be  
 made, or þe iuse of it to be kepte, it shall be seid aftir-  
 ward. þe medicine restrictiue, forsoþe, y-put to wip  
 24 clene stupes and smal, or wip coton wele y-tesed, or wip  
 heres of hares noȝt y-brent, and with lynnen cloutis put  
 aboue, be it warly bounden ; þat is to sey be he girded on  
 þe bare naked wele streit wip a lynnen girdel. After-  
 28 ward haue he a list of wolnen cloþe, and be it  
 bounden byhynd at þe bak of þe pacient to þe lynnen  
 girdel, and lat it descende atuix his buttokes vpon þe  
 cloutes coueryng þe lure, and be it festned fast to þe  
 32 girdel vpon þe womb, and lat it abide so stille to þe  
 tyme come þat it be eft-sones remoued. If þe holes,  
 forsoþe, be in þe buttock somdele remoued fro þe lure,  
 þan most it operwise be bounden. And þat þus, haue  
 36 þe pacient a wolnen girdel or a lynnen, wip þe whiche  
 he be girded in þe flankeȝ, to þe whiche girdel be hongen  
 a lynnen cloute hauyng in brede seuen or 8 ynches, and  
 in lengþeȝ als many or mo ; þerfore be þe pacient girded  
 40 þat þe side of þe clout next to þe lure lye riȝt atuix

Styptics to  
be applied  
on small  
pieces of  
clean linen.

How to  
apply the  
bandage.

A T-band-  
age is best.

þe buttockes upon þe lure; and opir cloutes y-putte  
 atuix, þan be bounden two listis hyngyng about þe pie  
 of þe pacient. And if boþe þe buttockes bene hurt,  
 ordeyne he anoper girdel to þe toþer, and be it ordeyned 4  
 as it is seid afore, and on þe same wise. ffor knowe the  
 leche þat competent byndyng shal giffe noȝt litte help in  
 curyng. But if medycyneȝ, forsoþ, may cleue to vnto  
 dew tyme, þe cure shal longer be taried. fforsoþe when 8  
 pou seest, in þe secound day or þe þrid, þe blode wele  
 staunched, þan take þe ȝolke of a raw ey, and wip oile  
 roset or of camomille, or wip sanguis veneris, or, þise  
 defailyng, distempre it wip comon oile, and put it in a 12  
 littel bleddre, and wip anastar of tree ich day but oones  
 be it ȝetted into þe lure, so þat þe wounde be filled  
 perof. And aftirward put aboue lynnen stupeȝ kuttet  
 smal wip shereȝ, and aboue þe stupeȝ a lynnen cloute. 16  
 And þan be it bounden as it perteneþ, and lat it so lye  
 vnto þe morne. And þis cure ow to be kepte by 8 or 9  
 dayes; whiche, forsoþe, y-fulfilled, þanne owe þe leche to  
 putte in þe kuttyng of my poudre þat I, Ioħn Arderne, 20  
 made, whiche I called 'puluer sine pari,' an[d] on frenssh,  
 'poudre saunȝ pere.' I wist neuer, forsoþe, ne knew  
 poudre like to it, Of whiche it shal be seid aftirward in  
 his place.<sup>1</sup> Aboue þe poudre, forsoþ, put coton or stupeȝ 24  
 and bynd it. ¶ And so by tuo hole natural daies be it  
 noȝt moued, bot if voydyng of þe wombe make it<sup>2</sup>; bot  
 warne þe lech þe pacient that he dispose hym so þat  
 he remoue noȝt þe medycyne in any maner in als-mich as 28  
 he may abstene. Elleȝ þe fruyte and þe vertue with þe  
 effecte of the medycyne schal be annulled. If þe  
 pacient for-soþ may noȝt abstene hym fro þe pryue \*In  
 þe mornyng be it clensted with hote watre and a sponge 32  
 and be it dried and eft soneȝ be putte in of þe forseid  
 poudre, And be it ordeyned as on þe day afore. And  
 ȝitte be he comaunded for to abstene as afore, þat if he do  
 noȝt eft-soneȝ þe þrid tyme be it ordeyned with þe 36  
 same poudre as afore, And ȝitte he be amonysched to  
 abstene. ¶ Afterward wheper he abstene or not, þe  
 place wele yclensted and dried, be þe lure enoynted with

A well-applied bandage aids greatly in the cure.

Remedies to be used on the second or third day when the bleeding is stopped.

Arderne's own preparation "Pulv. sine pare" to be used about the eighth or ninth day.

[Sloane MS. 277, leaf 68, col. 1]

The bowels not to be moved for 48 hours after operation,

[\* leaf 68, back, col. 2]

but the wound to be cleansed and dried after a motion.

Unguentum viride a useful applica-

<sup>2</sup> nisi ventris evacuatio cogerit.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. Sloane 6 is again defective, and the missing folios are again supplied from Sloane MS. 277.



þe fynger dipped in vnguento viridi hard molten in ane ostree schell att þe fyre. And on ich aside about the wounde and within the lure and where-so-euer he seep

tion for chapped skin.

<sup>1</sup> Nam hujus-  
modi un-  
guentum  
omnino  
pruritus  
"smertyng"  
delet et  
excoria-  
tionem,

4 þe skynne flayne. ¶ For why; þis enoyntment doþe away alle smertyng and fleyng.<sup>1</sup> And þis enoyntment is called Salus populi, þe making of which shal be schewed afterward. ¶ Which enoynted, be þer 3etted in as by-

An enema to be injected through a wooden clyster pipe.

8 fore with a nastare of tree of þe 3olke of an ey and oile. And as it is seid in þe place afore, be it reparaed in al þings, renewyng eueryday one3 first with þe forseid oyntment molten in a schell. And be þer 3ette in with

12 a nastare of tree oile with an ey. ¶ And þis wirchyng be continued by 9 daies at the lest. ¶ About the twenty day, forsoth, or 24 or 26, eft-sone3 if þou see nede, þan it is gode þat þou putte bisily within þe lure of poudre

Treatment on 24th-26th day.

16 sine pari, and fille þe place of þe fistule within and without and as it is seid be it redied.<sup>2</sup> ¶ When forsoþ þe wonde is remoued .eft-sone3 as it is seid afore be it wasched and dried and be it anoynted about with Salus

20 populi And after be caste in by a nastare oyle and þe 3olk of ane ey And, if þe pacient may abstene hym fro þe pryue, be it no3t remoued by two daies. \* Elle3 forsoþ when it is nede be it remoued. And considere þe lech

[\* leaf 69, col. 1]

24 bisily þe wounde ymundified if it be wele trefable and with-out hardnes and bolnyng and yuel colour: and som what for to cesse þe superflue moistnes which þe wonde sent out first. þan witte þe lech þat at þe next he may

The means to complete the healing process.

28 putte to cicatrizatiues as bene þise, Puluer of alum zucarin combust, 'bole armenic,' sanguis draconis, Aloe, mirra, sarcocolla, meeles of barley and of beene3, puluer of galle3 and psidie<sup>3</sup> and puluer tanny, gummy arabic, terra

<sup>3</sup> pulvis  
gallarum  
quercuum.

32 sigillata, &c. ¶ Suppose no3t þe lech þat it byhoueþ him to haue in one receyte al thise forseid togidre for þai ar sette here togidre. Bot it is to vnderstand þat þai ar named here togidre þat a lech know al to be of

Many remedies suggested but only some to be used.

36 þe same vertu in regeneracion of flesh an[d] cicatrizatione and þat þai bene al stiptik. And to þise may be added ceruse and litarge of gold and of siluer. ¶ Iff þe lech want any of þem take of þe toþer þat he may fynde,

40 For nouþer it byhoueþ here ne in none oþer place, þat



The remedies to be applied on soft rags cut into small pieces.

[\* leaf 69, col. 2.]  
Our author's unguentum arabicum.

The best sign of a cure is that the dressings remain dry.

[leaf 69, bk., col. 1]

Reasons for preferring to cure by liga-

al þings named þat haþ þe same vertue be putte in every confection; bot tuo, or thre, sufficeþ als mich as alle. ¶ Tak þer-for þe lech of þise forseid, tuo, or thre, or foure and medle þam with þe zolk of a raw ey, a litle 4 oile of lynsede putte to, if it be hadde, or of sanguis veneris or of melle rosat', and with soft stupeþ of lyne kutte smal or with coton. be it putt warly in the wounde, For whi; it clenseth þe wounde and heleþ and dryeþ it wele 8 \* for certayne. ¶ Or þou may put to common vnguentum album þat apotechariez makeþ, þis neperlesse yknownen afore<sup>1</sup> þat þou ow to medle þer-with poudre of bole armenic' and sanguis dragonis, if þou haue it, and oile 12 roset with watre of rose in which be resolved gumme arabic, and bp it wele ymedled togidre and þerof be putte euery day in þe wounde and about þe wounde with coton. And for certayn it heleth wele nozt only 16 þer bot in euery place of þe body. And þis oyntment wold I neuer want and I calle it vnguentum arabicum of gumme arabic þat entreþ perin and þan schal it be of rede colour. ¶ And witte þou þat with þis 20 oyntment without any oþer medicine, outtake *salus populi* þou may finaly hele þe wounde of þe fistule, if þer be in it no ded flesch, no <sup>hole</sup> <sup>caue</sup>, or bolnyng, or hardneþ, or blones, or rednes, or any oþer instans þat may be-falle.<sup>2</sup> 24 ¶ þat if þer be-falle any of þise accidenteþ why þe wounde may nozt perfite be souted be þer put in of puluis sine pari and it schal bryng in þe desired effecte. ¶ And þis schal be to þe þe tokne of perfite curyng when 28 þou seeþ þe linne clouteþ putte to with þe medicyneþ to be drye when þou remoueþ þam. And in-als-mych as þai ar more drye in-so-mych þai ar þe better. ¶ And þis sufficeþ of þe kuttyng of þe fistule and of the 32 curyng of it. by þo þings þat thurþ þe bisines of a gode lech and a witty may make þe forseid werk more.<sup>3</sup>

Of a-noper maner wirchyng in þe same fistule and þe cure wiþ diuerse exempleþ.

If it by falle forsoþ þat þe fistule be depe and haue grete distance atuix þe hole of þe fistule and þe lure.

<sup>1</sup> hoc tamen prænoto.

<sup>2</sup> livor aut rubor aut aliquod aliud instans quod contingere poterit/

<sup>3</sup> Et hæc de incisione fistulæ et ejus iunctione sufficiunt præter ea quæ per industriam boni et ingeniosi medici prædictum opus valeant ampliari.

Or if þe pacient be ferdful for to suffer kuttyng. Or for  
oper notable cause3 being þer, þan may þe lech with  
kuttyng of þe þrede ydrawen thur3 þe midde3 of þe  
4 hole of þe fistule and þe lure kutte þe flesch, and þat  
availeþ even to kuttyng with iren, outtake þat it askep  
a longer tyme of curyng. For why; þof-al it be bounden  
ri3t streitly at þe first tyme 3itte vnneþe schal þe fretyng  
8 be complete in som men by a moneþ or thre weke3.  
¶ Sich cure þerfor ysewed and þe festnyng ydo on dewe  
maner,<sup>1</sup> þat is after þat þe pacient may resonably suffre,  
puruey þe leche if þe pacient be delicate or feble, or  
12 waike of hert, þat þe þrede by which þe fistule is  
knytte, be so bonden þat if it be nede þat it may  
be loused without kuttyng, þat is with a lache knotte or  
slyppying knotte.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Which ydo, lye þe pacient on a  
16 bedde; or stande he or go he by þre ourez or 5, or 6,  
vnto þat þe payne ycaused of þe byndyng cese somewhat.  
And wheþer þe akyng cese at þe forseid tyme or no3t,  
putte þe pacient on a bedde and with a naister of tree  
20 putte into þe lure of þe 3olk of a raw ey, medled with  
oile of rose leuke,<sup>3</sup> and be þe lure wele enoyntid<sup>4</sup>  
\*of þe same withouteforþe. And so wipoute puttyng  
atuix of any-þing late it aloon by a ni3t; At morne,  
24 forsoþe, bifore þat þe pacient go to priuè, be 3ettid  
into þe lure by a nastre som oyle, what-so pleseþ to  
þe, þat þe pacient may so moche more lizt ese hym.  
Witte þou þat þus ow þou to chaufe þe 3olk of an ey  
28 with oyle. Take þe nastare wip þe forseid medicyne  
putte in þe bledder, and þe bledder putte in some vessell  
wip hote water, þat þe medicyne may be chauffed by  
þe hete of þe watre; ffor why; hote þing eseþ better  
32 þe akyng. þan afore þe pacient go to þe priuè, take  
þe leche þe forseid þrede in þe lure, and be þe vtter  
knotte loused, and aftir be þe þrede more strongly con-  
streyned if it may wipout anguissh of þe pacient.  
36 Elle3, forsoþe, be it bounden wip tuo knottis or þre  
vnlouseable, and be þe heuede3 of þe þrede3 kutte away  
so nere þe knotte þat þai may no3t be perceyued of þe  
pacient or of oper men. And witte þou þat þe leche

ture rather  
than by in-  
cision.

The details  
of treatment  
by ligature.

<sup>1</sup> Prosecuta  
ergo tali  
cura et in-  
nexionē  
debito modo  
facta/

<sup>2</sup> Cum nodo  
currente  
Anglice  
"large  
knot" vel  
"slippyng  
knot."

<sup>3</sup> et cum nas-  
tare ligneo  
infundatur  
in anum de  
vitello ovi  
crudo cum  
oleo ros.  
mistum.

[\* Sloane 6,  
leaf 148]

A method of  
giving a  
clyster by  
means of a  
bladder soft-  
ened in hot  
water and  
attached to  
the end of  
the nastar or  
glyster pipe.

<sup>4</sup> Sloane 6, leaf 148, continues.



The leech to keep a stock of ligature material, and to be very careful to keep his methods secret.

shuld haue euermore prede of white silke, small and strong ; if he haue nozt, forsope, þan take he strong prede of lyne or of twayne. And in no maner after his miȝt shewe he nozt his wirkyng, nouþer in kuttyng ne wip 4 prede byndyng, þat his werke be perceyued of strange men, þat his cure be nozt litle sette by, or þat any oper witty man perceyuyng his werk mow vsurpe it to hymself ; for þus did I, þerfore wake 3e, for he þat is warned 8 aforne is nozt bigiled. It byhouep a leche vse many cautelez, þat he adourne<sup>1</sup> his faculte, whiche I may nozt note to þe laste. It seemep, forsope, vnworþi for to vse wele þingis y-giffe þat kan nozt gette hym mo 12 þingis. þerfore when þe pacient has clensed his wombe, be he putte vpon a bedde, and be his lure wele clensed and wyped wip hote watre and wip a sponge. Aftirward be it enoynted wip þi fynger atuix þe 16 buttokez and on ich aside about þe lure wip Salus populi hette in an ostree shell. Aftirward be þer ȝetted in by a nastare þe ȝolk of an ey as aboue wip oile. Aftirward be þer putte aboue sicke ane Emplastre : 20

*Recipe*—þe Iuyse of smalache or merch, wormode, Molayne, walworte, Sparge, waybrede, Mugworte, auance, petite consoude, wodbynd. Of alle þise herbes, if þou may haue þam, take euen porcion, outtake of wodebynde, 24 of whiche, if it may be hadde, be taken þe triple or quadriples. If al, forsope, may not be hadde, take þe toþer þat þou may haue, and namely þe þre first named wip wodebynd if þou may haue it. The con- 28 feccion is þus:—Take þe Iuse of þe herbes, and be it medled wip als mich of wele clarified hony, al-wise mouyng on an esy fire, and boile tham so long vnto þat þe watrynes of þe Iuyse be somewhat þikned ; whiche, 32 y-take of þe fire and keled, kepe it in a gode potte.<sup>2</sup> It may laste al one ȝere or tuo ; þerfore when þou wilt vse þerof, take of it als mich as it is nede, and putte þerto als miche of whites of eiren, wele y-bette and scomed,<sup>3</sup> and 36 moue þam togider. Aftir be þer put to þam of subtile mele of whete als moche as sufficeþ, and medle þam wele to-gidre ; þan putte \* to a litle oyle of olyue, or of fressh buttre scomed at þe fire, wip als miche virgine wax 40

<sup>1</sup> ut facultatem suam decoret.

A prescription for a good clyster,

and another for a plaster.

<sup>2</sup> ab igne deposita et infrigerata, reservatur.

<sup>3</sup> prius ad ignem despinati.

[\* leaf 148, back]



togidre dissolued at þe fire by it self; þan first putte  
 aboue þe iuse to þe fire wiþ hony and white of eyren,  
 and moue þam all wayse wiþ a sklyse<sup>1</sup> pat þai cleue  
 4 not to þe panne. When forsoþe it is wele hote but not  
 wele y-sopen, be þe wax molten wiþ oile or buttre, as it  
 is seyde aboue; whiche y-molten and þe forseid þingis  
 beyng hote—pat is to seye þe hony, þe iuse, and þe  
 8 white of eyren—be þai 3etted togidre, and so euermore  
 mouyng strongly wiþ a spatour, seþe þam on a softe  
 fyre vnto þey be made oon body: whiche y-do, sette it  
 of þe fire, and it beyng hote, putte to of terebentyne als  
 12 moche as sufficeþ and moue it strongly wiþ a spatour  
 vnto pat þe terebentyne be dronken in. And if it be  
 nede for to chaufe it more for þe terebentyne, loke pat it  
 suffre noȝt mych hete, for in seþing loseþ terebentyne  
 16 his myȝtes. þise y-do, be it yputte in a box and  
 y-kepte to vse. Take of þis and wiþ a spatour or with  
 þi þombe stretch it vpon clene lyn stupeȝ and softe, and  
 put it vpon þe lure, and aboue put a lyn cloute and  
 20 bynde it, as it is seyde, in þe cure of cuttyng. þis  
 emplastre, forsoþe, is called ‘diaflosmus,’ for molayne  
 pat is called flosmus. And not oonly it availeþ in þis  
 forseid cure but also in cuttyng of þe fistule; ffor why;  
 24 it helep wele alle woundes, þof-al þai be horrible, &  
 also bolnyngis in woundes and in brissures; and it sesep  
 wele þe akyngis of woundes and of brusours. And it  
 esep wele þe akyngis and þe bolnyngis of ioyntures;  
 28 þis, forsoþe, haue I ful ofte proued. I sey, forsoþe,  
 pat þis emplastre i-had, it is noȝt nede in þe forseid  
 caseȝ to renne to oper medicynes. And witte þou pat  
 þer is a naturel vertu in walwort pat moste wele re-  
 32 streyneþ blode of woundes, and akyng and bolnyng of  
 woundes and of al membreȝ it dop best away. Witte  
 þou pat þat confection aboue pat receyueþ Smalache,  
 wormode, moleyne, sparge, &c, wiþ clarified hony sopen  
 36 togidre at þe fire and kept by itself in a vessell is called  
 ‘Tapsimel.’ When, forsoþe, þer is added þerto white  
 of eiren and oyle, wiþ wax and whete floure and tereben-  
 tyne, and ar sopen togidre, þan it is called ‘diaflosmus.’  
 40 And þus ow þam to be proporcioned:—*Recipe.* tapsimel,

Be careful  
in heating  
preparations  
which con-  
tain turpen-  
tine because  
heat dissi-  
pates its  
strength.

The prepara-  
tion of “dia-  
flosmus.”

Its uses.

“Tapsimel,  
its prepara-  
tion and  
uses.

<sup>1</sup> cum spa-  
tulâ.

white of eiren—ana ʒ iiij ; whete floure ʒ iij ; oyle, wax—  
ana ʒ iij ; *terbentyne* ʒ ij. And witte þou þat if in þe  
tyme of þe makyng of Tapsimel may be founden a litel  
pety morel<sup>1</sup> whiche bereþ white flours and blak grapes or 4  
beriez, it shuld for certayn make riȝt noble þe emplastre  
diaflosmus. And petite morel is called in fflaundres  
'Naghtstach.'<sup>2</sup> And witte þou þat þe iuse of it doþe  
best away þe pustules in childres<sup>3</sup> mouþes. 8

<sup>1</sup> solanum  
parvum pos-  
sit haberi.

<sup>2</sup> Naght-  
sarth.

<sup>3</sup> childres;  
Sloane MS.  
277, lf. 70,  
back.

Treatment  
of com-  
plicated  
fistulæ.

Lay all the  
openings  
into one.

[\* leaf 149]

A successful  
case.

If, forsoþe, þer be many holes persed to-gidre, þan owe  
þe leche als sone as he may for anguissþ of þe pacient,  
after þe reperacion of þe first wounde, as it is seid afore, for  
to knytte wiþ a þrede, as it is seyde afore, þe toþer holes 12  
strongly. Or, if he may, þat is better þat þey be kutte  
al fro oon hole to an-oþer, acu rostrata, þe snowted  
nedle y-putte in þe hole, or som lynne tent, kutte þam  
to þe grounde wiþ a rasour or wiþ a launcete. Whiche 16  
holes, \* forsoþe, y-brouȝt into oon, be þe wounde als  
soon y-filled of puluer sine pari ; Aboue the poudre, for-  
soþe, I putte stupes kutte small, or coton), or carpe of  
lynnen cloþe. Aftir putte aboue þe forseid emplastre 20  
diaflosmus, and be it bounden as it is seid, and ich day  
ooneȝ reparailed. I sawe a man of Northamptoun<sup>4</sup> þat  
had þre holes in þe lefte buttok, and þre in þe  
testicleȝ codde, and al persed fro oon to an-oþer by þe 24  
middeȝ of longaon ; whom I cured wiþ cuttyng of al þe  
holes at oon tyme, of longaon as wele as of oþer. Of þe  
kuttyng, forsoþe, of longaon, blode went strongly out,  
for þe fistule was riȝt depe ; wherefore þe pacient 28  
swowned ; þerfore I putte to a sponge wette in cold watir  
and receyued þe blode. Aftirward I put in þe kuttyng  
of longaon restrictyues of blode, of whiche it is seid  
aboue, and a gode sponge y-wette in cold watre. I made 32  
þe pacient for to sitte in a chayer, and als soon þe blod  
was cased. And aftir refetyng of mete and drink, he went  
into his bedde and sleped wele all þe niȝt, wiþoute  
goyng out of blode. In þe morne, forsoþe, he had hym 36  
wele ; þe seconde day, forsoþe, after þe kuttyng I  
filled all þe woundes of puluer sine pari, and as it  
is seid afore in all þingis, with oile and an ey and  
salus populi and diaflosmus I helid hym finaly wiþ 40

<sup>4</sup> Vidi et  
alium homi-  
nem sc.  
Iohan :  
Colyn de  
Northamp-  
ton.



<sup>1</sup> Qui vero, ut dixit, viginti medicorum curam subegit.

in 14 wekes. Whiche, forsoþe,<sup>1</sup> as he seid, he vnder-  
 3ede þe cure of meny leches, And suffred it ten 3ere.  
 And witte þou þat I saw neuer man vnder my  
 4 hand suffre swounyng, outake hym þis; he was forsoþe  
 corpulent and waike of hert, but neþerlesse aboute þe  
 fourty day after þe kuttyng he rode. I heled anoþer  
 man þat had a fistule in þe same maner in all pingis,  
 8 outake þat longaon was noȝt persed; whom I cured wiþ  
 kuttyng in þe same maner as it is seid of þe first. I  
 haue sene som men hauyng oon hole aloon niȝ þe lure  
 þat persed noȝt þe longaon, whom I heled wiþ puluer  
 12 sine pari finaly; but for þe moupe of þe vlcere was  
 ouer streit, first I put aboue of vnguento ruptorio of calce  
 viue & sape for to large þe moupe of the fistule; of whiche  
 it shal be treted afterward among opir confeccions. I haue  
 16 sene som men haue tuo holes byside þe lure, of whiche oon  
 persed þe longaon and þe toþer persed in no place, but it  
 was oonly symple by itself in þe flesshe, hauyng no pass-  
 yng to þe tother hole. Of whiche was such a cure:—The  
 20 hole nerre þe lure was cured wiþ kuttyng or byndyng;  
 þe toþer, forsoþe, wiþ poudre sine pare y-put in and  
 diaflosmo, and oon emplastre þat is called Neyrbone put  
 aboue, whos confeccion shal be shewed aftirwarde. I saw  
 24 also, and, oure lord beyng mene, I heled perfitely a man  
 þat had ffistula in ano on þe riȝt side and on þe lefte  
 side; whiche, forsoþe, had on þe lefte buttok 8 holeȝ, and  
 þre in þe riȝt buttok; and wiþin was longaon persed  
 28 toward þe riȝt side oonly. But neþerlesse all þe holes of  
 aiper party of þe lure answered togidre in þe grounde  
 þat was proued þus. I toke a siryng of siluer and a  
 bleddre y-bounden aboute ful of sanguis veneris, and þe  
 32 siryng y-putte in þurȝ oon hole and þe bleddre com-  
 pressed wiþ þe fyngers, þe oile inȝetted \*went out by al  
 þe holes togidre on boþe sides, and neþerlesse þe hole  
 of longaon answered noȝt but to oon hole oonly, and þat  
 36 in þe riȝt buttok; þe soþefastnes of whiche þing was  
 proued wiþ þe instrument þat is callid sequere me, and  
 wiþ acu rostrata, wiþ ful gret hardnes and bisynes;  
 þe cure of whiche was suche: ffirst euery day in þe  
 40 lefte buttok þurȝ oon of þe holes I ȝetted in sanguis

Another case.

Cases of fistulæ with many open-ings.

[\* leaf 149, back]

A method to discover the real fistula when there are many external openings.



Treatment  
by tents.

veneris wip þe forseid siring and bledder; whiche y-do,  
I putte in tuo tentes or þre, or lard of pork or swyne in  
þe larger holes; after þat þe depnes of þe fistules asked,  
þe heuedes, forsoþe, of þe tentes war tokned with 4  
þredes drawen þurȝ þe middes wip a nedell, þat þe  
tentes shuld noȝt be drowned in þe grounde of þe fistules  
when þe tentes war put in. And I putte aboue þe  
emplastre þat is called Neyrbon strecchid vpon lynne 8  
cloutes, and dewly y-bounden aboute þe lendes wip a  
girdill and cloutes y-shapen as it is seid afore. I lefte it in  
pece vnto þe morne. At morne, forsoþe, þe emplastre  
remoued, þer appered aboue ȝe emplastre ful putrid 12  
quitour in superflue quantite. Eftsones in þe secounde  
day I reparaild it in al þingis as in þe first day, and it  
bifell as in þe firste day; and so it continued almost by a  
moneþ. When þe quitour, þerfore, bigynne to lessen 16  
somwhat, and the bolnyng somewhat to cese, and þe  
colour and þe substaunce of þe skynne for to turne to  
his owne naturel habitude, þan at þe first turned I to þe  
principale cure of þe fistule with persyng of longaon, 20  
whiche I cured finaly wip byndyng of a þrede in þe hole  
of longaon. þe toþer holeȝ, forsoþe, beyng bisyde it I  
cured wip cuttyng and with puluer sine pare. Euermore  
continuyng þe cure wip þe siryng in þe lefte side, and 24  
wip tentes als long as þay wolde entre in, and þe em-  
plastre Neyrbon y-putte aboue, and salus populi and vn-  
guento arabico, vnto a loueable ende wip goddes help aboute  
half a ȝere I-cured hym, and lefte hym in pece. Also þer 28  
bene som men þat hap fistules noȝt apperyng outward,  
but þay putte out miche putred & watrye humour, and  
som-tyme clere blode, and somtyme blode y-medled wip  
quitour. And þai disese myche þe pacientes and febleþ 32  
þam. And oft-tymes suche maner sikenes bene toward  
þe rigbone of þe bak niȝ þe lure, þat þay may be feled  
wip a fynger. But wheþer þay may be feled or noȝt be  
þer done suche a cure wip whiche I haue cured many 36  
men. Be þe pacient putte vpon a bedde wyde opne  
agaynes a wyndowe, liȝt shynyng, and þe legges y-raised  
vp and wip a towel y-hungen or wip a corde ordeyned  
to þis werk; whiche y-do, be þe lure y-opned wip 40

Blind  
internal  
fistulae.

Arderne's  
operation  
good,

- tonges so y-shape þat when þe vtward endes bene streyned togidre þe inner endes be opned & agaynward. Or if þe leche kanne ymagyne more couenable instrumentis to þe forseid werk to be done, for so moche loued be god þat streyngþes mannes witte in godes. þe lure, forsoþe, y-opened, and þe sikenes bisily y-sene, be þe hole of þe sikenes y-filled wip puluer sine pare, and 8 cotton y-putte aboue; be þe tonges warly drawen out þat þai spill noȝt þe poudre, or þat þei hurt noȝt þe pacient. Whiche y-drawen out, and þe legges laten down, late þe pacient long reste or þat he go, þat þe poudre be \*noȝt [\* leaf 150] 12 letted for to go; and abide it so stille vnto þat þe pacient clense his wombe; and if þe pacient may abstene hymself fro þe pryue by two dayes, it war full necessary to hym. When þe pacient, forsoþe, ow to be reparaed, 16 þan be þe lure wasshen and dried; whiche y-wasshen, be þer ȝette in of a ȝolk of an ey wip sanguis veneris to esyng of þe ake þat cometh of puluer sine pare, and to þe clensyng of þe vlcer of flessch mortified by þe forseid 20 poudre. And þis cure continue þe leche by fife dayes or mo, þat is to sey of þe ȝolk and of sanguis veneris, vnto þat he se þe pacient wele alegedde<sup>1</sup> of þe first akyng. Whiche y-do, þan owe þe leche in þe best 24 maner þat he may for to opne þe lure and bisily biholde wipin, and considere if þe sikenes be mortified; whiche is knowen if þat þe vlcer seme depper þan it was sene afore þe puttyng in of þe poudre, and also by oper 28 tokenes þat a gode leche fyndeth more exper̃te of long exercise. In þis þerfore to be yknowen be noȝt þe leche slowe; for why; þer shal folow noȝt litle louyng þerof. þerfore if it be noȝt mortified be it eftsones 32 filled of puluer sine pare, and be it sewed<sup>2</sup> in all þingis as it is seid afore, wip þe ȝolk of an ey, & wip sanguis veneris, vnto þat he se eftsones þe pacient wele alegged, as it is seid afore. When, forsoþe, he troweth þat it is 36 mortified, þan it is to turne agayne to anoper cure, þat is to sey þat he take þe ȝolke of an ey to whiche be added þe half parte of tapsimell, and als miche as sufficeþ of poudre of alumme ȝucaryne y-brent. And be it so 40 made þat it may be ȝetted in by a Nastar of tree; and

but he is not wedded to it.

After-treatment.

Examine for gangrene.

Treatment for gangrenous inflammation of rectum.

<sup>1</sup> bene alleviatur.

<sup>2</sup> et prosequatur.



Diminished  
discharge a  
good sign.

The treat-  
ment of  
ulceration of  
the rectum.

The applica-  
tions are not  
to be too  
irritating.

[\* leaf 150,  
back]

Soothing  
clysters are  
best.

this cure be continued al-oonly by þre or foure dayes :  
þe fourþe, forsoþe, or þe fifthe day aftir þis medycyne  
done to, be þe vlcer reparaed wip þe 3olk of an ey and  
*sanguis veneris* þre or foure dayes continued. And so 4  
owe þe leche for to chaunge his hande fro oon medycyne  
to anoþer, vnto þat he se þe superflue moistene3 firste  
goynge out for to cesse ; þat is tokne of cure or help beyng  
nize. þan, forsoþe, may he *with* vnguento arabico and 8  
*salus populi* finally spede þe forseid cure aboute four &  
tenty wekes, or more or lesse, aftir þat þe pacient be  
obedient and bisy ; ffor why ; gret spede of werk standeth  
in þe paciens and bisynes of þe pacient.<sup>1</sup> And it is to 12  
witte þat in all vlceriez beyng wipin þe lure, or moiste  
ragadiis puttyng out quitour or blode, þis I sey þat þe  
vlceriez be no3t bubones, i. e. owles, of whiche it shal be seid  
aftirward, for þai be al vncurable<sup>2</sup> : þat if a leche may 16  
no3t wipoute grete anguissþ, als wele of hymself as of þe  
pacient, opne þe lure of þe pacient wip tonges, as it is  
seide afore, þan owe þe leche oonly putte in of tapsimell  
and puluer sine *pare* medled togidre in suche piknes þat 20  
it may be 3etted in by a nastare of tree. For why ; þis  
medycyne mortifieþ wele and clenseþ putred flessch in an  
vlcere. But witte þou þat euermore aftir þe 3ettyng in  
of tapsimel wip þe forseid poudre, þou ow in þe nexte 24  
reparalyng for to 3ette in wip a nastare of tre of þe 3olk  
of an ey wip *sanguis veneris* or oyle rosette, or wip  
comon oile if þe forsaid wante. And þis cure be con-  
tinued wipoute leffying \* by þre or foure dayes. It 28  
spedeþ no3t, forsoþe, þat medicynes bryngyng in akyng  
be to moche vsed or haunted, as is tapsimel wip puluer  
sine *pare*. Neþerlesse tapsimel wipout puluer sine *pare*,  
wip þe 3olk of an ey and wip poudre of bole armonic 32  
ful smal y-broke and medled wip oile of lynsed togidre,  
oyle of rose added to, or of violettis, or of *sanguis veneris*  
if it be had redy, And 3etted in wip Nastare of tre, heleþ  
wele vlceres, ragadyes, and excoriacions or fleyngis wipin 36

<sup>1</sup> Nam magna operis expeditio in patientiâ et sedulitate patientis consistit.

<sup>2</sup> Nota de ulceribus infra anum existentibus. Et notandum quod in omnibus ulceribus infra anum existentibus, vel rhagadiis humidis saniem emittentibus vel sanguinem, hoc dico, quod ulcera non sunt bubones, de quibus inferius suo loco dicetur ; Bubones namque sunt omnes incurabiles.



<sup>1</sup> Hoc super-  
posito post  
mortifica-  
tionem pu-  
tridæ carnis.

þe lure; þis supposed after þe sleying of flessch putred,<sup>1</sup>  
wip enoyntyng of salus populi, þat availeth beste for  
certeyn in euery cause wipin þe lure and wipoute.

#### 4 Of bubo with-in þe lure, and the impossibilitie or mych hardnes of þe cure of it.

6. [B]ubo is ane aposteme bredyng wipin þe lure in þe  
longaon wip grete hardnes but litle akyng. þis I sey  
8 byfore his vlceracion þat is noþing elles þan a hidde  
cankere, þat may nozt in þe bigynnyng of it be knowen  
by þe sizt of þe eize, for it is hid al wipin þe lure;  
And þerfore it is callid bubo, for as bubo, i.e. an owle, is

Cancer of  
the rectum.

<sup>2</sup> Bubo est  
animal late-  
bras colens.

12 a best dwellyng in hideles<sup>2</sup> so þis sikeness lurkeþ wipin þe  
lure in þe bikynnyng, but after processe of tyme it  
vlcerate, & fretyng þe lure gope out. And ofte-tyme  
it fretiþ and wasteth all þe circumference of it, so  
16 þat þe feces of egestioness goþ out continuely vnto þe  
deth, þat it may neuer be cured wip mannes cure but  
if it plesse god, þat made man of nozt, for to help  
wip his vnspekeable vertu. Whiche, forsope, is  
20 knowen þus: Putte þe leche his fynger into þe lure  
of þe pacient, and if he fynde wipin þe lure ane hard  
þing as a stone, somtyme on þe to party al-oonly, som  
tyme of bope, so þat it lette þe pacient for to haue  
24 egestion, it is bubo for certayn. Signes, forsope, of his

The diag-  
nosis.

The signs

<sup>3</sup> "et ali-  
quando  
sæpius,"  
adds the  
Latin text.

<sup>4</sup> Tam medi-  
ci ignari,  
quam  
patientis.

28 þer-of as it war medled wip watrye blode and stynkyng.  
To þat also wele vnkunyng leches, as þe pacient,<sup>4</sup> troweþ  
þat þey haue þe dissenterie, þat is þe bloody fluxe,  
when trewly it is nozt. Dissenterye is euermore wip  
32 flux of þe wombe, but bubo goþ out hard egestioness, and  
som tyme þey may nozt go out for streytnes of þe bubon  
but þai ar constreyned wipin þe lure streitly, so þat  
þai may be feled wip þe fynger and y-drawe out. And

often mis-  
taken for  
dysentery.

The way to  
distinguish  
between  
cancer and  
dysentery.

<sup>5</sup> lenitiva ex  
aquâ decoct.  
furfuris  
tritici.

36 in þis cas availeþ þe myche clisteries lenitiues of watre  
of decoccion of whete brenne<sup>5</sup> wip oyle or butter, or wip

Read  
Bernard de  
Gordon's  
'Lilium  
medicinæ.'

The diet in  
cancer.  
[\* leaf 151]

The symp-  
toms.

Death in  
autumn.

The favour-  
able signs.

Be careful  
only to use  
palliative  
treatment.

Warn the  
friends.

symple decoccion of branne wipoute medlyng of any  
oper ping. Neperlesse vnkunyng leches ministrep  
vnto suche restrictiues medicynes of dissenterie, of bole,  
and sang dracon, mastik, coriandre, sumac, mirtilles, 4  
harde 3olkis of eyren, gret wyne, and suche oper pat  
availeþ to restreynyng of flux of þe wombe, as þou  
shalt mowe fynde in 'lilio<sup>1</sup> medicyne,' capito "de fluxu  
ventris." And how moche more þat þai giffe restrictiues, 8  
so moche more þai noye to þe forseid in constipand,  
i.[e.] costyuenes, and in hardenand þe squillullam<sup>2</sup>; þat  
I haue oftymes bene experte of, And I haue lerned it  
in experience in whiche I was not bigiled: ffor why; 12  
constrictiues y-lefte als wele in diete as in þe forseid  
medicynes I esed mich wip vse \*of clisteriez of branne  
symple or of maluez and branne wipoute oyle or butter  
or any fatnes; ffor why; al fatte pingis and oile pingis 16  
norissheþ þe cancre and fedip it. And it is to witte  
þat þise bene þe accidentes of þam þat hap bubon in  
þe lure: þai may ete and drynk and go, and somewhat  
sitte and somewhat slepe; þai be menely hungry and 20  
prifty in mete vnto þe ende; þai may nozt abstene  
þam fro þe priuè. And ofte tymeþ comeþ perisshyng  
to þam aboute autumpne or heruest; and it neizyng nere,  
pay bigynne for to haue febres as it war a softe febre; 24  
and þai lose as it war þair appetite; þai bigynne for to  
lope ale and þai couaite wyne; þai ete ych day lesse  
and lesse; þai slepe vnesely; þai ar made heuy als wele  
in mynde as in body; and þe fallyng doune neizhyng 28  
nere, þai are made feble, and þai halde continuely þair  
bedde, and þay couayte watre aboue all pingis. Þise  
perfore y-sene, deþe is in þe 3atis.<sup>3</sup> Neperlesse þai  
may speke & raise þamself vp and moue almost to þe 32  
breping out of þe spirit. Þerfore wake 3e þat 3e putte  
nozt 3oure hand to þis but in giffyng clisteries, as it is  
seid afore; whiche alegeþe mych þe forseid pacientes, as  
I haue be experte, and makeþ euermore pronosticacion 36  
to þam or to þair frendes als wele of deþ as of vncur-  
ablenes. Sich pronosticacion, forsoþe, shal worshiþe þe  
bisynes of þe leche: þerfore flieþ auarice and abstene  
3ow fro false byhestis. Witte þou þat þe fynger y-putte 40

<sup>1</sup> in lilio  
medicinæ  
capitulo.

<sup>2</sup> squibala.

<sup>3</sup> His ergo  
visis, mors  
est in  
januis.



into þe lure of hym þat has þe dissenterye, he shal fele  
 noþing in þe longaon but to þe maner of oper hole  
 menne. But in þe lure of þam þat hap þe bubon  
 4 shal be feled a bolnyng riȝt hard, as if þer war an ey of  
 ane henne or of a gose. But neþerlesse þe putrede,  
 i.[e.] rotenneȝ, and þe blode þat gope out of bope bene  
 mych liche; þat is þe quitour is citryne or ȝellow and  
 8 blo er wanne medled wip watry blode wip gret stynk,  
 and it gope out to þe quantite of o sponeful or of tuo  
 wipout medlyng of egestionȝ, and som-tyme wip egestion.  
 But in dissenterie he shal fele fretyng about þe nauyle  
 12 and þe flankes; in bubon, forsoþe, noȝt so; but akyng,  
 stirryng, and prikkyng, and tenasmon; þat is, appetite  
 of egestion. I se oon of Northampton-shire whos lure  
 was frete on euery party, so þat he miȝt wipholde noþing  
 16 of þe feces of egestions but þe grettest; ffor why; his  
 lure was euermore stopped with a grete towell of lynne  
 clope; but neþerlesse þe þinner egestions went out  
 continuely, so þat his clopes about his buttokes war  
 20 euermore moyste; and þe towel y-drawen out, in þe  
 stede of þe lure was a rounde hole by whiche an ey of a  
 dukke miȝt liztly be putte in, and I myȝt se ferre into his  
 wombe. Whiche died afterward of þe forseid infirmite;  
 24 ffor why; he was vncurable, for þe mouþe of þe lure  
 wip þe lacertes and þe synowes speryng and opnyng þe  
 lure was vtterly gnawen away.<sup>1</sup> And forþy <sup>2</sup> in suche like  
 be it done avisily þat couaitise bryng noȝt forþe blame  
 28 to þe leche. I saw neuer ne I hard noȝt any man þat  
 miȝt be cured of þe bubon, but I haue knowen many  
 þat defaileþ of þe forseid sikenes. Also I haue sene  
 som hauyng a ful gret brennyng aboute þe lure wipout,  
 32 and vntholeful smertyng<sup>3</sup> wip ronklyng of þe skynne  
 aboute þe lure closed to þe \*maner of a purse, wherfore  
 þe pacientes miȝt noȝt wele sitte, ne ligge, ne stonde euen,  
 ne fynde reste in no place, but euermore monyng and  
 36 stirryng þamself as it war wode men. And superflue  
 watrenes swette out fro þe place þat was wonte for to  
 file many lynnyn clopes putte atwix. To whiche sikenes  
 availeþ mich colde pingis in power but hote in dede  
 40 y-putte to, as bene aysel,<sup>4</sup> vinegre, hote by itself or wip

Make a  
 rectal exam-  
 ination to  
 distinguish  
 between  
 cancer and  
 dysentery.

An advanced  
 case of  
 cancer of the  
 rectum.

<sup>1</sup> quod ori-  
 ficium luræ  
 cum lacertis  
 et nervis  
 Luram  
 claudenti-  
 bus et  
 aperientibus  
 omnino cor-  
 rodebantur.  
<sup>2</sup> idcirco.  
<sup>3</sup> pruriginem  
 intolerabi-  
 bilem.

Cancer of  
 the rectum  
 incurable.

[\* leaf 151,  
 back]

Palliative  
 treatment  
 methods to  
 be adopted.

<sup>4</sup> acetum.



Local appli-  
cations.Fomenta-  
tions.An ointment  
for pruritus  
ani.Another  
ointment.A treatment  
for erysi-  
pe-  
las.

Iuyse of rubarbe, or plantayne, or *virga pastoris*, or of  
oper cold þingis in power. But for þat ofte-tymes  
suche herbes may nozt be had redy, þan it is to flye to  
oper remedyes; þat is to sey, Take þe raw zolk of an ey 4  
and medle it wele wip þe poudre of bole armenic broken  
ful smal, or ceruse, or bope, and anoynt it aboue þe sore  
wip a penne or feþer or wip a spatule; þis, forsope,  
sesep þe brennyng and þe akyng, and be þis oft tymes 8  
done agayn. Also in euery remouyng it availeþ mich  
þat þe yuel or sore be wele fomented or soked wip  
vinegre and watre y-medled togidre and chaufed; ffor  
why; þis gretly euaporeth noyful hete. And aftir þe 12  
fomentyng, þe place wele y-dried, be it reparaed as it is  
seid afore, wip þe zolk of an ey and bole. When þe  
customable watrynes, forsope, is sene to cese, and þe  
patient feleþ as it war vnsufferable ychyng, þan be þe 16  
putte to euery day oones ane oyntment made of blakke  
sope and poudre of bole and sulphur and frankensence  
ymedled to-gidre. And þis oyntment shal drie, and shal  
make skales to rise fro þe sore; whiche y-sene, be þe 20  
lure anoynted als wele wipin as wipout wip *vnguentum*  
*album* sharped wip bole and wip quik-siluer, and þis  
shal cese þe hete and it shal cicatrize þe fleeng.<sup>1</sup> And if  
it bene anoynted wip *salus populi*, it profiteþ mych. 24  
At þe last, forsope, agayn þe disesyng ychyng be it  
anoynted wip tapsimel, In whiche be puluere<sup>3</sup> of alume  
zucarine brent, of attrament, and of vitriol; þis, forsope,  
dope heste away ychyng for certayn, als wele wipin þe 28  
lure as wipoute. Or if þou haue nozt redy þe forseid  
tapsimell, be þe same done wip scomed hony, and þe  
ferseid pulueres medled þer-to. Or þer may be made  
a medicyne to þe maner of þe forseid tapsimel of þe 32  
Iuyse of celidone and scomed hony, to þe whiche þe  
forseid puluere<sup>3</sup> ymedled, I haue proued þat it dope  
heste away ychyng.<sup>2</sup> Also þe Iuyse of celidone y-medled  
wip vinegre and warmed at þe fire, and wip a fether 36  
anoynted up þe forseid sore, þat is to sey in þe  
bigynnyng of þe sikenes, it quenchip wele þe wickid  
hete and keped fro recidimacion,<sup>3</sup> þat is fallyng agayne.  
And it quenchip wele herisiptam, þat is wilde fir 40

<sup>1</sup> et hoc ca-  
lorem seda-  
bit et esco-  
riationem  
cicatrificabit.

<sup>2</sup> Pruritus

<sup>3</sup> bene calo-  
rem noxium  
extinguit et  
a recidina-  
tione pre-  
servit.

<sup>1</sup> "fen sawage."  
<sup>2</sup> Acetum tepidum.

<sup>3</sup> Ulcus perniciosum.

<sup>4</sup> bene adhaerens.

<sup>5</sup> ficum sanguineum.

or few sawage<sup>1</sup> in euery place of þe body. And þe same  
 dop leuke vinegre<sup>2</sup> put aboue by itself; Or vnguentum  
 album sharped wip quicsiluer. Also oile of citonior:  
 4 cureþ þe herisiple and wickid vlcere<sup>3</sup>.<sup>3</sup> Also þe Iuyse of  
 celidone, imbibed in a sponge or in lynne clopes, and  
 y-putte leuke to þe front and to þe temples, it cesep  
 þe akyng of þe heued. And þis I proued oftymes in  
 8 þe second pestilence. þer come a man fro Burdeux in  
 Gascon vnto Newerk, pat had ane horrible sore, pat is  
 to sey peces or gobettis of rede flesshe and rawe in  
 parties hyngyng dovne to þe lengþe of ane ynch. And  
 12 þai occupied boþe his buttokes on aiper party of þe lure  
 to þe \*brede of þre fyngers; and þer went out þer-of  
 riȝt mich watrinesse and some-tyme blode wip gret  
 hete and stynk, so þat his buttokkes war cauterizid;  
 16 and þei grew to þe liknes of þe womb of a fissh pat is  
 seid creuyse or lopster when he spermeþ or friep. And  
 þose superfluites partyngly grew in þe hole skynne;  
 and when þei war mortified euen to þe rotes, þer  
 20 appered holes fro whens þai went out. I mortified,  
 forsoþe, þe superfluties wip a poudre þat is called  
 Puluer greke, þe confeccion of þe whiche shal shewe  
 aftir. And for þat þe mich watrynes goyng out in  
 24 þe bigynnyng ouercome þe forseid poudre, þerfore I  
 putte aboue, aftir þe puttyng of þe poudre greke, of þe  
 moste subtile mele of barly abundandly, pat is called  
 alfita, aboue þe poudre greke; and so I quenched þe  
 28 forseid superfluites wipin þre or four puttyng to, so  
 þat þai bigan to dry and to welk and fall away.  
 Puluer grek, forsoþe, is riȝt desiccative and wele cleuyng<sup>4</sup>  
 to; and noȝt oonly it restreyneth wele watry moistenes  
 32 but also blode, and it mortifieþ þe curable cancer and  
 þe bloody fike<sup>5</sup> in euery place. A man had vpon his  
 buttoke a bloody fyk puttyng out blode and somtyme  
 quitour, and it was like to a Mulbery; to þe whiche I  
 36 putte aboue puluer grek by oon niȝt, and in þe mornyng  
 I pulled out riȝt liȝtly wip my fyngers þe fike half  
 mortified; þe whiche y-drawe out, blak blode went out  
 after. After a litel goyng of þe blode, forsoþe, I putte  
 40 to puluer grek, and þe blode was restreyned. Aboue þe

Recites a  
 case,  
 and its treat-  
 ment.

[\* leaf 152]

Pulvis  
 Græcus and  
 its uses;

A case of  
 bleeding  
 piles  
 and its  
 treatment.



poudre, forsope, coton y-put atuyx, I putte aboue þe emplastre Nerbon vpon a lyn cloute, to kepe þe poudre þat it shulde noȝt falle away. And þus, þis forseid cure continued, he was hole wipin a shorte tyme. 4

Of fistules in þe fyngers, and hardnes of cure of it.

7. [I] haue sene oft-tymes þe fistule be in þe fyngers and in þe þombes, als wele of men as of wymmen; als 8 wele of ȝong men as of olde men; þe cure of whiche many men knoweþ noȝt: ffor why; it bredeþ oft-tyme in þe fynger or þe þombe of som men in þe extremite of þe flessghynnes mortifying al þe ouermore iuncture, 12 þat is þe flesshe wip þe bone. And somtyme it bredip in þe middes iuncture, and þat is more perile; and somtyme in þe lawer iuncture by þe hande, and þat is werste. Neþerlesse þe fistule bredyng in þe extremite 16 of þe fynger deceyueþ sonner þe pacient þan in oþer places; ffor vnkunnyng men seip þat it is þe whitflowe, whiche þou shalt knowe þus. If þer byfal to any man in þe extremite of his fynger akyng wip inflacion, and 20 when þat it bristeþ it makip a litel hole, and oute of þat hole þer goþ out a litle docelle of putrifid flessgh or rede, to þe gretnes of a whete corne, and þer goþ but litle quitour or noon out þerof, þan witte þou þat þer 24 cleueþ a fistule to þe fynger. And wipoute doute if it be wipoute help any long tyme, as by a moneþ or fourty dayes, it shal noȝt mow be cured wipoute lesyng of þe ouermore iuncture wip þe bone, and perauenture 28 of þe ouermore and þe neþer-more bope; þat I haue oftymes proued. ffor why; oftymes þe bone of þe fynger is frete or gnawen or it bigynne for to ake, þat is proued þus. fforsope I haue heled som men þat seid 32 þat þei feled noon yuel but by a fourtniȝt; \* And when I saw þe forseid tokne of þe fistule, þan al-sone I departed in-als-mych as I myȝt þe skyn of þe fynger riȝt foule wip a rasour and sheres; and þe skynne y-put of, I fonde 36 al wipin putrefied, and neþerlesse þe fynger was noȝt but a litle bolned. And poudre creosferoboron y-putte

Fistulæ in the fingers not to be mistaken for whitlows;

they take a long time to cure.

[\* leaf 152, back]

Some cases seen early.



to mundefye þe corrupcion by al a niȝt, and aboue  
 þe emplastre sanguiboetos. In þe mornynge when þe  
 filþe was dissolued and drawen out, I perceyued þe  
 4 bone of þe fynger to be tabefacte, i.[e.] corrupte, and  
 frete & loused fro þe toþer iuncture, and þat was  
 meruaile. And in som men I haue perceyued þe bone  
 corrupte in party and noȝt in all fully; and somtyme  
 8 two iunctures vtterly mortefied and corrupte. ffor why;  
 it is certayne þat bones shul noȝt be corrupte wipin a  
 fourtniȝt if þai war vncorrupte afore þat tyme. þe cure  
 of þe forseid is such: If sich ane yuel or sore come of  
 12 newe, and he haue had no cure afore, and if þou perceyue  
 þe forseid tokne of fistulacion, þan alsone be þe skyn  
 flayn wip a rasour, as it is seid afore. Aftirward if þer  
 be any filþe þerin, be pressed out. Aftirward, forsoþe,  
 16 be þe wounde filled of þe puluer creoforoboron; þat y-do,  
 be þer putte aboute of the emplastre Sanguiboetos wip  
 stupes, and so be it lefte by oon day and a niȝt hole.  
 Aftirwarde whan þou remoues þe emplastre and hap  
 20 mundified þe filþe y-fonden, If þou fynde þe bone of it  
 blak and putrefied in þe hiȝe party, it bihouep of neces-  
 site be drawen out. Or if þe vtter party of þe bone  
 be losed al aboute fro þe flesshe and þe naile, þof-al it  
 24 be noȝt blak, it bihouep be departed and þat alsone as it  
 may, þat þe bone þat is corrupte aboue infecte noȝt  
 wip his corrupcion þe bone þat is festned to hym;  
 whiche if it bifal, it bihouep boþe be drawen out. ffor  
 28 why; a corrupte bone or a lesed may noȝt dwelle or abide  
 in þe flesshe, for no cure beyng mene, þat ne it corruppe  
 ouþer þe flesshe or þe synowes. Or þe flesshe shal  
 caste it out when it is in a wounde or in aposteme, or in  
 32 a cancre or fistule. þe bone forsoþe y-drawen out, be  
 þe place y-filled of þe poudre creoforoboron, and aboue  
 þe emplastre Sanguiboetos; and be it lefte þer by als  
 long tyme as it is seid afore. Aftir forsoþe, þe  
 36 emplastre remoued, if þou se þe hole y-clensed wip  
 þe forseid poudre, þan be þer putte eftsones of þe  
 forseid emplastre wip þe poudre, renewyng þe emplastre  
 ych day tuyse. And so wip þe forseid emplastre, or wip  
 40 vnguentum viride lefe noȝt to hele it vnto þe ende. If

Their treat-  
ment.

The signs  
not obvious  
at first.

The dead  
bone should  
be removed.

Treatment  
after the  
dead bone is  
removed.

A means of recognizing the growth of proud flesh.

Treatment of the fistula

[\* leaf 153]

by operation.

Licium is made in this way.

A case treated by a lady was so neglected that

*per* growe, forsope, any superflue flesshe in þe hole, as it falleþ oft tymes, þat þou shalt know þus: þe superflue flesshe bygynne for to growe fro þe bone in middes of þe hole, and nozt fro þe sides of þe flessħ. 4 And wipin þre dayes or foure, if it be not mette or agayn-standen it passeþ þe sides of þe gode flessħ, for it groweþ wip hastines; whiche flessħ, forsope, may be drawen out in þe bigynnyng wip þe poudre of creofero- 8 boron. If it excede in grete quantite, þan it bihoueþ for to putte to poudre of arcenek, or ane hote iren. Aftir þe puttyng to of þe poudre, or of þe hote iren, *per* is to be putte-to larde enoynted wip þe iuse of 12 porres, for to lese \*þe mortified flessħ; whiche y-lesed, þe fynger is to be enoynted wip ane oyntment made of sape & brymston. In þe hole, forsope, be putte vnguentum viride vpon a stupe; and euery day be it tuyse re- 16 moued, and þus euermore sewe þe forseid maner. If þe bone, forsope, of þe fynger or of þe pombe be corrupte in party bot nozt lesed fro þe naile, þan aftir þe miȝt be þe corrupte shauen away, and þan be put þerto licium, 20 þat is carpe wette, in ane oyntment þus y-made: Take licium, þat is þe iuse of wodbynde, i.[e.] caprifoile, and hony and poudre of white glasse ana; be þai medled to- gidre and made ane oyntment; þis oyntment engendreþ 24 flessħ; it fleep þe fistule; it mundifieþ þe filþe or putrifaccion of þe bone. ffor why; glasse makeþ flessħ for to grow vpon þe bone; hony purgeþ and remoueþ þe stynek; licium haþ vertu for to mundifie þe filthe or 28 þe putrefaccion of þe bone, and for to hele þe wonde, and for to sle þe cancre and þe fistule. And licium is made þus: Take þe leuez of caprifoile and brisse þam in a mortar, and priste out þe iuse, and putte in a brasen 32 vessel or of glasse, and drie it at þe sunne, and kepe it to vse. It is þe beste medicyne; If þe fynger, forsope, of any man haue be long vnheled of vnwise cure, or of negligence of þe pacient after þat þe bone is take out— 36 As somtyme it bifell of oon þat was vnder þe cure of a lady by halfe a ȝere, after þat þe vppermore iuncture of þe bone of þe fynger was drawen out. ffor why; þat lady entended for to haue heled hym al-oonly wip drynk 40



of Antioche and oþer pillules; and for cause þat the  
 naiþ of þe fynger abode stille, she trowed þerfore for to  
 haue souted þe place of þe fynger in whiche þe bone  
 4 þat was drawen oute stode bifore; whiche, forsoþe, miȝt  
 noȝt be, for þe flessþ and þe skynne wiþ þe naile þat  
 went aboute þe bone bifore war infecte and putrefacte  
 of þe bone; wherfore of necessite al mortified and cor-  
 8 rupte bihoued to be drawen out of þe flessþ and þe skyn  
 or þat it shulde come to helþe. þerfore a long tyme  
 ouerpasseþ, when he come to me and þe fynger ysene, first  
 I putte in poudre creoferoboron, and aboue þe emplastre  
 12 Sanguiboetos in þe maner seid afore. Aftirward, it  
 remoued, I perceyued þat it was of hard substance and it had to be  
 dressed with  
 arsenic  
 inobedient to þe poudre; þan putte I to poudre of  
 arsenek. In þe day, forsoþe, folowyng, I biholdyng þe  
 16 fynger I perceyued þat þe arsenek had wrouȝt litel or  
 noȝt. ffor þe place wher arsenek is putte in, if it wirch  
 þerfitely, shal bycome blo & bolned aboute þe extremite  
 wiþin a niȝt and a day; Aftir in þe þrid day þer shal  
 20 departe in sondre in þat blones, þat is to sey mortified  
 fro þe quik. But þat worchyng shal better done and  
 soner if þe secounde day after þe puttyng to of arsenek  
 be putte to larde wiþ þe emplastre sanguiboetes. The  
 24 place, forsoþe, of þe forseid fynger strongly agayn-stode  
 to þe poudre of arsenek. ffor þe place was drye and and touched  
 with the  
 actual  
 cautery  
 inveterate, or olde, in substaunce. þis y-sene, wiþ som  
 men it is to wirche wiþ cauteries; þan, forsoþe, a  
 28 cauterie putte þer-to, I brent þe fynger in þe extremite  
 of it wiþin vnto þe bone; þe pacient, forsoþe, almost  
 feled noþing. Aftir þe brennyng, forsoþe, I putte in  
 to þe hole þe fattenes of lard wiþ þe iuse of porres;  
 32 þe second day, forsoþe, a gret quantite y-mor\*tified, þe [\* leaf 153,  
 back]  
 flesshe and þe skynne went away wiþ þe naile; þan  
 þat tyme I putte-to þe emplastre Sanguiboetes; In þe  
 mornyng, forsoþe, þe poudre Creoferoboron wiþ þe  
 36 same emplastre. And so aftirward by seuen dayes, ich  
 day wirchyng as it is seid, þer was ȝitte þerfore in þe  
 wounde þe endes or heuedes of synowes; whiche, þe  
 bone remoued, war festned, apperyng wiþ a maner blaknes,  
 40 and þe flessþ mortified on þe to partye. þis y-sene,

for seven  
 days before  
 the dead  
 bone could  
 be removed,



and for nine  
days with  
ointment,

and the  
patient  
recovered  
perfectly.

eft-sones I couchid softly þe heuedes of þe synowes and  
þe side mortified with ane hote iren, puttyng in þe  
shauyng of lard wip þe iuse of porres. In þe mornyng,  
forsoþe, þat superflue flessħ was remoued, and þan I 4  
putte in poudre of Creoferoboron for to mundifye it, and  
aboue þe emplastre forseid, and so aftirward continually  
by þre dayes: þan, forsoþe, putte I to þe enoyntment  
made of licium, seid afore, continually by nyen dayes. I 8  
enoynted, forsoþe, al aboute þe fynger vpon aiper side  
wip ane enoyntment made of sope and sulphure, and als  
sone þe fynger was flayne, and put out as it war scales;  
and als sone þe bolnyng biganne for to cese; þan, for- 12  
soþe, I putte-to vnguentum viride vpon stupes, And þe  
fynger bigan for to soude. But a litel after þe puttyng  
to of vnguentum viride, þer bigan for to growe vpon þe  
heued of þe bone of þe iuncture rede flessħ to þe gretnes 16  
of a pese; and þat y-sene, I distroyed it wip a cauterie;  
And þan I made hym suche ane oyntement desiccative.  
*Recipe*: Sulphur. auri-pigmenti, tartar., alume, vitriol,  
sape and oyle; whiche ich day puttyng to oones, he 20  
recovered helpe perfytely.

8. Of fistul in þe lawe ioynntour of þe fyngers,  
and in þe legges, knees, fete, & ankles,  
wip corruptyng of þe bones, and þe hardnes 24  
of þe cure.

Cases of  
Spina  
ventosa.

Amputation  
is best.

[S]um-tyme also the fistule gutte byfalleþ in þe  
fyngers of 3ong men, and oft-tymes of 3ong wymmen, in  
þe lower ioynnture by þe hande, and it makeþ holes in 28  
þe skynne som-tyme on þe to party and som-tyme on  
boþe parties. When þe knowes, forsoþe, þe holes to  
be on þe boþe parties, witte þou þat þe pacient is  
incurable, But if þe fynger be holy cutte away be þe 32  
iuncture where it is festned to þe hand. If þe bone,  
forsoþe, of þe hand nize to þat fynger be corrupte also,  
he is incurable but if it be drawen out. But witte þou  
þat it is noȝt mich to entremette of þe cure of suche þat 36  
þe help of þam be vndertaken. ffor I haue but seldom

sene any suche scape wipout deþe whan þe sikeness  
 was helped. ffor þe fluxe or þe rynnyng þer y-dried,  
 or stopped, or staunched, þai dye sone after. Suche  
 4 þingis shalt þou knowe þus: þe fynger or þe hand,  
 or þe fote, or þe legge, or any oþer membre in whiche  
 is sich a fistule stynkeþ gretly; it hap streite holes; þe  
 wondes hap hardnes wip whitenes and redeness; and  
 8 when þe wondes be rennyng þan þe pacient hap hymself  
 miryly and glad; and when þai ar stopped þe pacientes  
 bene pale in þe face and lene and feble. Also it falleþ  
 of-tyme in þe legge, in þe knee, in þe fote, and in þe  
 12 ankle. In þe legge and in þe fote I haue cured it, and  
 in þe ankle; But in þe ankle and þe kne also it bristed  
 out agayn aftir litle tyme.

Signs of  
incurable  
fistulæ.

9. Of þe maner of cure of oon þat had þe  
 16 fistule in þe legges aboue þe ankle.

[O]on tyme I heled a man þat had a fistule goutte in  
 þe legge aboue þe ankle and þe fote wip þe emplastre  
 Sanguiboetes, and wip a poudre þat is \*made þus:  
 20 *Recipe* auripigmenti, sulphur, calx viue, and black sape  
 ana; be þai poudred and putte to tuse in þe day.  
 Aboute þe wounde, forsoþe, I anoynted it wip comon  
 oyle or vnguentum album vnto þat he come to perfite  
 24 helpe. Also I gaffe hym drynk of Antioche. Aftir þe  
 cure, forsoþe, I sawe hym neuer, þerfore I know nozt  
 how long he liffed.

A powder  
for fistulous  
gout.

[\* leaf 154]

10. Of þe maner of cure of ane enposteme in  
 28 the buzt of the knee that was disposed  
 to the fistule.

[O]on aposteme come to a man in the bowyng of þe  
 kne, þat was hard to breke for vncouenable emplastres  
 32 putte þer-to first; þerfore I putte first þerto þe skynne  
 of lard þat diffieþ wele aposteme; And neþerlesse after  
 þre dayes I mizt nozt perceyue signe or tokne of rupture  
 or of brystyng. Whiche y-sene, I wold þrie haue opned  
 36 it wip a fleobotome or wip a rasour, but þe pacient for-

Treatment  
of a patient  
with an in-  
flammation  
in the ham,

who would  
not have it  
opened.

The plaster  
used.

The dis-  
charge  
ceased when  
he became  
feverish,

and the in-  
flammation  
nearly be-  
came a  
fistula.

Arderne has  
seen the  
popliteal  
space in  
dead men

soke it; þan, forsoþe, put I to ane herbe y-brissed þat is called pede lyon, þat it miȝt make a rupture in þe skyn, for it was to pikke; and in þe niȝt þe pacient put it away. þan made I ane emplastre to hym of mele of 4 whete and of clene hony medled togidre, and I putte it to; & aftir þe second puttyng to it brest in þe niȝt, and þer ranne out þerof quitour wiþ-out mesure; þe quitoure y-þristed out, I putte in tentes of larde to þe 8 lengþe of a fynger, þat þe hole shulde noȝt be stopped byfore þat þe aposteme war purged. In þe mene tyme þe pacient felle into þe febres aguez, And als sone þe flux or þe rennyng of þe quitour in þe aposteme cased, 12 in partye for negligence þat tentes was noȝt put in bycause of þe sikenes, and in party for distemperaunce of hete þat dried it. And so, þe hole y-closed or stopped, it biganne eft-sones for to bolne bineþe and for to gedre 16 to a newe aposteme; þe whiche y-sene, I opned þe hole wiþ a spatule and expressed þe quitour gedrid to-gidre. Aftirward I putte in ich day of lard, renewyng it ich, by a fourtniȝt and more. And neþerlesse I perceyued 20 noȝt þat þe aposteme dried any-þing, but more and more for to harden and wax rede, and putte out quitore, liquide and watry, somtyme mych and somtyme noþing. þerfore I perceyued þat þe place was disposed to þe 24 fistule, for it had ane hole or a mouþe and a depe wonde, and it putte out quitour of diuerse coloures and liquide, wiþ hardnes of þe place and yuel habitude or hauyng; þerfore I putte in tentes anoynted wiþ anoyntement þat 28 is made agayns þe fistule, þat is þus made: *Recipe* auripigment, sulphur, calx viue, blak sape; þe whiche, forsoþe, y-putte in fyue tymes or seuen, I perceyued it noþing to amende. I made a ventose to be putte to, and it wolde 32 noȝt drye; þis y-sene, I perceyued þat rewme—þat is a flowyng or rennyng—miȝt noȝt cese, for þe place in whiche was þe aposteme is of moiste substaunce. And it is to witte þat in þe place byside þe bowyng of the kne 36 in þe neþer party is a place þat hap no flessch but fatnes aloon; As I haue sene þer in dede men, þe skyn of þe flessch y-persed and þat fatnes bene eten or wastedde. þan I putte in þe hole vnto þe ground a tent of tre, 40



somwhat brode, and aboue I cutted þe skyn by þe middes  
 wiþ a rasour. In þe wonde, \*forsope, I putte a cloth [\* leaf 154,  
 depped in þe white of an ey. In þe morne, forsope, it back]  
 4 remoued, I put in a poudre þat is þus made: *Recipe*  
 vert-grese, vitriol, auripigmentum, alume; Aboue, forsope,  
 carpe, And aftirward ane emplastre þat is þus made:  
*Recipe*: apii, i.[e.] smalach, Mogwort, Walwort &c. as  
 8 aboue. And so wiþ þis poudre and þis emplastre he  
 was sone aftir cured. Or if þou wilt, aftir þe cutting  
 þou may hele with diaquilon. But it is to witte þat he  
 12 þat owe to make incision in þis place þat he be-war of  
 þe grete veyne þat is called sophena, þat comeþ down  
 by the þ[i]e to þe legge, þat it be nozt kuttet, for it  
 liggeþ nize þat fatty flesshe &c. The patient  
 was cured by  
 a stimulat-  
 ing powder  
 and plaster.  
 Beware of  
 cutting the  
 vessels in  
 operating on  
 the ham.

11. [þ]e arme of a certane manne biganne sodenly  
 16 for to ake & prik in þe buzt of þe arme<sup>1</sup> and afterward  
 gretly to bolne fro þe shulder to þe fyngers; þe pacient,  
 forsop, hauntyng or vsyng þe medycineþ of ladieþ, as it  
 war by a moneþ, euermore had hymself worse. At þe  
 20 last he sozt & asked my help. And when I biheld his  
 arme gretly bolned & replete of redenes & of brennyng &  
 hardneþ & akyng, ffirst I made hym ane emplastre of  
 tartare of ale, i.[e.] dreggeþ, & of malueþ, & hony, & salt,  
 24 & bran, & schepeþ talowe boiled togidre to thikneþ, &  
 streched vpon stupeþ and folden with a lynne clope. I  
 put þe emplastre on his arme, and alsone he feled alege-  
 ance of akyng. þe 3 day, forsop, remeuyng þe emplas-  
 28 tre, þe bolnyng in party was slaked. Bot in þe buzt of  
 þe arme al þe colleccion or gedryng abode stille, schew-  
 yng as it schuld gadre to ane heued. þe which y-sene,  
 I putte to ane emplastre maturatyue of malueþ y-sopen  
 32 and y-brissed, with grese 3 daies or 4, and neþerles I  
 perceyued neuer þe soner for to be matured, bot þe  
 bolnyng abode mych stil. And in þe buzt of þe arme  
 þe skyne appered rounde with diuerse colours to þe  
 36 maner of a tode,<sup>2</sup> alwaieþ denying tokne of rupture. And  
 in þe ground or bothme of þat gedryng was felt ane  
 hard þing, as it war ane nutte rízt in þe buzt vnder  
 a vena epatica.<sup>a</sup> Which y-sene, I putte to al a nízt ane

<sup>1</sup> in flexu  
brachii.

[leaf 155 (in  
a different  
hand)]

Another  
case of a  
man who  
was treated  
by ladies.

Arderne  
treated him  
with a  
plaster until  
the swelling  
subsided,

and after-  
wards a  
mallow  
plaster.

<sup>2</sup> ad modum  
bufonis.

a—a "i.[e.] lyuer vayne" overlined.

ARDERNE.

E

The arm  
blistered,

and the skin  
broke at the  
place, dis-  
charging  
dark blood.

The arm was  
rubbed with  
lard and a  
plaster put  
on ;

it healed by  
granulation.

The oint-  
ments used.

The patient  
got well.

emplastre of coluer<sup>3</sup> dong<sup>1</sup> & porris<sup>a</sup> & garlek y-brissed  
with þe iuyse of apii and a gode handful of salt. And in  
þe mornyng remeuynge it, þe place was ful of litle  
bladders in maner of pustule<sup>3</sup>, and þer went out as it war 4  
water ; þis y-sene, where þe sore samed þikker I putte  
vpon a cloþe schapen to þe brede of þe sore ane vnte-  
ment made of blak sope and sulphure & of arsenec ; aboue  
þat, forsoþe, þe emplastre seid afore. þe second day, 8  
forsoþ, þat emplastre & oyntment remeued, þe skyn was  
vtterly bristen, and þer appered a litel hole of þe arme,  
and þer went out vnder blak water and holdyng in maner  
of groute. þan I made putte aboue þat place chaunyng 12  
of lard ; aboue, forsoþe, ane emplastre þus made. *Recipe :*  
Iuyse of apii, wormode, Mugwort, netle, walwort, hony,  
white of ane ey, ana, and tempred with mele of ry. And  
if þou may nozt haue al þise þings, þe iuyse alon of 16  
apii<sup>b</sup> with hony and white of ane ey and mele availeþ  
mych. And þan bigan þe ded flesch for to disseuere,  
And in þe arme wher war bifore þe bladders euermore  
went out droppes of white watire when þe arme was bare 20  
with-out þe emplastre. And in midde<sup>3</sup> of þe more wonde  
appered pappe<sup>3</sup> of gret flesch ; and euermore þer appered  
(a certayne?<sup>c</sup>)<sup>2</sup> rednes in þe skyn. To þe pappe<sup>3</sup>, forsoþe, I  
made sich a poudre ; *Recipe viridis* [æris], vitriol, auripig- 24  
mentum, alum ana ; And I put it to ich oþer daie ;  
aboue þe poudre, forsoþe, I putte carpe, and at þe last  
aboue þat I put a litel clouth to þe quantite of þe  
wounde enoynted with vnguento fusco or albo or viridi. 28  
þe rednes, forsoþe, and þe watry place<sup>3</sup> I enoynted  
with ane oyntment made of blak sape, and poudre of  
sulphur ; aboue, forsoþe, a dry lynnen cloute, whiche I  
lete lye stille to þat it wold fall away bi it-self. And 32  
þan þat place put away from it al dry skynne<sup>3</sup> ; than eft-  
sone<sup>3</sup> I anoynted with þe forseid vntement vnto þat þe  
rednes & þe water went vtterly away. þe forseid wonde,  
forsoþe, was fully cured in þe forseid maner. Witte þou 36  
þat þis anoyntment is best to al spotte<sup>3</sup> or filþe<sup>3</sup> of þe  
skyn which giffen oute watre and makeþ redne<sup>3</sup>, for it

<sup>1</sup> ex fimo  
columbino.

<sup>2</sup> et semper  
quidam ru-  
bor in cute.

<sup>a</sup> "leke<sup>3</sup>" overlined.

<sup>b</sup> "smallach" overlined.

<sup>c</sup> Obliterated.



drieþ mich and doþe away rednes in euery place of þe body, out-tak in þe eizen.

Bot witte þou þat after þe puttyng to of þe oynt-  
4 ment þat is þus made—*Recipe* sape, sulphur & arsenec  
—þer appered a blak litel cruste to þe þiknes of a seme  
of a scho, þat was hard for to parte with þe forseid  
corrosiue; for it was mich ritted. To which I putte aboue  
8 a cautery, i.[e.] a brynniung iren, þat þe pacient almost  
feled it noȝt. After þe cauteriung forsoþe, I putte to þe  
schauyng of larde, as it is seid aboue, in sewyng al þings  
vnto þe ende.

[leaf 155,  
back]

The cautery  
used.

12 12. [A] man was smyten on his legge vpon þe shynbone,  
but neþerlesse þe skyn was noȝt cleuen<sup>1</sup> alsone after þe  
smytyng. Afterward, forsoþe, þe þrid day it bolned  
and bigan to ake. þerfor he went to a man þat haunted  
16 or vsed sich cure vnto þe tyme þat þer come in his  
legge ane hole, rounde and depe, and ful of blak filth in  
maner of brent flesh; whome whan he come to me I  
heled hym þus. ffirst I wasched þe wounde with hote  
20 wyne, or water in which was decocte þe croppez or þe  
iuyse of plantayne or sich, or in vryne. Afterward I  
putte to ane emplastre made of iuyse of playntayne,  
of rubarb, of smalach, of hony, and whete or rie mele &  
24 white of eyren y-medled togidre; or ane emplastre þat  
is called sanguiboetes. Afterward, þe place sumwhat  
mollified, I putte to poudre Creoferoboron, with þe  
medicine of arsenec y-medlet; aboue þe poudre stupez  
28 or carp; aboue al-togidre, forsoþe, þe emplastre of apii,  
mugwort, walwort seid afore. After þe puttyng to  
forsoþe of þis poudre, I did þe cure in al þings with  
lard & with oper þings, as it is seid aboue, vnto þe  
32 clensyng of þe wounde. Afterward, forsop, with vn-  
guento viridi & vnguento albo and carp I wroȝt in maner  
as it is seid aboue vnto þe ende. Afterward, forsop, when  
þer growed or wex any superflue flesh in þe wounde, I  
36 withstode it or mette it with poudre of creoferoboron or  
of litarge vnto þe fulle curyng of þe wounde. If any  
pustulez wex in þe leg about þe wounde, þou may

A patient  
knocked his  
leg and an  
ulcer  
formed.

Arderne's  
plasters

and stimu-  
lating  
powder.

He treated  
the proud  
flesh.

<sup>1</sup> "Broken" overlined.



Wounds with swords and axes must be treated like other injuries.

Bruises from the kick of a horse or from stones should first be scarified.

A patient's leg swelled suddenly on a Christmas-day.

Arderne fomented it,

and by cock-crow the patient was relieved.

The juice of marigold is very useful in inflammation of the breasts and in whitlow.

[leaf 156]

A prescription for tartar water.

cure þam with vnguento albo, as it is seid aboue. fforsop if þe wonde be in þe leg of swerd or ax or sich oper, be it cured as ben oper woundes. If any man, forsop, be smyten in any party of þe legge 4 violently and without wondyng of þe skynne, as falleþ oft-tyme of þe smytyng of ane horse fote, or of a stone or of sich oper, þan is it gode sone in þe bigynnyng for to garse þe place y-smyten and for to draw out blode 8 þer-of, and afterward for to putte to emplastre; repressyng þe akyng and bolnyng.

[A] man in þe day of þe natiuite of our lorde sodenly had his legge gretly bolned fro þe kne to þe ankle, 12 with redenes and gret brennyng, so þat he myȝt noȝt stand. I (smeared?)<sup>a</sup> þe legge on ych side, and epithimated with þe iuyse of solsequi, i.[e.] marigold, and a litil vinegre putte þerto,<sup>1</sup> and made þam a litel leuke<sup>b</sup>; þe which 16 y-do, lynnen clopes wette in þe same iuyse I laide warme aboute his legge, and when þe cloþe was dronken of þe iuse I laid hym in his couche; And for certayn afor þe cok kraw þe akyng and þe brennyng was cesed and 20 þe pacient rested wele. And within pre daies without any oper medicyne he was perfiteley cured, whar-of many men wondred. Also for certayn þe iuyse of solsequii, marigold, epithimated bi it-self or with vinegre destroyeþ 24 meruelously aposteme; in þe pappes of wymmen, and þe felon,<sup>c</sup> and þe carbuncle and ȝekyng,<sup>2</sup> and rednes, and bloneȝ, and brennyng þat comeþ of þe forsaid þings.

[A] chanon was on a tyme seke, and when he bigan to 28 wex hole þar was made a grete gedryng to-gidre of humours descendyng doune in his legge. After a tyme, forsop, þer wex pusceleȝ brovnysch and clayisch.<sup>3</sup> He, forsop, putte þat he schuld dry þe puscheȝ watre of 32 tartar þus y-made: *Recipe* tartari lb i or ij, and putte it in ane newe erþen potte, and, þe mouþe of þe potte stopped with clay, putte it in a strong fire and lat it be þer a niȝt and a day or more if þou wiȝt. Afterward 36 tak þat tartar and hyng it in some place in a lynnen

<sup>1</sup> quem curavi cum succo solsequii addito parum de aceto et cum dicto succo tepido epithimiavi tibiam suam undique. [MS. Digby 161, leaf 22, back.]

<sup>2</sup> Pruritus.

<sup>3</sup> pustulæ fuscae et latae.

<sup>a</sup> Obliterated.

<sup>b</sup> "warme" overlined.

<sup>c</sup> "antrace" overlined.

sacce or pokette, and vnder it putte a brasen vessel to  
 receyue þe watre þat distilleþ droppyngly to þe maner  
 of lye out of þe sak; þis watre is seid for to dry puscheþ  
 4 wele, bot neþerlesse it auailed noȝt to hym. At þe last,  
 forsoþ, þer grow in þat party of þe legge a large  
 wounde, And about þe ankles þre or four smale woundeþ  
 to þe brede of ane halfpeny. And þe legge semed of  
 8 ȝelow colour medled with rednes fro þe calf to þe ankeleþ,  
 And þe skynne kast euermore out many skaleþ. When,  
 forsoþ, he had vsed a certayne tyme lede or puluer  
 incarnatyue and sawe þat it auailed hym noping, þan  
 12 he vsed a long tyme ane entrete þat is called *entractum*  
*nigrum*,<sup>1</sup> blak entrete, which is made of white lede and  
 rede and comon oile and tartarye &c.; bot neþerlesse he  
 perceyued none amending þerof, for it come to a mor-  
 16 male; þe which, when I had sene it, I affermed it to be  
 a mormale. And I did sich a cure to it: þis is þe cure  
 to þe mormale—ffirst sewe þe pacient legge strongly  
 with a lynne cloþe<sup>2</sup>; After wasche wele þat legge so  
 20 sewed with hote watre, after þat þe pacient may suffre.  
 And so after þe waschyng lat it lye by a naturel day,  
 þat is ane hole day & a niȝt, kepyng þe legge fro aier  
 and fro cold. þe second day, forsoþ, remoue þe cloþe  
 24 and mundifie þe wounde or þe woundes if þai be many,  
 and putte in euery wounde a litel pece of lynne cloþe  
 moisted in cold watre. Afterward putte of þe oyntment  
 of dyuylyne in þe circuite of þe wounde<sup>3</sup> aboue þe hole  
 28 skynne so þat it touche no waieþ þe woundeþ with-in, &  
 couer it with a lynne cloþe y-wette. Do þus euery day  
 tuyeþ, renewyng þe oyntment and mundifying þe woundeþ  
 and fyllyng þam of a lynne cloþe y-wette, as it is seid  
 32 aboue. þis is þe oyntment: *Recipe* coperoſe, sal nitri,  
<sup>a</sup> cineris geneste,<sup>a</sup> cineris <sup>b</sup> nigri testudinis,<sup>b</sup> atramenti,  
 ana, parte 1; viridis greci somewhat; Of quikke-siluer  
 double to þe quantite of one of þe forseid; Of boreþ  
 36 grese resolued at þe fire and mundified, þat sufficeþ.  
 þan medle first þe ashes with þe grese, afterward þe toþer  
 poudreþ, and when þou hast wele ymedled, put it in a

The treat-  
 ment of an  
 ulcerated  
 leg in a  
 Canon.

Arderne  
 diagnosed  
 the case as  
 mormale or  
 inflamed  
 sore on the  
 leg.

His treat-  
 ment by  
 bandaging  
 and very hot  
 fomenta-  
 tions,

then cold  
 compresses,

afterwards  
 mercurial  
 ointment,

<sup>1</sup> Quæ titu-  
 lum confert  
 de Dyuelyn.

<sup>2</sup> Primo con-  
 sere tibiam  
 fortiter et  
 aliquantu-  
 lum stricte  
 in panno  
 lineo.

<sup>3</sup> Postea  
 pone de isto  
 unguento  
 in circuitu  
 vulneris.

a—a “aschen of brome” overlined.

b—b “of blak snaile” overlined.



and finally  
Lanfrank's  
ointment,

though he  
had to use  
the knife.

[\* leaf 156,  
back]

It is best to  
cut away the  
dead flesh in  
an ulcerated  
leg,

and then to  
apply a  
powder.

Lanfrank in  
his book  
gives advice  
about the  
cure of a  
mormale.

box and it schal be blak oyntment. With pis oyntment, forsoþ, I cured fully þe gretter wondeþ of þe forseid legge, doying in þe maner seid afore; þe lesse wondeþ, forsoþ, cured I with vnguento viridi, i.[e.] grene oyntment of 4 lanfrank. þer was dede flesch of blo colour to þe brede of a peny; þat dede flesch, forsoþ, was mich pikke, and, þat y-se, I kutte with a rasour a litel þe ouer party of þat flesch; Afterward I putte to larde, and so at þe last with 8 larde & with cuttyng I dissolued, i.[e.] lesyd it vtterly. þat flesch þerfor remoue, eftsoneþ with þe oyntment of dyuylyn<sup>1</sup> aforeseid and a clope wette in water I held þe wounde opne to þe brede of a peny,<sup>2</sup> And þan eftsoneþ þer 12 brest out a wounde aboute þe sideþ, and it bygan to large it vnto þat it was almost of þe same gretneþ as it was afore.<sup>3</sup> þat y-sene, I putted in four tymeþ poudre of litarge and anoynted it about with vnguento albo, and putte in þe 16 wounde a lynne clope wette in þe water of herb robert. Which cure semed to me more profitable, and sowded better þe extremiteþ and glowep<sup>4</sup> þam vnto perfite halþe. \* If þe mormale be euen aboue þe schyn-bone, þat it be 20 more sikerly and more sone cured it is profitable to cutte þe dede flesch and putte it away if þe pacient consent. And if it be cutte, alsone after þe cuttyng is to be putte in a cloute wette in whyte of ane ay al a nyȝt. Afterward 24 putte in poudre of white glasse and of alum ꝓucaryne, i.[e.] alum glasse, or alum plume or of boþe. And if þou se þe bone mortified, witte þou þat it is incurable or vnneþ for to merowe be cured. If þou trow it be 28 curable, it is to be helped with some cure of þe mormale in þe boke of lanfrank. Also, as it is seid aboue, som tyme a man is smytyn som party of þe legge violently without wondyng of þe skynne, as of ane hors fote or of 32 a stone or staffe or sich oþer, and þan is it gode sone for to scarifie þe place y-smytyn and drawe þe blode þenneþ, and after put on enplastreþ repressyng akyng and boluyng. ffor oft-tymeþ þe mormale comeþ of sich þings. 36 Agayne þe mormale be þer lesnyng<sup>a</sup> of vena basilica, i.[e.] lyuer vayne, of þe riȝt arme or on þe left; after-

<sup>1</sup> cum unguento de Dyuelyn.

<sup>2</sup> usque ad festum Scti Matthæi Apostoli et Ecclesiæ proxime sequere operatus sum.

<sup>3</sup> circa festum Scti Laurentii.

<sup>4</sup> et conglutinauit.

<sup>a</sup> "minnuschyng" overlined.



ward, if it be nede, of þe sophene. At þe last be he scarified<sup>a</sup> in þe leggez.

14. [A] tretys of þe emoraidez, y-drawen out after lam-  
 4 frank, a discrete maistre of þe kyngz of fraunce; which made  
 tuo bokez of cirurgie, þe lesse and þe more. Also after  
 maister bernard de gordon in his lilie. Also after maister  
 bartelmow in his passionarie. Also after maister Richard  
 8 in his Micrologie. And after maister Roland, and mayster  
 Guy; And after Roger Bawn And maister Iamarcii,  
 And maister Gilbertyne; And after oper experte men  
 whos doctryne I haue beholden & sene, and which I haue  
 12 founden moste experte in practizing, with helpe of our  
 lord. I schal schew þam in þis boke. Emoroyz on  
 greke is said flux of blode, and it is seid of emak, þat is  
 blode, and rois, flux. Grekez, forsop, calleþ emeroyz  
 16 flux of blode in what-euer parti of þe body it be; Bot  
 anence latyne men<sup>1</sup> þis worde is appropriate to þe flux of  
 blode of þe lure; And þe veynes apperyng in þe lure when  
 pai flwe,<sup>2</sup> i.[e.] ren, and ar bolned and akep, pai ar called  
 20 emeroydez, bot neþerlez vnproperly, sauand þe pece of þe  
 comon puple. ffor when pai send out no blode, bot ar  
 bolned, and akep, and ychep or smertep pai ar called  
 by oper names anence lechez. Lewed men and vnex-  
 24 perte men calleþ al þe infirmitez bredyng in þe lure  
 emeroydez, or pilez, or fics. ffrench men calleþ emeroydez  
 fics, men of London calleþ þam pilez. Neþerlesse it is  
 nozt to strife agayneþ þe vse of spekyng, bot rapþer it  
 28 spedep þat lered men and experte knawe þe maner of  
 spekyng and vse it. ffor John Damascen seiþ 'It is  
 heuy for to chaunge noying custom, and most if it be  
 olde.' Neþerlez of þe name is no stryuyng whileþ þe  
 32 sekenez bene knowen. Diuerse auctourez, forsop, hap  
 putte diuerse names to þe sekenez of þe lure, and also  
 pai haue assigned diuerse causes and spicez, And pai  
 haue ymagined many maners of curacions; Of whiche  
 36 some more profitable and ofter experte bene sewyngly to  
 be noted vnder compendiousnez to þe vtilite<sup>b</sup> of helyng.  
 þerfor for to trete schortly it is first to witte þat þe

[leaf 157]  
 A treatise  
 on Piles.

Chiefly a  
 compilation.

Etymology  
 of the word  
 Emeroids.  
 The Greeks  
 use the word  
 in a more  
 general  
 sense than  
 the Latin  
 writers.

The un-  
 learned call  
 everything  
 piles.  
 Frenchmen  
 call piles  
 "figs,"

but there  
 nothing  
 much in a  
 name if all  
 are agreed  
 as to the  
 condition.

<sup>a</sup> "garsed" overlined.

<sup>b</sup> "i.[e.] profite" overlined.

<sup>1</sup> Apud  
 Latinos.

<sup>2</sup> quando  
 fluunt.

Varieties of piles: emeroide<sup>3</sup> if þai sende out blode þai ar seid ryȝtfully emeroyde<sup>3</sup>. If þer appere, forsoþ, in þe lure bolnyngs blo or blak, or redne<sup>3</sup> to þe quantite of a bene or gretter, þat is to þe quantite of a testicle of a cok or of a hounde, 4 as I haue oftyme sene, som tyme occupiung þe to half of þe lure only, and som tyme boþe, sich bene called of Avicen deaf emeroyde<sup>3</sup>, for þer rynnep noþing out of þam. And sich bolnyngs forsoþ, if þei be gretter, 8 puttyng out no blode, þai ar called condilomata, of condilo of greke, þat is þe closed fist of a man. Condilomata, forsoþ, schewep þe schappe of a fist y-closed, And condilomata bredep of gret malicious or malencoli- 12 ous blode. After lamfrank, forsoþ, þe lesse bolnyng<sup>3</sup> if þei be blak or blo þai ar called attritos,<sup>1</sup> or atreos, for þe blak colour of þam. If þai be rede þai ar called uve, i.[e.] grape<sup>3</sup>, and þai haue þe schap of a rede vyne or 16 grape. And þai þat bene of blode and of colre ar called morale<sup>3</sup>,<sup>2</sup> and þai ar like to mulberie<sup>3</sup> when þai bigynne to wex rede. And som bene called verucale<sup>3</sup> <sup>3</sup> for þai ar like to wartes, and sich hap þair bygynnyng of malen- 20 colye. And som bene of blode, þof it be bot seldom, which ar called fics, <sup>4</sup> If þai be made of ventosite <sup>4</sup> with grete strechyng of þe skynne. Al þe forseid may be reduced vnto tuo þings: Ouper of hotene<sup>3</sup> of humours, 24 or of mych aboundyng of blode. If þat hotene<sup>3</sup> be in cause, þat is blode and colre, þise schal be þe signe—brennyng with greuous prikkynge, and smertyng, and vn-slepyng, and som tyme with ychyng in þe lende<sup>3</sup> and 28 with tenasmon and gret costyuene<sup>3</sup> of þe wombe, and þrist, and feblene<sup>3</sup> of goyng. Signe<sup>3</sup> of cold cause, þat is of gret blode and malencolious, bene þise—bolnyng with hardne<sup>3</sup> and derkne<sup>3</sup> and akyng—bot not scharp as 32 of hote cause—þe colour of þe bolnyng blo or blak, smertyng in þe lure, with lousene<sup>3</sup> of þe wombe and akyng, and greuousne<sup>3</sup> or heuyne<sup>3</sup> of þe þie<sup>3</sup>. Signe<sup>3</sup> if þe em[er]oide<sup>3</sup> be of multitude of blode bene þise, þat 36 is to sey of þe veyne<sup>3</sup> apperyng in þe legge<sup>3</sup>. And if

Condylomata, why so called.

The cause of condylomata;

their appearance.

Verrucae, their causes;

the symptoms of the inflamed variety:

of the chronic form.

Piles due to congestion.

<sup>1</sup> “blake<sup>3</sup>” *overlined*.

<sup>2</sup> “mulberie<sup>3</sup>” *overlined*.

<sup>3</sup> “warty” *overlined*.

<sup>4-4</sup> “after gordon, and þai ar as war white bledders” *overlined*.



þai ren, þat þai ren mych & oft-tyme, and þat þe  
 pacient be of sanguyne habitude. ffor why; in þam is  
 multitude of blode \* þat vseþ not fleebotomye, and þat  
 4 drynkeþ copiously and oftymeþ wyne, and þat eteþ  
 scharp þings, as onyons, lekeþ, cauleþ, comyne, and þat  
 takeþ medicynes apertyueþ of veyneþ,<sup>1</sup> as bene scamonye  
 i.[e.] aloe and euforbium, as wittenesseþ all auctours  
 8 togidre and experte men. Emeroideþ ar caused of malen-  
 colious blode, which is þe fece of clene blode aboundand  
 in our body; which blode, forsoþ, for his yuel qualite  
 and odious to nature, discretyue vertu enforceþ for to cast  
 12 out to þe helpyng of al þe body, helpyng þe vertu ex-  
 pulsive of al þe membreþ togidre. And so þurþ þe  
 strengþe of nature it is putte out fro þe vayne kilyuz,<sup>2</sup>  
 þat lieþ to rig-bone of þe bak, which properly is recep-  
 16 tacle of malencolious blode. Which kylis, forsoþ, is  
 diuided into fiue brancheþ þat bene ended about þe  
 party of nature<sup>a</sup>; which veyneþ, forsoþ, when þai ar  
 som tyme filled of melancolious blode þai distende, i.[e.]  
 20 strecheþ, so þe veyneþ þat ouper þe blode bresteþ out or þer  
 ar gendred bolnyngþ of diuerse spiceþ and schapeþ. And  
 also oper sinthomata,<sup>3</sup> i.[e.] perileþ, as scharp akyng and  
 prikkynge, brynnyng, ychyng, smertyng, thenasmon, i.[e.]  
 24 inordinate appetite of egestion, with ful mich enforsyng  
 and neþerlesse he may do none egestion whan he comeþ  
 to þe pryue. If, forsoþ, þe blode brist out it is called  
 þe emoroydeþ; but if þat it flowe temperatly it dop  
 28 many helpyngs and preserueþ þe body fro many sekeneþ  
 aduste and corrupte, as is Mania, malencolia, pleuresis,  
 lepre, morfe, ydropisy, mormale, quartane, passions of þe  
 splene, and so of oper like. Bot as it preserueþ fro  
 32 þise when þat it fleweþ temperately, so when it is  
 wont for to flewe and afterward ceseþ vtterly al þe for-  
 seid sekenes ar gendred. Also when þai flewe ouer  
 temperance þai bene cause of ptisyk or of ydropisy.  
 36 Wherfor seiþ Galiene and ypocras after lamfrank ‘Ich  
 long lastyng and ouermych puttyng out of blode is moste  
 myzty cause for to make ydropisy.’ þerfor in þam in  
 whome malencolious blode is multiplied temperite fluyng

[\* leaf 157, back]

Those who are subject to congestive piles.

The cause of piles.

The pathology of piles.

Anatomy of the vena cava.

Symptoms of piles.

Uses of piles when they only bleed moderately.

<sup>1</sup> et medicinas venarum aperitivas sumunt.

<sup>2</sup> κοίλην vena cava.

<sup>3</sup> Symptomata.

<sup>a</sup> “i.[e.] lure” overlined.



What constitutes moderate bleeding.

How to stop the bleeding from piles.

The cause of the bleeding in piles.

[\* leaf 158]

The impatience of the present generation.

Bleeding piles are often concealed piles.

of blode of þe emeroydeȝ helpeþ mych, ne it is noȝt vtterly to be restreyned. It is called temperite vse when þe pacientes felep þamself more lizt þat þai war wont<sup>1</sup>; hauyng better appetite, and etyng and slepyng more 4 swetely or softly, and sich oper. Bot when þe pacientes felen þamself more heuy, and þer schewe malice of appetite and foule colour of body, þan is þe flwyng ouer mych; wherfor it is alsone successyuely to be restreyned 8 and turned away. þerfor siþe þer is noȝt a litel hardneȝ in restreynyng of þe emeroideȝ, þerfor many þings ar be noted of þe restreynyng of þam; þat is to sey þat þe leche wytte wheþer þe flowyng be done 12 of anathemasy or of diabrosi or of rixi; þat is wheþer þe flowyng be made of opnyng of veyneȝ, þat is called anapemasis; or of fretyng of þe veyneȝ, þat is called diabrosis; or of cleuyng or twynnyng, þat is 16 called rixis. þerfor if þe blode ybroȝt to þe lure be aduste—for when blode is aduste it is scharped<sup>2</sup>—or if false flewme or colre be medled, þan oft-tymeȝ þe veyneȝ ar freted and þai make þe fluxe. And for certayne sich 20 flux is of hard restreynyng. ffor why; þe substance of þe veyne yfreted may noȝt be \*sonded<sup>3</sup> with-out disese and heuynes, siþe þat it nedep a medycyne corrosyue. And men now-of-daieȝ bene vnpacient and yuel tholyng, 24 And for-þi flowyng of diabrosi<sup>a</sup> is of hard curyng. And þe secondary is rixis<sup>b</sup> which also is cured with corrosyueȝ in þe bygynnyng. Anathemasis<sup>c</sup> is more liztly cured þan þe oper, bot perauenture noȝt without corrosyueȝ. 28 þis I sey, if þe flowyng be olde, Anathemasis is made for aboundance of blode or for ventosite descendyng doune. Rixis, forsop, is made of ouer myche dryneȝ, of cause within-forþe or of cause without-forþe, or of hardneȝ 32 of filpeȝ,<sup>4</sup> or for ane hote aposteme, or any scharpe flowyng. Also flowyng emoroydeȝ somtyme ar hidde within, without any bolnyngs schewyng outward, þat of som þai ar demed to be dissenterikeȝ and yuelȝ wrong.<sup>5</sup> ffor why, in 36 þe inward emoroideȝ first goþ out egestion and afterward goþ out blode with egestion to-gidre. In ciliaca passion, forsop, goþ out blode and afterward egestion. Ciliaca

<sup>1</sup> cum patientes se sentiunt leviores solito et melius colorati.

<sup>2</sup> quia cum sanguis aduritur acuitur.

<sup>3</sup> non consolidari.

<sup>4</sup> ex duritie fæcum.

<sup>5</sup> quæ a quibusdam judicantur dysentericæ et malæ.

<sup>a</sup> “fretyng” *overlined*.

<sup>b</sup> “clyffyng” *overlined*.

<sup>c</sup> “opnyng” *overlined*.

passion is akyng of þe wombe *with* puttyng out of blode  
sewyng. Also after gordon, *scilicet* de morbo, 'In euery  
þing þat goþ out of þe body bene 3 comon cause3;

They are  
to be dis-  
tinguished  
from dysen-  
tery and  
passioiliaca.

<sup>1</sup> aut ratione  
membri aut  
virtutis.

4 Oup̄er by reson of þe membre, or of vertue,<sup>1</sup> or of  
humour. If it be bi reson of þe membre, þat is for þe  
membre is ouer þinne. If it be for vertue, þan it is  
for vertue retentyue is feble, and vertu expulsiue strong.

Bernard de  
Gordon's  
Lilium  
Medicinæ  
quoted.

8 If it be for humour, þat is for ouper it is malencolious  
or for it is scharp, or subtile, or watrye. Also emoroide3  
ar caused of scharpnes of blode and ouer mych hete  
brennyng þe blode, as in colorik men þat bene of hote

Piles are due  
to an excess  
of blood,

12 nature; for blode when it is brent it geteþ scharpnes, as  
it is seid afore. Also ouer mych flowyng of blode is  
made ouper for multitude of blode, as in þam þat  
drynkeþ mych wyne or oþer mete3 or drynke3 þat

to eating  
and drinking  
too much,

16 multiplieþ blode, or in þam þat bene sangyne com-  
plexion. Also it is made for yuel qualite of blode, as for  
it is ouer scharp or subtile or watry, as in þam þat vseþ  
rawe fruyte3, ffor raw fruyte3 gendreþ watry blode. þe

to diseases  
of the blood.

20 causes, forsop, y-knowen, propre cure may be done to.  
Signe3 of dedly flowyng bene þise, þat is to sey:—  
fflowyng of blode bryngyng to swounyng is mortale<sup>a</sup>;

Also flowyng of blode *with* coldne3 of extremite3 is mor-  
24 tale; Also flowyng þat comeþ sodeynly and *with*  
hastine3 is mortale; Also flowyng of blode þat bryngeþ  
to pale colour, or grene, or blo, or browne is werst and  
mortale; Also quantite of blode passing 4 pounde is yuel,

Danger  
signals in  
bleeding  
piles.  
Sudden  
onset.

28 and if it come to 24 it is deþ. fflowyng of blode *with*  
liztnyng of þe body is gode. In þam þat poleþ  
emoroide3 þe vryne schal be in colour remissed white  
with powdry resolucions blak or blo residente3 in þe

Pallor.  
Great loss.

32 bothme of þe vessel. After Egidi de vrinis, white and  
remisse ow for to be of malencolious blode ouer abundant  
in þe body, wherfor naturel hete is febled. ffor why;  
digestion waxeþ raw, and of rawnes of digestion is þe

Quotes  
Gilles de  
Corbeil de  
Urinis.

36 vryne discolored, \* And it appereþ *with* poudry resolucions  
which bene resolved of malencolious blode blak and erpi  
aboundyng, and by contynuel waie3 pai ar drawn to þe  
bladdar and putte out *with* þe vryne. And for pai ar  
40 heuy and erpi pai satle in þe grounde. þe same vryne

[\* leaf 158,  
back]

<sup>a</sup> "dedly" *overlined*.



How noli-me-tangere and lupus are produced.

The blood is not confined.

Choler and melancholy are cribbed in the gall bladder and in the spleen.

The signs of melancholy.

Treatment of bleeding piles by herb pills.

Phlebotomy is best in the overfed and idle whose piles bleed.

also may betokne in men vice<sup>a</sup> of þe splene, and in wymmen withholdyng of menstruez. And witte þou þat after gordon in 'clarificacione de vicio splenis' þat innatural humours may be gendred in oþer place þan in 4 þe lyuer, as in þe stomak colre peassyue,<sup>1</sup> i.[e.] grene, and also colre eruginous, of which is gendred 'noli-me-tangere,' and lupus. And also in þe veynez ar gendred vnnaturale humours. Bot þe splene hap no vertu of gendryng 8 anyþing, siþe it is nopyng bot a receptakle of malencolie, which is ane odious humour to nature and to al membris of þe body for his yuel qualitez. Also witte þou þat þe blode hape nouþer house,<sup>b</sup> ne receptakle, ne prison; 12 but colre and malencoly hap prisons, þat is to sey colre in þe chiste of þe gall and malencoly in þe splene. Also witte þou þat if þe pacient of emoroidez be of malencolious complexion, þise bene toknez:—smalnez<sup>c</sup> of 16 body, discoloured, erpi, angry, waik of hert, heuy, and only ferpful and couaitous. And witte þou þat if þe forseid pacient sende out blode blak and þikke and stynkyng, þat þis flowyng is nozt to be restreyned, bot if 20 it ouerflowe & þe pacient be febled. In euery-þing, forsoþ, þe vertu of þe body is to be kept bifor al oþer þings. Agaynz þe flowyng of þe emoroidez distempre þou moste subtile mele of whete, with iuyse of millefoile, 24 and make þerof pillulez, and giffe hym euery day in þe mornyng 3 or 4 of þam distempered with wyne of decoccion of millefoile, or plantayn, or burso pastoris, or rede netle, or paruencis. Bot if þe pacient be of san- 28 guyne complexion, and lifyng delicately and in ydelnez, and blode be aboundand, þan þof þer be sych flowyng it is nozt to be restreyned bot if it ouer flow, þat is knownen by þe toknez aforeseid. þerfor if þer faþ ouer 32 mych flowyng, it is spedeful þat it be restreyned; for, after galien, blode is norischyng of al membrez, als wele of sadde as of softe, and al hap bigynnyng or spryngyng of blode; and for-als-mych it is seid þe frende of nature, 36 þerfor if þe frende be destroyed þe enemy waxeþ miȝty. þerfor, after gordon, to þe curyng of þe emoroidez is flebotomy competent, if vertu and age suffre it,

<sup>1</sup> prasina.

<sup>a</sup> "sekenes" *overlined*.

<sup>b</sup> "duellyng" *overlined*.

<sup>c</sup> "or lenez" *overlined*.



- bope for it avoideþ matery goyng afore, and also it  
 withdraweþ þe matery to þe contrary.<sup>a</sup> And fleobotomy  
 ow to be done of þe basilic veyne of þe arme for mater  
 4 goyng afore, and afterward of þe sophenis at þe hele, þe  
 vtter sophe turneþ þe flowyng of þe emoroideþ and  
 restreyneth þe emoroydeþ for euermore. Whiche fleo-  
 botomy, forsopþ, continued \* fro 3ere to 3ere, and namely  
 8 about þe fest of seynt Micheß, bifore and after oneþ or  
 twieþ, or when-someuer þe pacient feleþ tyklyng or  
 ychyng or prykkynge in þe lure, þan be he minusched as  
 it is afore seid, and alsoue he schal be cured. Also witte  
 12 þou þat fleobotomye of þe inward sophenis of þe leggeþ  
 prouokeþ þe emoroideþ and menstrueþ; And of þe vtter  
 sophenis streyneþ þe emoroideþ and menstrueþ, and pre-  
 serueþ for certayne fro þe forseid passions. Sopheneþ  
 16 bene þo grete veyneþ þat ar stretched fro þe kneeþ vnto  
 þe ankleþ of bope partieþ of þe leggeþ. þe maner of  
 doying of þis fleobotomye is þat it be done about þe  
 hour of euensong or latter, þat is in þe regnyng of  
 20 malencolious blode, þat is fro þe 9 hour of þe daie  
 vnto þe 3 hour of þe nigt. Also witte þou þat fleo-  
 botomye to be done vnder<sup>b</sup> þe hele and in saluatella of  
 þe handeþ, oweþ nozt to be done with a blode iren bot  
 24 with a lancete, for hurtyng of þe syneweþ, but if þat  
 nede make it. Also witte þou þat he þat schal be laten  
 blode oweþ for to putte his fete in hote watre, and eft-  
 sone þam owe to be putte agayn, þat þe blode go out  
 28 better; And þe pacient ow to abide still in þe watre,  
 vnto þat þe blode þat appered first blak chaunge into  
 fairer colour. Be þis doctrine boldly kept, for if it be  
 nozt done competently it profiteth noþing or litel; ffor  
 32 certayne I haue cured for euermore, with on latyng blode  
 al-only of þe vtter sophene, many men þat poled þe  
 emoroideþ many 3eres, vnto þe feblyng of þe body.  
 Bot witte þou þat, after gordon, þat þof-al fleo-  
 36 botomye make blode fluxible, neþerlesse if it be done  
 of þe vtter sopheneþ it draweþ þe flowyng to þe opposite;  
 and so it makynge<sup>1</sup> þe flowyng for to be turned fro  
 þe lure þat it flow nozt to þe costomable place; and  
 40 forþi it profiteþ to al þat ar cured of þe emoroideþ,  
<sup>a</sup> "opposite" *overlined*. <sup>b</sup> "at" *overlined*.

Blood to be taken either from the basilic vein or the external saphenous.

[\* leaf 159]

The bleeding should be annually about Michaelmas.

Bleeding from the internal saphenous bad for piles and menorrhagia.

Anatomy of the saphenous veins.

Evening is the proper time for phlebotomy.

Treatment after phlebotomy.

<sup>1</sup> et ita facit.

The patients should be let blood once or twice every spring and autumn even though their piles be cured.

The patient must be purged before he is bled.

Myrobalans is the best purgative in piles ;

[\* leaf 159, back]

raisins and liquorice may be used,

and also to al pat ar disposed to þe emoroideȝ, for to be laten blode of þe outward sophenis, oneȝ or tuyeȝ in ver and also ofte in autumpue fro ȝere to ȝere. ffor why ; sich fleobotomye for certayne preserueþ fro þe 4 emoroideȝ, and avoideþ pacienteȝ fro al yuel humours and kepeþ þam in hele. And þer be no blode-later redy, be þer made ventosyng with garsyng atuix þe buttokeȝ at þe rigebone ende or aboue þe veyneȝ, for it doþe þe same 8 pat þe forseid fleobotomye, bot noȝt so expertly, bot nede hape no lawe. <sup>1</sup> And it is to witte pat if þe leche may gette þe riȝt reule by al þings in euery wirching after crafte, fleobotomye owȝt neuer to be done in þe emoroideȝ 12 byfore purgacion y-done, and þan sewyngly mynischyng. Also after gordon, in ouer mych flowyng of þe emoroideȝ, and also of menstrueȝ, is competent a medicyne laxatyue to purge corrupte humours þat induceþ þe flowyng, þat 16 þe cause cesyng, þe effecte cese. To which þing to be done al þe mir[obalan] . . . . .<sup>a</sup> [con]ouenient ffor mirabolan laxep afore þam and streyneþ after þam . . . . .<sup>a</sup> and þai avoide al yuel humours. þerfor be þai preparete 20 . . . . .<sup>a</sup> decocte byfor þat þai be taken, for bi decoccion þair . . . . .<sup>a</sup> \*and so þe strength of laxatiueyng shuld be febled, bot þai ow to be resolved in rennyng liquore, as in mylk or 24 whey, with racyns & liquorice, elleȝ walld þai schrenk<sup>b</sup> þe stomake and lefe yuel tokeneȝ byhynd<sup>c</sup> þam ; and so of þe racyns and of þe liquore ar þai reuled þat þai bryng in no harme. Which, forsoþ, resolved and þe kirnelleȝ 28 cast away, lat þam lie al a niȝt in þe same liquor, and in þe mornyng þe colyng be giffen to drynk. þis medicyne, forsoþe, of mirobolan is ful noble, siþe it purgeþ humours of niȝt placeȝ, þat is citrineȝ colre,<sup>2</sup> kebuliȝ fleume,<sup>3</sup> Indi 32 malencoly, i.[e.] blak colre, bellerici and emblici colre aduste. And so may al þe humours be purged ; wherfor be mirabolan hadde in reuerence, ffor þai availe mich to þe emoroideȝ and menstrueȝ to be purged. And þis medi- 36 cyne for certayn cureþ euery flux of þe wombe, þat is to sey diaria, dissenteria, liencaria. Also it is to wytte pat

<sup>1</sup> Ad quod faciendum myrobalani sunt multum convenientes, quia myrobalani ante se laxant, et post se constringunt h[oc] est comprimendo laxant et eos humores malos evacuant. Myrobalani, autem, hoc modo, præparentur:— Non debent myrobalani decoqui antequam fumentur, quia per decoctionem eorum gummitas in fumum resolveretur et sic vis purgandi debilitaretur.

<sup>2</sup> citrini choleram. <sup>3</sup> kebuli flavam.

<sup>a</sup> A portion of the leaf is missing. <sup>b</sup> “ronkle” overlined. <sup>c</sup> “after” overlined.



in pacientz of þe emoroidez be þer neuer giffen medicynez apertyue<sup>3</sup> of veynez nouþer be þe mouþe, as scamonè, or aloe, or euforbium, comyn, leke<sup>3</sup>, onyans, garleke and sich

but never  
scammony  
or aloes.

4 oper scharp þing<sup>3</sup>; ne be þar nozt putte opon þe place, out take aloen and comyn, which tuo, putte outward, streyneþ, and with-in-forþ taken opneþ veynez. Bot it is to wytte

pat in þe forseid fluxez of þe wombe mirabolan<sup>d</sup> ow to be

The myro-  
balans may  
be given in  
goat's milk.

8 dissolued in gote mylk,<sup>1</sup> if it may be had, or in iuse or water of fumitere or of playntane, or in rayne water or rose water, or of veruene, or of anoper stiptike herbe as millefoile or mynte. Also witte þou, after al auctours,

12 þat pose þings þat restryneþ emoroidez restreynen<sup>d</sup> men-  
strue<sup>3</sup>, and econverso; And þe same sekene<sup>3</sup> þat comeþ of  
þe vice of menstrue<sup>3</sup>, comeþ also of þe emoroid, & econverso;  
and so by sewyng<sup>a</sup> þat þai acorde in cure. þerfor in cold

What is good  
for piles is  
equally good  
for menor-  
rhagia.

16 cause be þai giffen<sup>d</sup> þat heten<sup>d</sup> and ingrosset<sup>d</sup> þe mater of  
flowyng of blode, als wele of þe party of mete<sup>3</sup> as of  
medicyne<sup>3</sup>. Of þe party, forsop<sup>d</sup>, of mete<sup>3</sup> be þer giffen  
milk, mele of whete decocte, frese bene<sup>3</sup>, with canel, gret

20 wyne, ri<sup>3</sup>ze<sup>2</sup> and mynte. Of þe party of medicyne be þer  
giffen note of cipresse<sup>3</sup> and þe lefe<sup>3</sup>, mirre, thure, mastike,  
ladanum, storax calamita, anyse rosted, and sich oþe.  
And excercice and strong frotyngs and swetyngs availeþ.

Remedies to  
be used in  
the treat-  
ment of  
piles.

24 And if þe cause be hote, be þer giffen lentes<sup>b</sup> with vinegre,  
porcelane,<sup>4</sup> sour milk, soþen barly brede, substance of cole<sup>3</sup>  
þe tuo watre<sup>3</sup><sup>5</sup> pat it is decocte in y-cast away, pere<sup>3</sup>,  
coynce<sup>3</sup><sup>6</sup> & melde<sup>3</sup>,<sup>7</sup> & sich oþer. Medicyne<sup>3</sup> restrictyue<sup>3</sup>

28 bene þise; Camphore, accacia, spodin, coriandre, sanguis  
draconis, sandali, lap[is] omoptoes,<sup>8</sup> bole armoniac, ypo-  
quistid,<sup>9</sup> galle<sup>3</sup> cupule, sumak, mirtell,<sup>10</sup> . . . . .

. . . . .<sup>c</sup> plantane, cincfoile, quinquineruie, ribbewort,

32 bursa pastoris, millefoil, . . . . .<sup>c</sup> forsop

<sup>a</sup> "it folweþ" *overlined*.

<sup>b</sup> "growel" *overlined*.

<sup>c</sup> A portion of the leaf is missing.

<sup>10</sup> The Latin text of this mutilated passage runs:—pysidiæ, balaustia, plantago, quinqueneruia, sanguinaria, millefolia et similia. Corpore ergo patientis hæmorrhoides sine menstrua superflua existente pletharico i.[e.] pleno sanguine ex virtute forti præ ceteris attendendum est ut in initio phlebotomia fiat de utrâque basilica brachii. Deinde mulieri menstruosæ ponantur ventosæ magnæ sub utrâque mammillâ. Deinde mundificetur secundum exigentiam humorum peccantium. Deinde liga brachium ligatura dolorosa. Deinde fiant localia remedia. Et id quod intelligendum est, &c.

<sup>1</sup> dissolvi  
in lacte  
caprino.

<sup>2</sup> cum farina  
tritica, faba  
fera cum  
cinnamomo,  
vinum  
crassum,  
rutæ.

<sup>3</sup> nux cu-  
pressi.

<sup>4</sup> Portulaca

<sup>5</sup> caulis dua-  
bus aquis  
abjectis.

<sup>6</sup> Mespila.

<sup>7</sup> Cotonea.

<sup>8</sup> hæmat.

<sup>9</sup> Hypo-  
quistidos.



of þe pacientz emoroidez or menstueþ beyng plettorike . .  
 . . . .<sup>c</sup> beyng strong. Which is to be take hede to  
 afor al oþer þings . . . . .<sup>c</sup>  
 flebotomy of basilica of boþe þe armes. 4

[leaf 160]

Local appli-  
cations for  
piles.Styptics for  
piles.Concealed  
piles lead to  
ulceration of  
the rectum.Delicate  
men are  
usually  
timid.

And it is to vnderstond þat þis is wont to availe aboue  
 al oþer þingz: *Recipe* Iuyse of plantane, muscilage  
 dragaunte & gumme arabic; be þai medled to-gidre, and  
 o party be take be þe mouþe and an oþer be cast in by a 8  
 clistery; and be þis continued, and without dout it schal  
 cure perfitely, vniuersale purgacions goyng afore, after  
 barnard gordon. Also corall brent and gumme arabic,  
 y-medled and y-dronke with cold watre, streyneþ þe flux 12  
 of blode, of what place so-euer it floweþ. Also canest  
 hape þis propriete,<sup>1</sup> þat if þer be take of it to þe wezt of 2  
 penys eueryday with cold water, it streyneþ at þe best þe  
 flux of emoroides & of menstueþ. And if þe forseid 16  
 poudre be giffen with watre of plantane it schal be more  
 effectual. Also vitriol, i.[e.] coprose, streyneþ þe flux <sup>2</sup>  
 of emoroides and drieþ humours, if it be made with Iuyse  
 of moleyn, or of plantayne, or verueyn, or rubarbe, i.[e.] 20  
 sengrene; ffor why; of þe medlyng of þe iuyse of any  
 of þe forseid cold herbes þe hete of þe vitriol is repressed;  
 wherfor it constreyneth with drinez. Bot it is to wytte þat  
 þe emoroideþ hid with-in þe lure<sup>3</sup> ful seldome bene made 24  
 without fretyng of longaon or kynnyng<sup>a</sup> of it, And  
 þerfor certaynly sich maner emoroydeþ may nozt perfitely  
 be cured bot with a medicyne cauterizatiue, as is vitriol  
 combuste be it self or medled with quick-lyme, in a grete 28  
 case, þat is in a grete fretyng. Also puluis sine pari in  
 þis case putte in heleþ wele, bot disesily or angerfully; bot  
 þat is nozt to charge.<sup>4</sup> ffor to a strong sekeneþ answereþ a  
 strong medicyne, and namely in strong men. I calle, forsoþ, 32  
 delicate men feble men. ffor al þingz bene hard to a waik  
 hert man. To a strong hert man, forsoþ, is noping grete.  
 To emoroideþ hid within þe lure, wheþer þai be with fret-  
 yng or clyffyng or without, þe most noble cure schal be 36  
 ich day to caste in in maner of clistre, or ich oþer day, al

<sup>1</sup> Item cin-  
namomum  
habet hanc  
proprieta-  
tem,

<sup>2</sup> cum succo  
tapsibarbatō

<sup>3</sup> sine  
corrosione  
longanoni  
& ejusdem  
fissurā.

<sup>4</sup> sed de hoc  
non est  
notandum.

<sup>c</sup> See note on page 63.<sup>a</sup> "cleuyng" overlined.

medicynes temperatly liquide in substance with a schort  
and no maner streit nastar of tre. To strong men perfor  
tak puluis sine pari, and medle it with a litel tapsimel,  
4 nouper to pinne ne to pikke, bot pat it may most com-  
petently be pristed out and zettet into pe lure. If forsop  
pou haue nozt tapsimel, in-stede of it tak hony cotted  
with a litel vinegre and scomed, and medle it with pe  
8 forsaid puluis, and vse it, for it euenly availeþ as tapsimel.  
If pe pacient, forsop, be delicate, þan tak of citrine oitment  
parte 1, vitriol combust. partes ij, alom zucarine als mich  
as of bope, and be þai medled to-gidre and zettet in : þis,  
12 forsop, wirkeþ nozt so violently as puluis sine pari for pe  
vertgreþ þat entreþ not here. ffor-sop when þou has  
done pus oneþ, or tuyse, or prise, after as it falleþ pe  
pacient for to withhold pe medicyne long or schort tyme,  
16 It bihouep þan for to chaunge pe cure and giffe clistereþ  
mitigatiueþ, of zolk of an ey, with oile of roset, and puluis  
of bole armoniac, and aloes epatici, or sang dragon, by 3  
daies or more. When pe pacient, forsop, feleþ hymself  
20 aleged, þan assaye bisily wheper pe inner place nede ony  
maner of pe first medicyne, i.[e.] of pe puluis with tapsi-  
mel, þat if it so be, be it eft-soneþ done, as it is seid afore,  
als oft as it is nede ; Afterwarde be it mitigate, as it is  
24 seid. When pe place, forsop, is mundified, þan be it  
heled with pe zolk of an ey & water of roset, in which be  
resolued gumme arabic, addid þer-to puluis bole, sang  
dragon, ceruse, aloes, galt, psidie, mumme, olivai<sup>1</sup> mastike ;  
28 \*and pe lure first enoynted within with lynesde oile & oile  
of roset, pe forseid medicyne be zettet in with a nastare  
and so continue it vnto pe last ende, or on like maner  
after þin owne witte & bisines. And witte þou þat  
32 when þer is putte vitriol, or puluis sine pari, or any  
puluis corrosiue within pe lure aboue fretyngþ or cliffyngþ,  
þan aboue pe puluis corrosiue owe bole armoniac to be  
putte, for to defende pe puluis corrosiue þat pe humiditè  
36 in pe lure quench nozt & wesch away pe puluis corrosiue.  
ffor why ; bole with his drynes and viscositè consumip  
pe moisteneþ, and vitriol wirkeþ better and more strongly.  
If, forsop, þou haue no bole, þan putte most smal meel  
40 of barly in his stede, for it is riht mich desiccatie. þise

A strong  
local remedy  
for piles.

A milder  
remedy.

Examine  
the rectum  
as soon as  
possible.

Cleanse it  
with an  
ointment  
and get it  
healed.

[\* leaf 160,  
back]

Vitriol is  
better than  
bole ar-  
moniac.

<sup>1</sup> olibani.



þings restreyneþ blode : ventosing putte *with* scarificacion,<sup>a</sup>  
 putte ex antipasi,<sup>b</sup> and mirre, and Iasper of grene colour  
 hauyng in itself naturale droppes of blode, Saphir rede  
 coralle rubye,<sup>c</sup> <sup>1</sup> and fyne of wilde swyne. Also þise 4  
 restreyneþ blode, of þe vertu of þair qualitez : Iuyse of  
 walwort, Iuyse of rede netelt broken<sup>d</sup> *with* al his sub-  
 stance, salt y-put þerto. Or Iuyse of nettel y-dronkyn  
 restreyneþ blode in euery place of þe body and of euery 8  
 cause,<sup>e</sup> and in boþe kynde.<sup>e</sup> Bot it is to wytte þat to a  
 woman in menstree; and to þam þat haueþ þe emcroide;  
 owe þe rote of it to be giffen *with* þe croppez of þe same <sup>2</sup>  
 3 daies continuly, *with* rayne watre or rennyng watre. 12  
 Also of þam þat restreyneþ blode bene þise : Mummè, bole  
 armoniac, sang dracon, thure, aloe, vitriol combust, puluer  
 of heres of ane hare, brent or nozt brent; puluiz of hennez  
 fepers brent, medled *with* white of ane ey; Alphita, i.[e.] 16  
 subtile & clene meel of barley<sup>3</sup>; Also a been clouen by þe  
 midde; and putte vpon a wonde and bounden faste,  
 streyneþ.<sup>4</sup> Bot þis haue no stede bot to so streyt a wounde  
 þat þe been may take *with*in his extremitez þe extremitez 20  
 of þe wounde, as of prikkynge of a smal knyfe or sich a  
 þing. Also aschen of ane olde lynne cloþe y-brent streyneþ  
 blode; þe white of an ey and barley mele y-putte aboue or  
*withouten*. Som-tyme it bihoueþ for to bynde þe heuede; <sup>f</sup> 24  
 of þe veyne *with* ane nedel putte vnder þe veyne, and after  
 for to bynde *with* a þrede aboue þe nedel. Som-tyme it  
 byhoueþ for to cauterize þe wounde *with* an hote iron.  
 Also blode is stopped *with* coldyng of þe membre y-hurte, 28  
 wherfor oft-tyme; is blode restreyned in som men *with*  
 one; drynkyng of colde watre. And som men putteþ þair  
 testicule; in cold watre; And som men lappeþ þair testicule;  
 in clay *with* vinegre or watre, or temperate *with* iuyse of 32  
 plantayne; And þis is profitable to þam þat bledeþ at þe  
 nose. And it is better if þe fronte and temple; of þe  
 pacient be emplastred of þe forseid clay, and also if it be  
 putte vnder þe armehole; þis, forsoþ, quencheþ þe feruour 36  
 of blode and draweþ to þe opposite. Also puluere; y-putte

<sup>1</sup> corallus  
 rubri, et  
 stercus porci  
 campestris.

<sup>2</sup> radix  
 ejus cum  
 summitate  
 ejusdem.

<sup>3</sup> Item faba  
 per medium  
 fissa.

<sup>4</sup> sanguinem  
 stringit.

Nettle juice  
 is a good  
 remedy to  
 stop bleed-  
 ing.

The hairs of  
 a hare and a  
 powder of  
 burnt hen's  
 feathers are  
 both good  
 to stop  
 bleeding.

Tinder, too,  
 is good.

Acupressure  
 stops bleed-  
 ing, and so  
 does the  
 cautery.

The applica-  
 tion of cold  
 is a styptic.

Clay with  
 vinegar may  
 be used,

<sup>a</sup> "garsing" *overlined*.

<sup>b</sup> "on þe contrary" *overlined*.

<sup>c</sup> "rubye" *has been crossed out*.

<sup>d</sup> "brissed" *overlined*.

<sup>e-e</sup> "i.[e.] of man & woman" *overlined*. <sup>f</sup> "ende;" *overlined*.

in þe nose may more strongly streyne & availe. \* Puluer

[\* leaf 161]

of hereȝ of ane hare y-brent<sup>1</sup> aboue alþings streyneþ þe flux  
of þe emoroideȝ, y-medled with white of an ey and with

but after all  
the burnt  
hairs of a  
hare are the  
best for  
stopping  
bleeding in  
piles.

4 hereȝ of ane hare noȝt y-brent; coton of softe stupeȝ  
y-putte aboue. And som men with þe forseid puluer  
alon and þe white of an ey anoynteþ þe emoroideȝ with-  
out puttyng to of coton, and alsone cesep þe flux and

8 þe akyng. Witte þou þat aloe and comyn, recepte bi  
þe mouþe, opneþ veyneȝ; and putte to with-out-forþ  
restreyneþ.<sup>2</sup> þe same dop lekeȝ and þe iuyse of þam þe

Aloes and  
cummin  
taken in-  
ternally  
cause bleed-  
ing from  
piles, ex-  
ternally they  
stop it.

12 an ey streyneþ þe emoroides and heleþ þam sone. Also  
Iuyse of orpyne<sup>3</sup> y-dronken with wyne heleþ al fics,

Remedies  
for piles.  
Leeks.

without and within; wherfor it is called fics-herbe.  
Also lana succida y-dipped in þe iuyse of porreȝ,<sup>a</sup> þe

16 lefeȝ remoued away, and hote putte to bolned emor-  
oides, and when it is collde eftsoneȝ renewed, and oft

tymeȝ so y-done, it is a certayne remedy agayns þe  
bolnyng of emoroides; And if puluis of comyn be putte

Powdered  
cummin.

20 perto, it schal spede better. To emoroideȝ y-bolned and  
apperand as war a chykyn torde, brisse wele blak sope

Black soap  
and mullein.

with þe tendrons of moleyne<sup>4</sup> and putte vpon; and þe  
þrid day þai schal noȝt appere. Oile of violette with

24 white of 3 eiren well stired to-gidre and putte to, on a  
wonderful maner mitigateþ þe akyng and brynnyng of

þe emoroideȝ. Agaynȝ ouer mych flux of emoroides and  
of menstrueȝ þe best medicine constrictiue and desiccatyue

28 is made on þis maner. In þe best lumbardeȝ ynk be  
dissolued a gode quantite of gumme arabic; which dis-

Gum arabic  
dissolved in  
ink

solued putte in of puluis of bole armoniac, mastic,  
mummè, sumak, rede coralle, bdellii, galleȝ, psidie, acacie,

32 anteros<sup>5</sup> ypoquistidos subtilly puluered and sarced,<sup>6</sup> ana;  
and medle þam to-gidre so þat þai may be ȝette into þe

lure by a nastare. With þis medicine was cured Deme-  
trius, kyng of Perseȝ, of a cristen man þat was halden

cured Deme-  
trius, king  
of Persia, by  
the hands of  
a Christian.

36 prisoner with þe same kyng; which cristen man was  
made ful riche, and was sent home to cristen menneȝ lande

by þe comandement of þe same kyng, and many prisoners  
of cristen men war late go free with hym. Panis cuculi

<sup>a</sup> "lekeȝ" overlined.

<sup>1</sup> Pulvis ex  
pilis leporis  
combustis.

<sup>2</sup> Item facit  
porrus et  
succus ejus,  
item folia  
tapsi-bar-  
bati.

<sup>3</sup> Item suc-  
cus ebulæ.

<sup>4</sup> cum sum-  
mitatibus  
tapsi-bar-  
bati.

<sup>5</sup> anthæ.

<sup>6</sup> et cribran-  
tur.



Cuckoo  
bread  
wrapped in  
red dock  
leaves may  
be tried in  
piles, con-  
dylomata  
and dead  
flesh.

[\* leaf 161,  
back]  
A stomachic  
for those  
who have  
piles.

A soothing  
application  
for inflamed  
piles.

Lily roots  
should be  
added to it.

alleluya, i.[e.] wodsour, is a treyfole growyng vnder  
busche3 and berep white floure3, is a ful sour herbe. Ane  
handful of pis herbe without any brissyng be lapped in a  
lyn clouth y-wette in water and pristed out, or in lefe3 of 4  
rede dok, and be it rosted vnder hote aschen pat it be  
nozt dried; afterward be it draw out and brissed, and put  
it vpon emoroide3, or fies, or condilomata, or dede flesch,  
wher-so-euer it is It fretep softly & remouep al þe forseid 8  
ping3, aboue any ping of þe world: þerfor when it may  
esily be had it noyep nozt for to assay. A Rial ping<sup>1</sup>  
expert, pat wonderfully and happily amendeþ þe errour  
als wele of þe first digestion as of þe seconde, and dop 12  
away wicked colour & vnnatural, \*and it restoreþ natural  
colour and makeþ it gode: *Recipe* cynamoñ, *zinzib* galang<sup>i</sup>,  
reubarb ana; be þai subtilly puluered, to which be done  
zuccary<sup>2</sup> euenly, and brese þam to-gidre. Vse þe pacient 16  
pis puluer in bygynnyng of his mete to þe wezt of 5  
drams in wyne; pis medicine is profitable to þam þat  
hape þe emoroides, for þai ar oftyme discolored. And it  
is to witte pat if it may be done on gode maner þer oweþ 20  
neuer to be putte to in þe place remedie3 mitigatiue3 bot  
þe bodi war first mundified with farmacie, i.[e.] medicyne  
laxatiue, as is of þe forseid mirabolan and fleobotomye,  
for elle3 þe mitigatiue3 availeþ lest. A mitigatiue of 24  
akyng to emoroide3 bolned, with prikkyng and bryn-  
nyng:—Make ane emplastre of comon malue lefe3 decocte  
in watre and after well y-brised, with swyne grese, oile of  
rose putte to, or of violete, or of lilie, or of camamille, or 28  
of comon oile if þe toper be nozt had. It schal be made  
þus: þe lefe3 of malues decocte and þe watre expressed, be  
þai wele fried in a pan with some of þe forseid oile3; after-  
ward streche þam on wolfe y-tesed or subtile stupe3 of 32  
line, and putte þam to hote; and wonderfully it myti-  
gateþ þe akyng. If þe rote of lilie may be had and be  
sopen with þe forseid malue3 it schal be more effectuous.  
þis emplastre is comone yno3, ffor in wynter may lilye 36  
rote3 be hadde when malue3 faileþ, and þan may þou do  
with þe rote al-on as it is seid of þe malue3; if þai bope  
may be had þe emplastre is more effectuous. Also þe  
akyng and bolnyng of emoroides is mitigate with þe zolk 40

<sup>1</sup> experi-  
mentum  
regale.

<sup>2</sup> quibus  
additur  
sacchari.

of ane hard ey rosted, and oile of rose and crocus done  
to; which, y-brissed to-gidre and *with* wolfe putte to, it  
mitigatep wonderfully in euery cause. And it schal be  
4 better if *per* be added to opium in litel proporcion. Also  
ane emplastre of *pe* white of ane rawe ey and oile of  
violette bette to-gidre and putte to is seid wonderfully for  
to be mitigatiue. Also be eiren soþen hard, and *pe* white  
8 of þam *with* oile of rose or of violet<sup>3</sup> or of boþe *with*  
coton be putte to hote, it cesep *pe* akyng of *pe* emoroide<sup>3</sup>  
in one niȝt, and dop it away. þis is *pe* medycine which  
I, Iohn Arderne, made, *pe* which I wold neuer wante, for  
12 it mitigatep wonderfully euery bolnyng of emoroides, and  
akyng and prikyng *with* brynnyng, and it dop it away:  
which owe to be made þus:—*Recipe* Moleyn and swyne<sup>3</sup>  
grese<sup>1</sup> wele y-clensed of *pe* litel skynne<sup>3</sup> and smal y-kutted;  
16 and be þai wele brissed togidre in a morter or in a basyn  
vnto *pe* grece be wele imbibed of *pe* iuyse; and þan lat  
þis grese *with* *pe* iuse stand stille 9 claie<sup>3</sup> or more vnto *pe*  
grese shew grene; which y-se,<sup>2</sup> eftsone sone<sup>3</sup> be it brissed  
20 *with* *pe* same iuyse, And when *pe* grese is perfitely imbibed  
and colored of *pe* iuyse, putte away þat þat is superflue of  
*pe* iuyse, and eftsone<sup>3</sup> brisse *pe* grese *without* any iuyse  
and putte it in an erþen vessel, and kepe it to þin vse;  
24 And þis medycine is called tapsiualencia. And witte þou  
þat þis medycine owe fro moneþ to moneþ one<sup>3</sup> to be  
brissed, and in *pe* brissing for to putte in litel bi litel of  
oile of rose, or violet, or camanille, þat *pe* valence may  
28 competently imbibe it. And if *per* war added to of gode  
popilion<sup>3</sup> *pe* helping of *pe* medycine schal be more effectual.  
*þerfor* when þou hast nede for to vse *perof*, tak lanam  
succidam, if \*þou may haue it, and if þou may noȝt, tak  
32 *oper* clene tesed wolfe and putte *per-on* of tapsiualencia  
*with* þi fynger or *with* a spatule impressyng it, and be *per*  
made ane emplastre more or lesse after *pe* discrecion of *pe*  
leche, and putte it on *pe* lure. Bot witte þou þat afore *pe*  
36 puttyng to þat *pe* lure be wele fomented *with* a sponge  
y-wette in hot watre of decoction of maluez and branne, and  
be it hote putte to and abide long *þeron*. ffor whi; sich fo-  
mentacion availep mich more for certayne þan hote stuphis,  
40 and more hidep *pe* rede bolnyngs and lessenep þam, as I

The recipe  
for Arderne's  
own oint-  
ment.

<sup>1</sup> succum  
tapsi-barb.  
et axungia  
porci a  
pelliculis  
mundata.

<sup>2</sup> quo viso  
iterum cum  
succo eadem  
bene con-  
tundatur.

Arderne  
calls his  
ointment  
"tapsi-  
valencia."  
It can be  
kept, but  
should be  
stirred once  
a month.

<sup>3</sup> et si de  
bono Popu-  
leon additur.

[\* leaf 162]

The oint-  
ment may  
be spread or  
applied with  
the finger or  
a spatula.

Fomenta-  
tions to be  
used before  
the oint-  
ment is  
applied,



haue of-tyme<sup>3</sup> proued. After þe fomentacion and desiccacion  
of þe lure, be þe bolnyngs anoynted with oile of rose  
chaufed in ane ostre scheff; and putte in wele with þi fynger  
þe oile atuix þe runclez of þe skynne; And afterward putte 4  
and it should  
be kept in  
place with a  
bandage.  
to þe forseid emplastre menely chaufed, And be it bounden,  
þat it falle nozt away, with lynne cloute<sup>3</sup> and a girdel  
atuix þe bottokkez, as it is seid in þe fistule<sup>3</sup>. And with-  
in one niȝt þe akyng schal be cessed. þis medicyne, for- 8  
The remedy  
is "sovrain"  
for piles,  
sop, passeþ all oþer to þe akyng, bolnyng, bryunnyng, prik-  
kyng, and smertyng in þe lure, of which blode renneþ  
nozt; And he þat haþe þis medicyne, hym nedep none  
better. Bot neþerles it is gode for to kune many liȝter,<sup>1</sup> 12  
but the leech  
should know  
of others.  
þat one defailyng he may go agayne to anoþer. And it is  
to wytte þat in akyng and bolnyng of þe emoroide<sup>3</sup>, þat  
nouþer stuphez of hote stones, and thure & coluer fyne<sup>2</sup> and  
sich oþer, ne syttyng aboue vesselez with herbez, as many 16  
Fomenta-  
tions for in-  
flamed piles.  
folez dop,<sup>3</sup> be nozt so competent as fomentacion. ffor  
certayn, fomentacion made with watre of decoccion of  
comon maluez or furfur colace,<sup>4</sup> hideþ wele and mitigateþ  
and dissolueþ þe emoroides about þe lure. Also witte 20  
þou þat in akyng of þe emoroides þer owe to be putte  
noping cold in acte bot hote. ffor after ypocras cold þing<sup>3</sup>  
in acte bene enemys to bone<sup>3</sup>, to synowe<sup>3</sup>, to tepe, to  
brayne, to þe lure, to þe bladdre, and to þe nerw<sup>3</sup> of þe 24  
Hippocrates  
quoted.  
rigebone.<sup>5</sup> And forþi þe medicyne when it is applied vpon  
þe wolle,<sup>6</sup> it ow a litel to be holden agayn<sup>3</sup> þe fire, þat þe  
actuale coldnes be done away, and þan put it to. When  
a lech seþ any man hauyng grete ake and many bolnyngs 28  
or fewe, more or lesse, aboute þe lure withouten, with ful  
mych akyng and payne, þan it is spedeful þat after þe  
puttyng to of ane emplastre mitigatiue, and fomentacion  
done tuisse or þrise—If þe forseid bolnyngs begynne nozt 32  
to abate—þat þe leche with a lancet or a blode iren smyte  
warly þe bolnyng<sup>3</sup> ful of blode, þe pacient nozt wittyng,  
and receyue he þe blode in a sponge wette in hot watre  
and expressed and putte to þe bolnyng. And do þe lech 36  
þis boldely, for þer is no perile þer-in. ffor why; I haue  
proued þis ful oft tyme<sup>3</sup> for to be most sone helpyng. þe  
fleobotomy y-done, be þer putte vpon of valence or some  
oþer equialent medicyne, and be þer done fomentacions 40

<sup>1</sup> Sed tamen  
bonum est  
plena scire  
leniora.

<sup>2</sup> et fimo  
columbino.

<sup>3</sup> sicut multi  
stolidi  
faciunt.

<sup>4</sup> vel furfu-  
ris coluti.

<sup>5</sup> vesicæ, ac  
spinali  
medullæ.

<sup>6</sup> super  
lanam.

Inflamed  
piles should  
be lanced  
freely

and enoyntyngs vnto þe bolnyng<sup>3</sup> and þe akyng<sup>3</sup> vtterly  
 defaile. If þe leche, forsoþ, may nozt wirk þus, make he  
 þe pacient for to be fleebotomed of þe vtter veynez of þe  
 4 legge<sup>3</sup> in the euyng as it is seid afore. Also if þe leche  
 se any men haue aboute þe lure without rounde bolnyng<sup>3</sup>,  
 in þe ende<sup>3</sup> <sup>a</sup> of which appereþ blak spotte<sup>3</sup>, witte he þan  
 for certayn þat in þam is blak cluttered<sup>b</sup> blode; which  
 8 forsoþ yknowen, be þer done \*fomentacions and enoynt-  
 yng<sup>3</sup>. And afterward tarye nozt þe leche for to opne with a  
 launcet þe forseid bolnyng<sup>3</sup> in þe place of þe blaknes—  
 þe pacient nozt wittying—ffor þe pacient schal fele no  
 12 greuance þer-of; I haue proued it forsoþe oft-tyme<sup>3</sup>, And  
 with þis cure al-on I haue sene ful many for to haue be  
 cured for euermore, and þat riȝt sone. ¶ And be þe lech  
 war þat none of þam þat standeþ about perceyue when he  
 16 opneþ with þe lancet or sich oper þing sich maner bolnyng<sup>3</sup>.  
 ffor if barbour<sup>s</sup> knowe þis doying þai wold vsurpe þis cure,  
 appropriand it to þamself vnto vnworschip and nozt litel  
 harme of maystreȝ. ¶ If any man, forsoþ, haue as it war  
 20 purseȝ<sup>1</sup> aboute þe lure withoute, hyngyng in maner of a  
 welked gri[pe], which ar wont for to bifalle of inflacion and  
 ouer miche extension of emoroides had afore; þan if þe  
 pacient consent þe lech may without perile kutte away  
 24 with a lancet or a rasour al þo burseȝ, first y-bond with a  
 prede, and afterward sone hele þam with vnguento arabico.  
 16. **A**nd for þat þai þat haþe þe emoroides haþe oft-  
 tyme a sekeneȝ þat is called tenasmon, perfor  
 28 here we make mencion þer-of. Tenasmon is a sekeneȝ  
 within þe lure þat makeþ þe pacient for to desire purgyng  
 of his womb bynep-forþ; ffor it semeþ hym euermore  
 þat he miȝt haue egestion, and when he comeþ to þe  
 32 priuè he may nozt haue egestion. ¶ Cause of þis seknes  
 bene som tyme emoroides hid within þe lure, or pustuleȝ,  
 or excoriacions in longaon, or for chynnyngs of longaon<sup>2</sup>  
 which ar called ragadie, or for hote humour imbibed in  
 36 longaon, or for þat cold humour is inuistate þer, or for  
 apostemeȝ, or for vlcereȝ, or for takyng of laxatiue medi-  
 cyne. Signeȝ of hote cause in thenasmon bene hoteneȝ,  
 brennyng, and prikkying. Signeȝ of coldneȝ is þat cold is

and the  
 patient  
 afterwards  
 let blood.

[\* leaf 162,  
 back]

Throm-  
 bosed  
 piles should  
 be incised.

The treat-  
 ment by  
 incision  
 should be  
 kept secret  
 lest the  
 barbers get  
 to know of  
 it, to the de-  
 triment of  
 the Master  
 Surgeons.

<sup>1</sup> pendentes  
 instar uvæ  
 marcidæ.

Tenesmus;

definition.

Causes are  
 piles, ulcer-  
 ation, purga-  
 tives, or  
 chronic con-  
 stipation.

<sup>2</sup> vel propter  
 fissuras  
 longanoni.

<sup>1</sup> "heuedeȝ" *overlined*.

<sup>b</sup> "coagulate" *overlined*.



The signs  
and sym-  
toms of  
Tenesmus.

feled in þat place, and it is helpid of hotenez. ¶ If it be  
for apostemes, þer is grete akyng & greuous. ¶ And if it  
be for vlcere3, þer is gret akyng when any-þing is putte  
þer-in. And if it be for emoroide3, þer appereþ bolnyng 4  
and inflacion and akyng in þe veynez þat ar about þe  
circle of þe lure. And if it be for fece3, it is knowen forþi  
þat þe pacient long tyme afore went no3t to sege. ¶ And  
if it be for medicine laxatiue, it is knowen for þer was in 8  
it Diagredium or scamonie or pulpa colocintidis or aloe.  
¶ And if it be for outward cause, it is knowen by schewyng  
of þe pacient. ¶ Pronosticacion is þis : If þat þe thenas-  
mon last long, it bringeþ to þe colik and iliaca passion, 12  
and to vnslepyng and feblenes of vertu, and malice of  
polyng, and to passions of þe heued, and to swownyng.  
And cause of þise is continuel akyng. ¶ If it be for out-  
ward cause, Sitte þe pacient in ane hote bath of swete 16  
watre with oleo laurino and sich oþer hote apertyue3.<sup>1</sup>  
¶ And if it be for aposteme and þe bodye be plettorik, be  
þer made fleobotomye of basilica ; And if þe apostems be  
hote, be þer made clisteriez of iuyse of endyue, scariole, 20  
coriandre, oile of rose and white of an ey. After þat þe  
sekenez haþ proceded, be þer added to þise henne3 grese  
fresch, and þe dusty<sup>a</sup> meel of þe milne, and a litel hony.  
And al þise be giffen leuke in acte.<sup>2</sup> \* And if þe 24  
aposteme be cold fro þe bigynnyng, be þer made ane  
oyntment of þe iuse of apii and oile of rose, and  
camamille, and branne, and iuse of caule3. After þat þe  
sekenes haþ proceded, be þer added to fenigreke and 28  
linnesede, and be pai ministred euermore hote in acte.  
¶ Witte þou þat in thenasmon þer is noping more pro-  
fitable þan 3ettyng in by a clistery of gote3 mylke ; And if  
þou haue no3t gote3 mylke, tak cow mylk, and put þer- 32  
to a subtile whete meel, and boile þam togidre in maner  
of children pappe ; adde þer-to þe raw 3olk of an ey in þe  
decoccion, and a litel fresch schepe3 grece after þe lique-  
faccion, and cole it, and putte in hote bi a clisterie ; þis, 36  
forsop, is mych mitigatyue. ¶ Also þe 3olk of a raw ey  
tempered with bole armoniac to sich þikknes þat it may  
by a clistery be 3ette into þe lure, cesep at þe best thenas-

The  
prognosis.

The treat-  
ment of  
Tenesmus.

[\* leaf 163]

Clysters of  
goat's milk.

<sup>1</sup> et simili-  
bus calidis  
aperitivis.

<sup>2</sup> et omnia  
ista dentur  
actu tepida.

<sup>a</sup> "flying" overlined.

mon ; and pis haue I proued oft tyme3. ¶ If tenasmon  
 be for ragadias i.[e.] chynnyng3<sup>a</sup> within þe lure, cure þe  
 ragadias and thenasmon schal be cured. ¶ A remedie  
 4 agayn3 thenasmon of what euery cause it be, after Bernard  
 of Gordon, *capito* de thenasmon ; *Recipe* fenigrec, semen  
 lini, malue bismalue, camamille, mellilote, i.[e.] þe  
 crophe3 of caule3, ana ; be pai brissed and boiled in watre  
 8 vnto mene pikkene3, and be it coled, and be it warme cast  
 in by a litel clistery. ffor, for certane, outward fomenta-  
 cions and suffumigacions profiteþ no3t so mych as medi-  
 cyne3 putte in by a clistery, and þat haue I oftyme proued.  
 12 ¶ Agayn3 greuours ychyng and vnsuffrable in þe lure take þe  
 iuyse of celydome,<sup>1</sup> of moleyne, ana, hony scomyd als  
 mych as of þe iuyse3, and boile þam togidre to þe wastyng  
 of þe iuyse3 ; after sette it downe fro þe fyre and kepe to  
 16 vse. When þou wilt vse þer-of agayn3 ychyng, tak þer-of  
 als mych as þou wilt and putte þer-to of puluis of vitriol  
 combuste and alum combuste and orpment, and if nede be  
 boile it agayne vnto it be ane vntement haldyng fast yno3,  
 20 and putte a litel þer-of into þe lure agayn3 þe ychyng, and  
 sone it schal cese, and in euery party of þe body for  
 certay[n]. And pis oyntment is called tapsimel, of tapsi-  
 barbasti<sup>b</sup> & melle<sup>c</sup> ; fforsoþe pis is a noble oyntment.  
 24 ¶ Ragadias may we no3t cure bot if we bryng in medicyne3  
 within þe lure, ouper with clistery or with suppository ;  
 ffor medicyne3 putte without-forþe profiteþ ouper litel or  
 no3t. Wherfor first it byhoueþ for to wirch with corro-  
 28 siue3 to þe mundifyng, and afterward with consolidatyue3  
 and desiccatiue3, as it is seid afore of þe emoroides hid  
 within þe lure. ¶ Agayn3 ragadias, after maister Richard  
 in micrologio suo, *Recipe* oile made of eiren, or oile of rose,  
 32 & white of ane ey raw, and iuyse of lyuane,<sup>2</sup> & cimbalarie<sup>d</sup>  
 ana ; medle þam togidre & put þam in. ¶ Agayn3  
 ragadias within þe lure be made sich ane oyntment after  
 Gilbertus ; *Recipe* oile of rose and of violettes ana ʒiij  
 36 gote3 or schepe3 talow ʒiss. be pai al molten togidre at  
 þe fire, and sette þam doune, and moue it continually with

Bernard de  
Gordon's  
clyster for  
Tenesmus.

Treatment  
of Pruritus  
ani,

by tapsimel.

Treatment  
of rhagades,  
which is  
chronic  
ulceration of  
the rectum.

A ferric  
ointment re-  
commended  
by Master  
Richard the  
Englishman.

An ointment  
invented by  
Gilbert the  
Englishman.

<sup>a</sup> "cleuyng" *overlined*.  
<sup>b</sup> "moleyn" *overlined*. <sup>c</sup> "hony" *overlined*.  
<sup>d</sup> "pennyworte" *overlined*.

<sup>1</sup> chelidon.

<sup>2</sup> et succo  
lucasiæ



a spatule; and when it is almost cold putte in puluer of R. triasantalorum ʒss. and medle hem togidre; it helep wonderfully. ¶ Also oile of linsede putte in auailed agayn 3e forseid sekenez; it is forsop riȝt desiccatyue. 4

[leaf 163,  
back]  
Prolapse of  
the rectum,  
treated by  
bleeding  
and a  
fomentation  
of gallic or  
tannic acid.

17. **A** gayn3 goyng out of 3e lure: If vertu and age suffre be per fyrst y-done fleobotomy of 3e vtter sophene of 3e legge; Afterward be per done suffumigacion or fomentacion of gaȝ, or of 3e rynde of a grene oke or dry; 8 of 3e rynde of pome-granate pat is called psidia, and of 3e floure3 of granate pat ar called balaustia; of 3e rote of camfery decocte in rayne watre. And if it be in somer 3ise may be added to, or elle3 by 3am selfe: verueyne, moleyne, 12 plantane, gawel,<sup>1</sup> psillium, iuyse of coriandre, berberi3, porcelane, bursa pastoris, rede rose, tanesey, wormode, horsmynt, and sich oper stiptike3. ¶ Of 3ise of which pou may haue best make ane hote fomentyng with rayne 16 or rynnynge watre, vinegre added 3erto; And after 3e fomentyng be sprenkled aboue puluis of bole, of sanguis draconis, of herte3 horne combuste, bark-duste, psidie, balaustie, mumme and sich like. ¶ Afterward, if it may 20 be done on any maner, be 3e longaon putte into his place, and be it fast bondyn with warlyne3<sup>2</sup> pat it go noȝt out. Also agayn3 goyng out of 3e lure be it fomented with watre of decoction of caule3, and after anoynt it with aloe 24 and vnguentum vetus broken togidre. ¶ Also agayn3 3e goyng out of 3e lure, chaufe or make hote apostolicon; which chaufed, be longaon touched with it, and alsone it schal entre agayn. ¶ If it be nede do it oftyme3 when it goȝ out; 28 Afterward be it bathed in watre of plantane, of porre3, of peritory, or of peritorye<sup>3</sup> alon. With 3is medicyne was kyng henry of ynglond cured of 3e goyng out of 3e lure.

Put back  
the pro-  
lapsed bowel  
and keep it  
in place with  
a dressing.

<sup>1</sup> myrrha

<sup>2</sup> ligetur  
cum cautela.

The remedy  
which cured  
K. Henry of  
this com-  
plaint.

<sup>3</sup> sed solius  
parieturiæ

[leaf 164]

18. **B**e a leche wele puruied pat he haue a couenable instrument for clistrye3 to be ministred; pat is pat he haue a pipe of tree, namely of box, or of hesel pat availeȝ mych, or of salowe, to 3e length of 6 ynche3 or 7 with on hole 36 alon; ffor old men vsed pipes holed in 3e side. Bot witte pou for certayne pat, as I haue lered be experience, a pipe with one hole availeȝ more, and 3etteȝ better in 3e 32

Arderne's  
improve-  
ment on the  
ordinary  
clyster pipe;

liquore. ¶ Afterward haue he a swyne3 bladder, or a netez3 bladder, nozt blowne to myche, which þou schalt preparate þus for to be kept. Take þe forseid swyne3 or  
 4 netez3 bladder when it is dry, and putte þerin a sponeful of comon salt, of water als mych, of hony als mych as of watre; latte þam be dissolued togidre in þe bladder by tuo daies naturale, And euery day tuyes or þries be þe  
 8 bladder turned or shaken about, þat it may be wette of þe liquore on euery side. Afterward be þat putte out þat is þer-in, and be þe bladder blowne, and be þe  
 mouth bonden þat þe wynde go nozt out, and hyng it in  
 12 ane vmbrose<sup>1</sup> place vnto þat þer be had nede þer-of. þis preparacion, forsop, kepeþ þe bladder fro corrupcion long tyme, And fro fretyng of wormez, and makeþ þe bladder strong and able to þe vse of the forseid werk.  
 16 ¶ Be þe clistrye made þer after my maner, for it is lizt bot nozt lesse effectuale. Many þings bene profitable to þe confeccion of clisteries, if þe lech miȝt haue al redy. Bot oft-tyme þe leche may nozt fynde in euery place al þingz  
 20 necessary to hym; þerfor it schal nozt vnworschip<sup>2</sup> a lech for to spede profitably with fewer þings and lizter. Old lechez, forsop, ordeyned costiuous<sup>3</sup> clystryez, greuous and lizt, and þai putte in cassiam fistulam, mirobalan, rerepigre  
 24 and oper laxatiuez; which clisteriez, forsop, after þair receyuyng, made þe patientez more constipate, i.[e.] encostyued, þan þai war before; And þerfor long tyme3 and oft tyme3 I haue proued and bene experte a lizter maner  
 28 of clystryng and more effectuous, as wele in childre and wymmen as in men, als wele in ȝong men as in olde men; And in diuerse case3 as in wounded men, constipate<sup>4</sup> men, and febrous men, and in colica & yliaca. And I spedde  
 32 effectuously with sich a clistre þat is þer made. ¶ Recipe maluez comoñ and grene camamille, or drye if þou may haue it, and brisse þam a litel, and sethe þam in watre vnto þe watre become grene; þan tak whete branne als  
 36 myche as sufficeþ, and putte it to þe forseid herbis and boile it a litel; afterward cole it, and to þe colyng adde to ane handful of salt and clene hony or oile; and be al wele

his appa-  
 ratus for giv-  
 ing enemata.

His method  
 of preparing  
 the bladder.

The simpler  
 the enema  
 the better.

Prescription  
 for a very  
 simple  
 enema.

<sup>1</sup> "shadowye" overlined.

<sup>3</sup> "i. of gret cost" overlined.

<sup>2</sup> "ne schame" overlined.

<sup>4</sup> "costyue" overlined.



resolved, mouyng it with a spatule or with þi hande; þis confection, forsoþ, may be kept by a fourtniȝt if it be nede. ¶ If maluez, forsoþ, or camamille may noȝt be hadde, with water & branne and salt without any oper 4 þing þe forseid nede schaff be sped wele ynoȝ for certayn. ffor whi; for certayne if a lech wanted aȝt oper þingȝ, with water alon & salt boiled togidre and ȝette in by a clistrye bringep out squiballeȝ. 8

Salt and water are really enough for an enema.

[leaf 164, back]

Bot witte þou þat þise bene necessary to þe confection of clistrieȝ, þat is to sey, Hony, oile, butter, salt, swyneȝ grese, sope white and blak, oile of camamiȝ, oile of rwe, & oile of maluez, sanguis veneris, &c. Of which forseid 12 white sope may euer more be necessary to a leche, for it y-putte in þe forseid decoctione and þer schaken wele with þe hande mych strengtheþ þe clistrye; and þis may euer more be had redy. Also hony when it may be hadde 16 doþe grete help in euery clistery. ¶ þise bene herbeȝ necessary to þe werk of clistry, *scilicet* Violette, maluez, camamiȝ, *mercurialis*, watercresse, caule lefeȝ, peritorie, &c. Of which som wircheþ mollifying, as maluez; some 20 dissoluyng, as camamiȝ, peritorie, and oper. Bot wytte þou þat in clistryng þe leche owe for to augmente and lessen þe proporcion of salt after þat þe vertu of þe pacient may thole, i.[e.] suffre, for þe tendernes of longaon, and 24 after þat he sepe þe pacient strong, softe or hard for to avoiden. ffor grete quantite of salt makeþ sone þe clistery for to haste to þe goyng out, And mene quantite bryngeþ noȝt out so sone. þerfor be þe lech waker in þis þat he 28 be noȝt negligent ne fole-hardy in his wirchyng. ffor it is werk of a perfite maistrye. ffor þe which I haue geten ane hundrep tymeȝ grete honour with lucre in diuerse placeȝ. ffor whi; at london when lumbardeȝ of-tymeȝ ministred 32 clisterieȝ on þair maner to colic men and oper men constipate,<sup>a</sup> ne myȝt noȝt availe, <sup>1</sup>I, forsoþ, with þe forseid maner of clistriyng, at þe first tyme within þe space of a forlong or of tuo, I deliuered þe pacient for certayne, our 36 lord beyng mene. ¶ When þou wilt forsoþ giffe a clistre, Tak of þe forseid decoction half a quart at þe moste and putte it in þe bladder, and putte þe gretter ende of þe

Honey useful in clysters.

Herbs to be used in clysters,

and salt in moderation.

Clysters require skill.

Arderne's methods better than those of the Lombards in London.

<sup>1</sup> Ego cum predicto modoclistrizandi primo vice infra spatium unius stadii vel duorum patientem, deo mediante, deliveravi pro certo. [Sloane 56, leaf 24.]

<sup>a</sup> "encostiued" overlined.

pipe into þe bladder, and bynde it faste; and anoynte þe  
 forþer end of þe pipe with fresch swyneȝ grese, or with  
 butter, or with popilion, or with comon oile, or with hony.  
 4 And putte in þi fynger, anoynted first with some of þe  
 forseid þings, into þe lure; And alsone putte in þe pipe of  
 þe clistre into þe lure. And þan ow þe leche for to presse  
 þe bladder with þe liquore atuiȝ his hondeȝ and ȝette in  
 8 þe liquore. And if he fynde as it war ane obstacle in ȝe  
 wombe lettyng þe entryng of þe liquore, as it oftymeȝ  
 falleȝ, þan draw agayne a litel þe pipe, and he schal fele  
 þe liquore entre, and þan ȝette in al þe liquore; which  
 12 y-ȝette in, make he þe pacient for to lye grouelyng aboue  
 his bedde, and frote & robbe his wombe vpon þe nauyl  
 with his owne hand or with anoþer manneȝ; \* And enforce  
 he hymself als long as he may for to withhold þe clisterye,  
 16 And when he may no longer hold it, go he to a sege  
 made redy with a basyne standyng vnder-neþe and þer do  
 his nedeȝ. And se þe lech þe egestions, wheþer it be blode  
 or putride flemme &c, or wormes or squiballeȝ indurate,  
 20 or wheþer colre go out or quiter &c. And þus may þe  
 leche be certified what is to do in euery cure. ¶ Ouer  
 þat þis is namely to be written, þat when þe lech ministreþ  
 clistery to any man, þat in ȝettyng in þe liquore with þe  
 24 clistery þe liquor alsone stirt out vpon þe handeȝ of þe  
 leche, so þat þe pacient may noȝt withhold it ne receyue  
 it; and þat dure 2 daies or 3, for certayne sich a pacient  
 is disposed to þe deþ without dout, þat is if þe liquor  
 28 ȝetted in be noȝt ouer scharp of þe salt. þerfor be þe  
 leche circumspecte,<sup>1</sup> for ful seldom haue I sene þis reule  
 faile for certayn, bot neþerlesse it holdeþ noȝt euer, þat is  
 if þe sekeneȝ go agayne to wele-fare.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Also it is to  
 32 witte þat when þe leche haþe wele clensed, bi þe clistery, þe  
 wombe of feceȝ and oþer superfluiteȝ seid afore, þan pro-  
 fiteþ it mych for to ȝette in a clistery made of decoccione  
 of malueȝ, if it may be hadde, and of branne and of butter  
 36 & oile or swyneȝ grece. If malueȝ, forsop, may noȝt be  
 had, þan be it made only of decoccion of branne and of  
 þe toþer seid aboue, and be it ȝetted in by þe clistery.

Directions  
for giving a  
clyster.

[\* leaf 165]  
The use of  
clysters in  
diagnosis.

The use of  
clysters in  
prognosis.

A soothing  
clyster.

<sup>1</sup> "biholdyng aboute hym" *overlined*.

<sup>2</sup> "or myȝtyneȝ" *overlined*.



The use of  
clysters in  
colic.

How  
clysters act.

[\* leaf 165,  
back]

Nutrient  
enemata re-  
commended.

Clysters  
may be given  
seasonally  
and to pre-  
vent illness.

Be þis clistery forsoþe made without any salt, And þan  
owe þe pacient for to withhold it strongly by al a niȝt and  
longer. And þis schaff conforte þe bowelleȝ and schal molli-  
fien þam, and schal kepe þam fro constreynyng vnto þai 4  
be filled with new feceȝ. Elleȝ, forsoþ, of þe voideneȝ of  
þe bowelleȝ þe bowelleȝ schuld be constipate, as I haue oft  
tyme sene. ¶ It is to witte þat in curacione of þe colic  
no medicine so sone helpeþ as clistery; ffor why; þis 8  
bryngeþ out hard squiballeȝ of what euery cause þai be  
withholden, And it avoideþ soueranly ventoseneȝ, and  
wonderfully putteþ out viscose flemme & putrified. Wher-  
for I haue oft-tymeȝ cured many pacientȝ with clistery 12  
without any oper medicine, And oft-tymeȝ within 3 houres.  
And þerfor it spedeth for to wirk first with a clistre in  
colic & yliaca passions; ffor þe lower bowelleȝ avoided of  
þair superfluiteȝ, þe ouer bowelleȝ may more liztly putte 16  
out fro þam þair superfluiteȝ to þe lawer bowelleȝ. ¶ As  
auicen seip, al þe bowelleȝ of a mannes wombe ar con-  
tinued with venis miseraicis, out-take longaon, for longaon  
is noȝt continued to þam. Wherfor þe lyuer may drawe 20  
to hym fro ouer bowell somewhat, And by þis is it  
schewed þat if ane hole man bi any case be distitute  
of appetite of \* mete and drynk, þat he may no maner  
ete, þat by þe infusion into þe lure by a clistrye of any 24  
norischyng liquore, as of any potage or mylke of almandeȝ  
or sich oper, þe lyuer mygth draw þerof to hymself and  
so norisch þe body. ¶ þerfor witte þou þat clisterieȝ noȝt  
only availeþ to seke men and constipate, as of þe colic or 28  
of sich oper, bot it availeþ to al men beyng in þe febreȝ,  
als wele acueȝ as crenic, i.[e.] long tyme lastyng, And to  
euery inflacion of þe wombe, and to ventosite of it, and  
torcions, i.[e.] gryndyng. And som-tyme it availeþ mych 32  
in som fluxeȝ of þe wombe; And for certayn it availeþ  
mich to hole men, constipate and noȝt constipate, if þai  
be purged twyse at lest or 3 or four tymeȝ in a ȝere with þe  
forseid clisterieȝ; þat is tuyse in wynter, and in vere as it 36  
war after lentyn oneȝ, in somer oneȝ, or after tyme if nede  
be. ¶ ffor why; þe benefite of it may no man noumbre;  
ffor as it helpeþ fair in necessite, so it preserueþ þam þat vseþ  
it fro harme & necessite: be it þerfor had in reuerence. 40

19. [O]f atramente<sup>3</sup>, i.[e.] of vitriole<sup>3</sup>, bene many kynde<sup>3</sup>; And pat is better pat is more grene and pat is founden in pe yle of Crete <sup>a</sup>; and it is called comonly dragagante, bot no<sup>3</sup>t dragagante,<sup>1</sup> ffor dragagant is a white gumme and clere like vnto gumme arabic. Also per is a spice of vitriol pat is called vitriolum romanum, i.[e.] coporose; And it is of 3alow colour in reward of <sup>2</sup> pe grenner vitriol. And per is one of white colour bot no<sup>3</sup>t schynyng, and pat is seid to availe to pe cure<sup>3</sup> of eizen. Vitriol is hote <sup>b</sup> and drye <sup>c</sup> in pe 4 degre after platear,<sup>3</sup> And per ar 4 maners perof: Indicum, pat is founden in ynde, and pat is white; Arabicum pat is founden in arabye, and pat is 3elow; And ciprinum pat is founden in Cipre, and pat is grene; And romanum pat is coprose, pat is more grene is competent to medicyne. It hape strenght of dissoluyng, consumyng, fretyng.<sup>d</sup> It may be kepte by 10 3ere effectually. Also vitriol combuste be itself or with salt combuste vputte vpon a venemyd wonde drawep pe venym fro bynep vnto aboue.<sup>4</sup> Also puluer of vitriol combuste streynep blode in euery place if it be putte by itself or with iuyse of any herbe streynyng blode, as of rede netle, or bursa pastoris, or moleyne, or walwort. Also it is seid to availe agayns polipe in pe nose if it be putte into pe nose with a tente of coton and melle rosette medled with 3olk of an ey; it fretep superflue flesch, and putte into a fistule mortifiep it. And also it y-medled with diaquilon or apostolicon and y-put vpon fraudulent vlcere<sup>5</sup> in dry membre<sup>3</sup>, it curep pam meruelously in drawyng, and mortifiep pam and fretep pam. Also if vitriol be combust it is lesse mordicatyue, but his dryne<sup>3</sup> is not lessened. fforso<sup>3</sup>p al spice<sup>3</sup> of vitriol bene scharp after lesse and more, and pai haue 3air scharpne<sup>3</sup> in 3air superficite; And when pai ar combuste pai bene exsiccatyue without grete mordicacion, and so in exsiccand 3air gendre flesch, and most in drye membris and bodie<sup>3</sup>. ffor why; Vitriol in the strong and healthy dries wounds and stimulates them to heal;
- 36 Vitriol y-put to diuerse membris or diuerse membris <sup>6</sup> it is sene to haue diuerse effecte In dry bodie<sup>3</sup>, for as coloric

[leaf 166]  
Of Atramentum or vitriol.

The varieties.

The different kinds.

Uses.

A styptic

for nasal polypi

and for proud flesh.

Burnt vitriol less caustic.

Vitriol in the strong and healthy dries wounds and stimulates them to heal;

<sup>a</sup> "or cipre" overlined.

<sup>c</sup> "siccus" overlined.

<sup>b</sup> "calidus" overlined.

<sup>d</sup> "corrodyng" overlined.

<sup>1</sup> una species,

<sup>2</sup> in respectu viridioris.

<sup>3</sup> Secundum Platearium

<sup>4</sup> ab inferius ad superius

<sup>5</sup> ulcera fraudu-  
[lenta].

<sup>6</sup> Nam vitriolum diversis corporibus appositum vel membris.



and malencolious ; And also putte in dry membrez when it fyndep strong membrez agaynstayndyng to his strenght, þan may he noȝt bot dry superfluiteȝ y-founden in vlcereȝ or in wondeȝ ; which forsop y-dried, nature gendereȝ flesch. 4

in the weak  
and feeble  
it increases  
the dis-  
charge.

In moist bodieȝ, forsope, as in fleumatike men and childre and wymmen, and in moiste membreȝ of þe bodie, þe membreȝ bene feble and may noȝt withstande to þe strength of þe vitriol ; and so þai suffre liquefaccion of it, and so 8 putrefaccion is augmented in þe wonde. And as it wirkep þus in diuerse bodieȝ, so wirkep it in diuerse complexions and diuerse membris. And it dope noȝt þus for contrariouste of operacion þat it hape in itself, bot for 12 contrariouste of complexions to which it is y-putte ; As fire dop diuersely in dyuerse þings. ffor whi ; lede or oper metalle as bras and siluer y-put to þe fire ar molten of þe fire ; tyle, stoneȝ, and erþen potteȝ y-putte to þe fire 16 ar hardened ; and þise be noȝt done for þat þe fire hape contrarious wirkyng in hymself, bot for contrariouste of nature of þe forseid þingȝ. \*Wherfor seiþ galiene, if þer

Why vitriol  
acts in such  
contrary  
ways.

John  
Damascene's  
vitriol  
plaster.

be tuo þings euen in helpe, and þe tone be in a dry 20 membre and þe toper in a moiste, þat þat is in þe dry membre nedep more dry medycyne. Emplastreȝ, forsop, þat ar putte to membreȝ owen to be of o kynd to þe membrys, after Iohn Damascene : Tak of vitriol als 24 mych as þou wilt, i.[e.] 2 vnceȝ or 3 or 4, and putte in ane erþen potte whos moupe be wele stopped with clay distemperate with horse dong, þat is called lutum sapien,<sup>1</sup> and sette it to dry ; þe which y-dried, sette<sup>a</sup> þe potte with 28 þe vitriol among coleȝ, and make a softe fire by one houre ; And after ane houre make it stronger, and blow strongly with beloweȝ 2 houreȝ, and after lette in pece vnto þat þe fire defaile by itself. And þe potte y-colded, be it opned, 32 and þou schalt fynde attrament, i.[e.] vitriol, of rede colour cleuyng to þe sideȝ of þe potte ; whiche remoued fro þe potte, be it poudred subtilly vpon a stone, and putte it in a strong leþer bagge and kepe it to þine vse. By sich 36 combustion is his natural hete alterate and so it is colded, and so his mordicacion is dulled ; wherfor it may restreyne blode in noseȝ and woundeȝ and lure and marice. Also it

[\* leaf 166,  
back]

<sup>1</sup> cuius  
orificium  
fortiter  
obturetur  
cum luto  
bene dis-  
temperat.  
cum fimo  
equino quod  
vero lutum  
sapiencie  
dicitur.

The uses of  
this oint-  
ment ;

<sup>a</sup> "birye" overlined.

1 contra  
apostemata  
venenosa et  
fraudenta

availeþ agayneþ þe cancre and agaynþ venemous apostemeþ  
and fraudulentē<sup>1</sup>; And to teþe or gomeþ frenen or gnawen  
medled with symple hony, or better with melle rosate; Or  
4 best if þat licium, i.[e.] iuyse of caprifoile with clarefied  
hony be soþen to þe þikneþ of hony, and be medled with  
puluer of vitriol and putte vnto þe gomeþ; ffor whi;  
Iuyse of caprifoile þat is called licium availeþ bi itself to  
8 al þe viceþ of þe mouþe. Also vitriol y-medled with hony  
and licium putte þer-in helpeþ to vlcereþ of ereþ, and to  
þe quitour of þam and fretyng. Also vitriol combuste  
when it is medled with puluer of hermodactileþ and putte  
12 vnder-neþ þe tung it helpeþ to þe ranule.<sup>a</sup> Ane oyntment  
þat availeþ to cancrose vlcereþ, and to wondeþ, and to  
apostemeþ, of which floweþ out blode, and to yuel car-  
buncleþ þat ar called pestilencialeþ, and to apostemeþ þat  
16 ar made of yuel mater, is made þus: Recipe of old swyne  
grese<sup>2</sup> ȝiii, vitriol ȝiiii. Be þe grese molten ouer þe fire &  
be it coled, and breke long tyme þe vitriol with oile in a  
brazen morter, and afterward medled with þe grese ouer þe  
20 fire, and make ane oyntment mych fruyteful. If þou  
wilt make it in maner of one emplastre, putte þer-to wax  
and blak pich, for pich haþe strenght or vertu of drawyng  
fro partieþ bineþ to aboue, and þe same doþe vitriol.

how it may  
be modified  
with licium,  
etc.

An oint-  
ment against  
plague  
blotches.

2 adipis  
porci vetus-  
tissimi.

24 20. **A**lum ꝓucaryne is called comonly alumglasse. It  
is hote<sup>b</sup> and dry<sup>c</sup> in þe 4 degre. It is a  
veyne of þe erþe y-knowen ynoþ,<sup>3</sup> bot how mych it is more  
clere & schynyng so mych is it better. It haþe strenght of  
28 consumyng and of gretly desickyng.<sup>d</sup> It availeþ with hote  
vinegre agaynþ inflacions of þe gomeþ; And it availeþ in  
medicynes agaynþ þe scabbe. Also poudre of it combuste  
profiteþ mich bi itself, or y-medled with hony, \*in mundi-  
32 fying of liȝt cureþ. It mundifieth, forsoþ, with a stiptikneþ,<sup>4</sup>  
and in þat þat<sup>5</sup> it is stiptik it is confortatyue of membreþ,  
for al stiptik þingþ bene repressiue of humours. þer is,  
forsoþe, anoper kynde of alum þat is called alumen scissum,  
36 comonly alum plume, and it haþe þredeþ and it may be  
diuided and ryuen in sondre. And it is riȝt gode, and it  
haþe þe same vertueþ as alum glasse. Alum glasse is

Alum glass,

its uses.

[\* leaf 167]

Alum  
plume.

3 satis  
cognita et  
commune,

4 cum  
quadam  
stipicitate  
5 in hoc  
quod.

<sup>a</sup> "frog" overlined.

<sup>c</sup> "siccus" overlined.

<sup>b</sup> "calidus" overlined.

<sup>d</sup> "drying" overlined.



The method  
of preparing  
alum glass.

brynt þus: Tak a tile stone or a scarpe of a potte,<sup>1</sup> and putte it in þe middeþ of brynnyng coleþ so þat þe coleþ touch it noȝt, and in þat scarpe putte þe hole pece of alum, and alsone it will melt as it war yse, and boile, and after- 4 ward it wexeþ hard; and in boilyng it will blow and wex hiȝe in drying and wexing white. And lat it be stille so in þe fire vnto þe blowyng and boilyng vtterly cese, and to it be broȝt into ful white colour; þe which y-sene, sette 8 it fro þe fire and poudre it ful smal vpon a stone, and in a

Alum lotion.

leþer bag kepe it to þine vse. Water of alum is made þus: Tak a quantite of it als mich as þou wilt, and breke it at þe best,<sup>2</sup> to which be added to 8 partieþ of gode vinegre 12 and strong, and so boile þam in a panne at þe fire vnto þat þe half parte of al-togidre be consumed. Afterward remoue it fro þe fire and cole it; And þis is called watre of alum, which availeþ agaynȝ ychyng of scabbe of salt 16 flemne. And þis watre mundifieþ in coldand, bot watre of sulphur mundifieþ in hetying or chaufand.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Accipe unam tegulam vel testam unius olle.

<sup>2</sup> et teratur optime.

Verdigris  
and its  
properties.

21. Viride es i.[e.] vertgreþ, is hote<sup>a</sup> and drye.<sup>b</sup> It is ful penetratyue and dissolutyue, and it prikkeþ and brynneþ 20 and melteþ, and repressiþ putrefaccion. Wharfor, after galiene, [cap.] 4 de ingenio, of wex and oile and vertgrese may be made anoyntement temperate. ffor whi; vertgrese is ful mich penetratife, dissolutiue, pungityue, vrityue,<sup>4</sup> 24 and liquefactyue. And al þise ar repressed and dulled of wex and oile adde to it; for siþe wax and oile moisten riȝt mich and gendreþ putrefaccion, þai dulle þe scharpneþ of vertgrese, And vertgrese represseþ þeir putrefaccion and 28 humeccacion; wherfor of þise bene made a temperate oyntement.

<sup>3</sup> valet contra pruritum scabei ex salso flemate et ista aqua mundificat infrigido, sed aqua sulphuris mundificat calefaciendo  
<sup>4</sup> uritinum.

Arsenic and  
Auripig-  
mentum.

22. [A]rsenic & auripigment bene boþe one, bot lesse boþe haue a ȝalow colour, but auripigment is gretter and more schynnyng, and more disesy for to grynde for his predineþ; for in substance he is like vnto plaistre of paris. Bot arsenic is as it war puluer in reward of auripigment, 36 and it is more liȝtly broken; And when it is broken it haþe as it war vermilion within it, of rede colour and of aȝour colour; which vnkunnyng men saiþ to be realgre, &

<sup>a</sup> "calidus" overlined.

<sup>b</sup> "siccus" overlined.

<sup>1</sup> secundum modum alkimistarum id est alkenemyers.

<sup>2</sup> Quoniam virtus eorum circa ignem in ultimo fortitudinis et quod patet

<sup>3</sup> orpiment

pat is false. ffor whi; realgre is ane artificial confection made of alkenemistrez<sup>1</sup> bi sublimacion, as arsenic sublimed, And for certayn pai ar nozt different in operacion in any  
 4 ping, out-take pat realgre is of rede colour; and arsenic sublimed is of white colour; bot neperlez arsenic entrep in confection of realgre, And forpi realgre is called of som men rede auripigment: of þe namez is no stryuyng so þat  
 8 we vnderstond þe pingz. \* Auripigment is hote, and dry in þe 4 degre, of whiche bene tuo spicez as is seid aboue, 3elow and rede. 3elow is more competent to vse of lechez. It is forsoþ dissolutyue, attractyue, and mundificatyue,  
 12 And it hape in it a vertue putrefactyue by which he putrefieþ straunge humours comyng to a wounde, or ane vlcere, pat þai may nozt be assimilate, i.[e.] liken to membrez, and engendre superflue flesch or dede  
 16 flesch. Also it availeþ in medicynez agaynz þe scabbe, þe tetre and white morfee y-medled with blak sope. And for þat we made mencion of arsenic sublimed, þerfor it is to witte þat no leche bot if he be more experte in chirurgie  
 20 presume for to wirk with realgre or arsenic sublimed. ffor of þam ar bredde many disesez for þair distemperate violence. ffor why; þai boþe wirk with one maner and violence, and þat more violently þan cautery of fire. And  
 24 if any man ow for to vse þam, þam owe to be putte to in þe lest quantite, for þe vertu of þam aboute fire is þe vttermoste of strenght,<sup>2</sup> and þat is schewed, for þe watre of þam freteþ euery metaH, out-tak gold. Witte þou þat  
 28 auripigment is called comonly ortment,<sup>3</sup> whos puluer vseþ falconerez agaynz pediclez<sup>a</sup> of þaire falcone3. Also witte þou þat auripigment is desiccatyue, consumptiue, euapora-tyue, eradicatyue, putrefactiue, ruptyue and cauteriatyue.  
 32 Also witte þou þat of arsenic sublimed or of realgre, þat one3 in a tyme in þe bigynnyng of my practizing, when I knew nozt þe violence of þam, I putte of þe puluer of þe tuo forsayd in þe leggez of tuo men; þe which, forsoþe,  
 36 y-putte in, almost þei wer wode for ake bi tuo daiez naturel and more; And þair leggez war bolned out of mesure. þe þrid daie, forsoþe, þe place wher þe puluer was putte appered of ri3t blak colour, and þe pacientez war so feble

Realgar is not identical with Arsenic,

but there is nothing in a name.

[\* leaf 167, back]

Use arsenic and realgar with the greatest caution;

they are more caustic than fire.

Arderne's first experience with arsenic when he was young;

he thought he had killed two patients;

<sup>a</sup> "lise" overlined.



his treat-  
ment of  
them.

The tibia  
died,

[\* leaf 168]

and a  
sequestrum  
formed,

which  
Arderne did  
not notice  
for some  
time.

þat þai war almost dede. þan I anoynted þair leggez with  
oile of rose or popilion, And I fomented þe leggis in  
hote water for to euapour yuel humours contened in þe  
membrez; And aboue þe place I putte rawe larde kytte 4  
pinne,<sup>1</sup> with oile of rose. Aboue þe larde putte I ane  
emplastre of þe 3olkez of raw eggez, And stuppez of lyne  
aboue for to hold þe larde. And aboute þe 9 daie þe place  
combuste beganne to dissolue in þe circumference and for 8  
to putte out quiter. And þe place nozt reparate bot fro  
þe þrid day to þe þrid daye<sup>2</sup> I continued euer-more þis cure  
in þe forseid maner, vnto þat al þe mortified flesch within  
was fully putte out þe which, forsoþ, putte out, þe bone of 12  
þe legge<sup>a</sup> appered bare with a wounde riȝt horrible; þe  
which y-sene, I filled þe wonde of stupez y-kitte smalle,  
and putte þam aboue þe naked bone; and I putte in of þe  
3olk of a raw egg wele temperate with sanguine veneris, 16  
and I filled al þe wounde þer-with; and so euery day oneȝ  
reparalyng it vnto þe quiter biganne to cese, and þe sideȝ  
of þe wounde byganne for to sonde or conglutinate. And  
witte þou þat when þe sideȝ of þe wounde come to þe 20  
place of þe bone cauterizide of þe arsenic, which was  
blakke, \*þai miȝt no more grewe, for þe mortified bone  
miȝt nozt receyue nutriment, þat þer miȝt no flesch grew  
vpon it, ne be regendred. þe which ȝitte sene, I, sewyng 24  
þe ignorance of þe comon puple,<sup>3</sup> euery day I schoue<sup>4</sup> þe  
bare bone with instrument preparate þer-to, entendyng  
for to gendre flesch vpon þe bare bone. And I putte to  
regeneratyuez of flesch, þat is to sey licium with mel 28  
rosate, and puluer of aloes, & mastike, and mirre, sarcocoȝ,  
san. draconis, and þai profited noping. Neþerleȝ þe  
schauyng euery day continued in þe maner of ydioteȝ,  
as I seid afore; a daye, as I schoue þe forseid bone, þe 32  
bare bone vnder þe instrument moued vp and downe;  
þat, forsoþ, þerceyued, I meruailed ouer mesure, neþerleȝ  
I þerceyued of þat þat þe schauyng of þe bone profited  
noping: fro þan forþe I lefte þat werk, and I putte noping 36  
elleȝ in þe wounde bot licium with melle rosate and 3olk  
of a raw aye ymedled togidre, with carped stupez of lyne,  
and so fro day to day continuyng vnto þe forseid bone,

<sup>1</sup> apposui  
lardum  
crudum  
tenue  
incisum,

<sup>2</sup> de 3<sup>o</sup> in 3<sup>m</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Quo adhuc  
viso, ignor-  
antiam vulgi  
prosecutus.

<sup>4</sup> Abrasi.

<sup>a</sup> "schine" overlined.

flesch growyng vnder-neþe appered hizer þan þe extremitēz  
of þe wounde, and was made more moueable and more ;  
þe which ysene, I putte þe poynt of a knyfe vnder þe side  
4 of þe bone and I raised it a litel, and al þe bare bone stirt  
out, and rede flesch had filled al þe space where þe bone  
laye, and blode went out. þat bone, forsoþe, had in length  
4 ynchez, and 2 in brede ; in þiknez, forsoþe, it was drawne  
8 out almost vnto þe merewgh of þe bone ; And þis was in  
þe schyne bone. After þe seperacion, forsoþe, of þe bone,  
I cured finaly þe wounde with *licium* and mel rosate and  
raw zolk of an ey and puluer sine pari. And þe pacient  
12 recouered wonderfully his goyng ; he was, forsoþe, a zong  
man. And as it feþ on þe tone man, one þe same maner  
felle it of þe toper. And witte þou þat I putte nozt of  
puluer of arsenic in þe leggez of þe forseid men ouer þe  
16 quantite of a corne of senvey,<sup>1</sup> and neþerlesse þe wondez  
þat come of þe arsenic passed fully þe lengthe and þe brede  
of a mannez hande. þerfor vnexperte men be wele war  
fro þe vse of realgre and arsenic sublimed, and namely in  
20 þe face and þe leggez, and synowy placez and bony, and in  
a mannez zerde, and in þe lure ; for bot if þai haue grete  
resistence þai wirke ful cruely.

23. [*L*]icium is þe iuyse of caprifoile, þat is called wode-  
24 bynde, and it groweþ in wodez and wyndeþ strongly  
aboute treez ; and it hap long flourez, and it bereþ swete  
rede beriez. *Licium* cureþ þe canker in þe marice and in  
oper in ward membrez, for it haþe vertu mundificatyue,  
28 consolidatyue, and confortatyue, and regeneratyue of flesch  
in a bare bone and in schynne bonez ; and it haþe a vertu  
mundificatyue of putrefiyng of þe bone. And generally it  
availeþ in al fretyng sekenez, as in cancre, lupe, fistule,  
32 and noli-me-tangere. And agayne þe cancre in þe mouþe  
*licium* is a principal medicyne, boiled with hony vnto þe  
þiknez of þe hony. And it may be þus made : þe iuyse  
shal be pressed out and sette to þe son for to dry vnto  
36 þat it may be puluerized. And þis puluerized availeþ to  
derke eizen, putte in þe eiz, and forþi is called *oculus lucidus*.  
\* Bot it may be made profitably oper wyse, availyng to ful  
cause of cirurgie, & þat þus : þe iuyse of caprifoile pressed

He removed  
the dead  
bone and the  
wound  
quickly  
healed.

The second  
case was  
similar,

therefore use  
arsenic with  
the greatest  
care.

*Licium* or  
juice of  
woodbine.

Its uses.

Various  
prepara-  
tions :

powder is  
good for the  
eyes,

[\* leaf 168,  
back]

<sup>1</sup> "a mosterd sede" *overlined*.



the juice  
with honey  
for the  
mouth,  
and for  
ulcers  
everywhere.

It is ex-  
tracted with  
wine instead  
of water,

and is then  
used for foul  
ulcers.

Arderne  
used it  
successfully  
on a great  
man.

Pulvis sine  
pari,  
its con-  
stituents

and prepara-  
tion.

The reason  
for its name;

its uses,

out bi itself, be it boiled *with* also mich of clarified hony  
vnto þe wastyng of þe iuyse, and be it kepte vnto vse.  
And þis availeþ to þe cancre in þe mouþe, and in þe lure,  
and in þe marice, and al cancrose vlcere3 and fraudulent3 4  
of legge3. If þe iuyse, forsop, may no3t listly be pressed  
out for þe þikne3, als it falleþ, oft tyme, þan be þe lese3  
watred *with* gode white wyne or rede, and þan may þe  
iuyse listly be pressed out. ffor whi; witte þou þat capri- 8  
foile owe no3t to be waschen *with* watre afore þe brissyng,  
and moste when þer owe to be made licium to cure3 of þe  
eizen, Bot if it nede alwaie3 to be wette, be it no maner  
done *with* watre bot *with* wyne, as it is seid. Also lese3 12  
of caprifoile brissed by þam-self and *with* al his substance  
*without* medlyng of any oþer þing, putte vpon vlcere3 of  
legge3 desperate & stynkyng, and puttyng out foule blode,  
and growyng hize to maner of a cancre, and vnobedient to 16  
any medicyne, cureþ þam happily and meruelously. And  
þis proued I in þe legge of a grete man hauyng a pustle,  
In curyng of which al medicyne3 defailed; and *with* þis  
was he cured. ffor whi; þe first tyme þat it was putte to 20  
it dried þe fistule, and did away þe stynkyng and al þe  
yuel accident3, and *within* a moneþ he was plenarely cured.  
24. [P]ulvis sine pari, or french Poudre sanz pere, is  
made þus: *Recipe* auripigment. parte 1, þat [is] 3ii; vert- 24  
grese ana, or after som men partes ij; Of vitriol combuste,  
or no3t combuste, als mich as of boþe þe forseid; Alum  
3ucarine combust, or no3t combuste, als mych as of al þe  
forseid. Ich on of þise bi þamself be ful subtilly grouden 28  
on a stone, þe which wele y-growden, be þei eft-sone  
grouden al to-gidre vnto þai be rizt wele medled; and  
putte þam in leþer bag, and kepe to vse: þis may be kepte  
bi a 3ere and longer, and þat in gret effecte. þis poudre 32  
is seid “*without* pere” ffor it haþe no pere in wirchyng;  
ffor why; it mortifieþ and bryngeþ out dede flesch or  
superflue or putred in al wonde3 and vlcere3. And witte  
þou þat þis puluis bigileþ neuer þe paciente ne þe cirurgene, 36  
for it dop not wickedly. ffor whi; if þe cirurgene bene  
vnkunnyng and putte þis puluis in a wonde or in ane  
vlcere no3t hauyng dede flesch, it dop none harme to þe  
wonde or þe vlcere; bot *without* any oþer help it schal 40

at þe best be conglutinatiue, dissiccatyue, and sanatyue of  
 þe wonde; bot neþerlesse noȝt *without* mordicacion. ffor,  
 for certayne, if þis puluis war noȝt mordicatyue it schuld  
 4 in prise passe al medicynez. þe vse of þis puluis is sich; and method  
 when þis puluis is putte in a wounde or in ane vlcere, be of applica-  
 þer putte to it, *without* any-þing atuix, cotone or stupeȝ of tion.  
 lyne cutte smalle with schereȝ; And þan aboue al þat be  
 8 put aboue emplastre Nerbone or anoper, and be it bounden,  
 and so latte it be wipout remouyng by two nyghtez. \*After [\* leaf 169]  
 þis tyme, forsop, when þou remouez þe emplastre and þe  
 coton or þe stupeȝ putte aboue þe puluis, If þe puluis  
 12 putte in go willfully out *with* þe dede flesch þi nedeȝ is  
 wele sped. þan owe þou for to putte in þe hole of þe  
 vlcere or of þe wonde a drop or tuo of sanguis veneris,  
*with* stuppeȝ of lyne or coton, vnto þat þe hole be eft-  
 16 soneȝ replete *with* flesch. And if, forsop, in þe first The treat-  
 remouyng þe puluis putte in come noȝt wilfully out *with* ment of a  
 þe mortified flesch, þan ow þe lech for to putte o droppe or wound with  
 tuo of sanguis veneris vpon þe puluis in þe wounde or dead flesh.  
 20 þe vlcere, and aboue coton or stuppeȝ of lyne, as it is seid.  
 And aboue al-togidre þe emplastre Nerbone; and so lat  
 it abyde by a naturale day or more after þe estimacion of  
 þe discrete leche. And when þe dede flesch goȝ out of þe  
 24 vlcere or of þe wounde, be it reparailed as it was seid afore.  
 And to a leche be þis a reule, þat puluis corrosyue be  
 neuer remoued in a wonde or ane vlcere byfor þat it wille  
 wilfully go out. Also þer is anoper reule in which I haue  
 28 sene erre in my tyme almost al men noȝt practizours bot  
 foleȝ; þat is to say of þe ofte remouyng of woundez or  
 vlcereȝ. Sicke operacion, for-soþe, spedep noȝt, bot letteȝ  
 couenable effecte of curyng. And þat by þis reson, for  
 32 natural hete in þe body, which is principal actour of  
 curyng, expireȝ<sup>1</sup> out of ofte remeuyng of a wounde or of  
 ane vlcere, and so is letted digestion of humours comyng  
 to þe wounde or to þe vlcere, Wherfor þer may noȝt be  
 36 nade generacion of quitour and, by sewyng, ne purgyng  
 of þe wounde. Wherfor superflue humours rennyng to þe  
 wounde ar gedred togidre and ar holden stil more and  
 more; wherfor þe bolnyng in þe wounde is augmented

Two good  
 rules for  
 surgeons—  
 (i) Let  
 caustic  
 dressings  
 remain till  
 they are  
 cast out.  
 (ii) Do not  
 dress  
 wounds too  
 often.

The results  
 of neglect-  
 ing these  
 rules.

<sup>1</sup> “breȝep” *overlined*.



and, by sewyng, þe ake ; for þe tone is occasion of þe toþer. Wherfor þe wounde or þe vlcere waxeþ hard and foule, and for þe quitour þat it owed of riȝt to putte out, it sendeþ out watry humour & venemous, and so ofte-tymeȝ 4 of liȝt hurtyng ar made incurable yueleȝ. Also þer is anoper errour in ofte remeuyng of woundeȝ or of vlcereȝ ; ffor as seiþ philosophreȝ, aier chaungeþ þe body and by consequens þe wounde, and þat may be proued by ex- 8 perience. þe breþ of a menstruous woman noyeþ vnto woundeȝ if sche neȝen nere ; Or of þe lech if he haue liggen *with* his wife or *with* anoper woman menstruate, or if he haue eten garleke or onyons. Bot be þis maner of 12 wirchyng boldly holden, þat a lech be content only of ane reparacione in þe day, þat is if he haue þe medicyneȝ contened in þis boke. ffor when he seþe a wounde or ane vlcere wele cast out quitour, and þe bolnyng for to vanysh 16 away, and þe akyng for to be cesed, and þe membre for to come agayne to þe first habite and colour, helpe is at þe dore if þe pacient be we[le] gouerned, i.[e.] if he slepe wele in niȝtes. In slepe, forsoþ, nature wirkeþ 20 better aboute digestion of euery mater beyng in þe body or in þe membris. Bot for þat slepe is oftyme letted of akyng, þerfor bifore al þingȝ be it laboured þat þe akyng be cessed. \*ffor akyngȝ afor al oper þings 24 noȝt only presseþ downe vertueȝ of þe body but also of þe medicyneȝ. And þat þing soueranly mitigateþ oile of rose in hote cause, or oile of camamille in cold cause, for it is hote and resolutyue, of which it schal be seid after- 28 ward. Also ane emplastre of hony and branne and a litil vinegre fried togidre mitigateþ<sup>1</sup> euery akyng for certayne. And witte þou þat þo þingȝ þat ar putte aboue makeþ to þe closyng-in of naturale hete and excludyng of þe aier. Be 32 þise þingȝ seid afore of remeuyng of woundeȝ and vlcereȝ comended wele to mynde ; And be it done boldly as it is seid, ffor oftymeȝ in many caseȝ I was noȝt wount for to remoue bot fro þe prid day into þe prid day, and þat 36 namely in hurtyng of þe schynneȝ ; and I sped wele, And I cured many hard þingȝ and forsaken of oper men *with* þis puluis sine pari and oper emplastreȝ y-named. And I

A menstru-  
ating woman  
is noisome  
to wounds,

and so are  
garlick and  
onions.

Dress a  
wound once  
a day only.

The value of  
sleep to a  
sick man.

[\* leaf 169,  
back]

Soothing ap-  
plications.

Arderne  
used to dress  
his wounds  
every third  
day.

<sup>1</sup> "eseþ" *overlined*.

saw neuer in al my tyme þis forseid puluis defaile, out-  
take in þe legge of a gret man in which it miȝt noȝt haue  
no strength of wirchyng as it was wont for to haue in  
4 oþer; wherfor I was hugely astoned, bot neþerleȝ I heled  
hym wele with grene licium putte þer-to, our lorde beyng  
mene, as it is seid aboue.

Pulvis sine  
pari only  
once failed  
Arderne.

25. [A]nd for þat many men couaiteþ for to here  
8 [A] nameȝ of oileȝ and of emplastreȝ and of oynte-  
mentȝ, þerfor I haue putte þair nameȝ to þam. One for  
þe rednes and swetneȝ is called sanguis veneris. Of  
french, forsop, for ladieȝ is called sank damours or sank de  
12 pucellȝ, ffor why; venus was called goddeȝ of luffe.  
Sanguis veneris ow þus to be made: *Recipe* puluis of  
alcannet ȝl. and putte it in a quart of comon oile, and þe  
oile schal become rede to likneȝ of blode, wheþer it be  
16 boiled at þe fire or noȝt, for it may be made on boþe  
maners; and be it kept to vse in ane erþen potte or a  
pewdre potte. þis maner of confeccion of sanguis veneris  
is riȝt gode for þe alkenet þat is cold and drye in þe first  
20 or second gre. ffor þis alkenet consumeþ humiditeȝ of  
woundeȝ and of vlcereȝ, for it is subtiliatyue and resolu-  
tyue without mordicacion, and carminatyue & appertyue,  
and exsiccatyue with stiptikneȝ. Wherfor it is gode in  
24 hote apostemeȝ with litel mater in þe bygynnyng, for it is  
cold and drye and þerfor it is repercussyue and exsiccatyue  
of hote apostemeȝ. Also it helpeþ to synues and iunctureȝ,  
and vlcereȝ of þe mouþe in drying. And it medled with  
28 vinegre & ynoynted helpeþ to þe akyng of þe heued. San-  
guis veneris heleþ wele, and purgeþ, and defendeþ fro drede  
depe woundeȝ made wyth knyfe or arow, and holow vlcereȝ,  
if it be putte in with stuppeȝ of lyne, And emplastre  
32 Nerbone putte aboue, And it doþe al þingȝ þat perteneþ to  
cure of a wounde or of aposteme, and þat in a fair maner.

Pulvis san-  
guis veneris,

called in  
french sang  
d'amour, or  
sang des  
puelles.

Its mode of  
preparation:  
(i) for ordin-  
ary use,

Bot witte þou þat Sanguis veneris may be made on  
anoþer maner, and þat to noble men, if þe lech may haue  
36 in tyme of his confeccion al þings necessarye vnto his  
confeccion, þat is to sey þe blode of a maiden virgyne or  
of a maiden damisel about 19 or 20 ȝere, which was neuer  
impregnēd,<sup>1</sup> þof sche be corrupte; for now in þis tymeȝ

[leaf 170

(ii) for the  
better  
classes.

<sup>1</sup> "with child" overlined.



A prescrip-  
tion for  
making a  
confection  
of sanguis  
veneris.

virginez comeþ ful seldome to 20 3ere. Which blode ow  
to be drawen out in þe ful of þe mone, þe mone beyng in  
virgine and þe sonne beyng in piscibz. Also it bihoueþ  
þe lech haue to þis confection aloes, & mirre, & sanguis 4  
draconis, and puluis of alkenet. And þus is it made:  
*Recipe* blode of a maid, as it is seid afore, to þe which  
alsone after þe drawyng out, or it be cold, medle puluis of  
aloes cicotrine, mirre, sanguis draconis ana 31 or 2 or 3, 8  
after þe quantite of þe blode; of subtile puluis of alkenet  
als mich as of al þe toper. And al þise, forsoþe, be wele  
medled with þe blode in maner of a paste, and afterward  
dry it at þe son: when it is drie kepe it to þine vse. 12

A method of  
using the  
confection  
sanguis  
veneris.

When þou wilt, forsoþe, vse þerof, tak a party of it or al,  
and poudre it wele, and seþe it in grene oile of olyuez als  
mich as sufficeþ; þat is to ane vnce of þe forseid confec-  
tion þou ow to putte 2 lb. of oile, þat is a quart of a galon, 16  
or more if it be nede, and boile þam togidre vnto þat þe  
oile appere rede; which beyng rede, putt it of þe fire,  
(sette it of þe fire) and kepe it to þine vse. And when it is  
boiled cole it nozt bot lat it abide with þe oile, for it will 20  
satle in þe grounde, and so it will strengþe þe medicyne.

An ointment  
called Salus  
Populi.

26. [A]n oyntment þat is called Salus populi is made  
þus: *Recipe* celidon M.ij, edere terrestris<sup>1</sup>  
M. i, and brysse þam togidre; and afterward take hertez 24  
talow or schepez talow or boþe, als mych as sufficeþ to þe  
quantite of þe herbez; And of oile of olyue als myche als  
half of þe talow; and boile al with þe forseid herbez vnto  
þat þe herbez go to þe grounde of þe vessel and be made 28  
blak; afterward cole þam and lat þam cold, and kepe it  
to vse. þis oyntment is hard, and þerfore when it is nede  
to vse it take of it and putte in ane holow oistre schelle  
and melt it aboue colez, or aboue a brynnyng candel; And 32  
wher þat nede is anoyte þerwith. And witte þou þat it  
ow nozt to be putte in woundez or vlcerez bot only about  
þam withoutforþe, þat is if þe skynne about þe wounde  
be flaien or skalded of hete, or if it haue many puschez<sup>2</sup> 36  
& smale, white or rede or blak; þan be þe skyn first wele  
fomented with a sponge & hote watre, And after þat it is

The method  
of its prepar-  
ation,

how to use  
it,

and in what  
cases.

Use a  
fomentation  
first.

<sup>1</sup> "hayhoue, folefote, horshoue" *overlined*.

<sup>2</sup> "blayne3" *overlined*.

dried be it anoynted *with* þis anoyntment hote aboue þe place flaien or pusched, And alsone *without* any þing atuix: if it be nede in grete case; þou may anoynte it  
4 aboue *with* vnguento arabico or *with* comon vnguento albo for to kele it more strongly and dry.

Salus populi, forsoþ, dryeþ wele and sicatrizeþ, and it  
availeþ at þe best to lippez y-brent of þe sone or chynned  
8 of þe wynde, and to legge; and fete and handez; and it  
availeþ agayn; brynnyng of fire, and it quencheþ þe wild  
fire after þe fallyng of þe puschez. þis oyntment wold I  
neuer wante for many benefete; of it, And witte þou pat  
12 it is best remedi to þam þat haþe þe emoroides or þe fistule  
or oþer sleiyng.

[leaf 170,  
back]

Its mode of  
action.

27. [A]ne emplastre þat is called Nerbone is made þus: The Nerbon  
Recipe diaquilon, and *with* comon oile or *with* oleo siriaci plaster.  
16 resoluē it vp[on] þe cole; and boile it alwaiez *with* a  
spatulre vnto it bigynne to wex blak. And if þou wil The method  
haue it riȝt blak boile it langer, and if þou wilt haue of prepara-  
broune boile it lesse. ffor whi; by long boilyng it may tion.  
20 be made most blak *without* medlyng of any oþer þing.  
And after þat þou wilt haue it hard or softe be added  
þerto, or minusched, oile *with* which it is resolved. When  
it hap boiled ynouȝ sette it fro þe fire and late it stande  
24 stille *without* mouyng by þe space of a 'pater noster' &  
'aue maria,' þat þe litarge of þe lede þat is in it may  
descende to þe grounde; and alsone be it ȝette out softly  
into anoþer panne þat þe litarge be noȝt ȝette out *with*alt,  
28 and þan moue it *with* a spatule strongly vnto þat it be  
colded. When, forsoþ, it is cold þat it may be malaxed,  
enforme þerof trocistes vpon a table in quantite as it pleseþ  
þe, and kepe it to þine vse. þis emplastre is called Noir-  
32 bone, for þof-al it be blak neþerlesse it is gode, for it heleþ  
wele wondez and vlcerez, and it is wele cleuyng to, and it  
matureþ wele aposteme; and bresteþ þam in any place of  
þe body.

To stand so  
long as it  
takes one to  
say a pater  
noster and  
an ave.

To be made  
into pellets.

Whence its  
name.

36 28. [O]leum Siriacum is þus made: Recipe comon Siriac oil,  
malue; of gardyne; fatte & fresch, and somewhat brisse  
hem in a morter, And after boile hem long in comon oile  
bot noȝt vnto þe consumyng of þe herbe, þat þe fatnes of



and plaister. þe maluez be noȝt consumed. And if þou wilt make it þikke to maner of ane emplastre, þan ow þou for to putte with þe oile as war þrid parte of schepez talow, and boile hem togidre as it is seid, and kepe it to vse. 4

Unguentum Arabicum. 29. Vnguentum arabicum, Tapsimel (in þe last end of emoroideȝ), Diaflosmos: seke hem in þe tretysse of þe fistuleȝ.

[leaf 171] Pulvis Grecus. 30. Pulvis grecus is þus made: *Recipe* auripigment. ci- 8 trin. piper. nigri, calcis viue, alphice, i.[e.] barlymele ana,

hony clarified partes iij, vinegre þe ferþe parte; be þai medled with þe forseid poudrez in maner of paste, and be þer made a kake þerof, and be it baken on a hote tyle 12 stone ouer þe fire so þat it be noȝt brent bot þat it may be wele poudred vpon a stone. And when it bigynneþ to wex blak on þe tile-stone be it oftyme turned þat it be noȝt brent bot þat [it] be perfitely dried. With þis pulvis 16 haue I cured sich fikeȝ puttyng out blode, & growyng in þe palme of a manneȝ hand. And if þou haue noȝt pulvis grecus þou may do þe same in þe forseid þings with pulvis sine pari. And wytte þou þat I haue oft tyme sene pulvis 20 grecus for to availe in þe cancre of a manneȝ ȝerde, and in fikeȝ bredyng þer-about.

Oil of Roses. 31. [O]ile of roseȝ is þus made: *Recipe* roses þat bene ful spred, and gredre hem erly whileȝ 24 þe dew lasteþ, and clyppe hem with a paire [of] schereȝ in smale pecys and do hem into a glasen vessel, and do þerto oile of olyue of þe grenest þat þou may fynde, ana, & medle hem wele togidre in þi vessel and stoppe it wele; 28 And hete it agaynȝ þe son 20 daieȝ and þan draw it þurȝ a kanuaȝ and cast away þe groundez of þe roseȝ, And putte þat liquour þat comeþ out into a vessel aȝeyn and stoppe þe vessel þat þer come none aier out. And ich day in þe 32 mornyng when þou schalt hyng out þi potte tak a spatere of tre and opne þi potte and stirre it wele, and stoppe it agayne duryng al þe 20 daies.

Another preparation, Anoper maner [of] makyng, and more colde. *Recipe* 36 roseȝ & oile ana, and schred þi roses and putte hem into a vessel of glasse with þine oile, and stoppe it wele. And hang it into a vessel with watre vp to þe nek duryng tuo monepeȝ, and euer ich day stirre it oneȝ and stoppe it 40

azeyn. And after þat streyne it and do away þi groundes  
 of þe rosez. And þis is more cold þan þe toþer. Also it  
 is made þus after my maner and myne vse. If þou haue when roses  
are scarce.  
 4 noȝt plente of rosez take of white roses with þe tendrons  
 of þe braunchez als mych as þou wilt, and brisse þam in a  
 mortar; þe which y-brissed, putte þam in als mych comon  
 oile as þe likeþ, and so latte þam rest 9 daies; afterward  
 8 boile þam vpon softe fire vnto þe oile be made grene. þan  
 if þou may haue fresch rosez putte þam in ane erþen potte  
 or leden, als many as þe likest; and be þe forseid oile  
 coled hote ȝette aboue and moued togidre with a spatire,  
 12 And alsone stoppe þe moupe, þat þe vapour go noȝt out.  
 And biry þe vessel with þe oile in moist erþe, and euery  
 oþer day be þer ȝetted cold watre about þe potte. And  
 be it þus done 40 daies or more, & þis maner confection  
 16 schal be most noble oile roset. And þus ow it to stonde  
 al þe hole ȝere.

32. Oile of violettez may be made in þe same maner. [leaf 171,  
back]  
Oil of  
Violets.  
 Bot witte þou þat oile of violettes is laxatiue and oile of  
 20 rose constrictiue. ffor why; if oile of violettz with euen  
 porcion of iuyse of Mercurial<sup>1</sup> be ȝetted in by a clistery in  
 continuel acuez or interpolate, it remolleþ softely þe bowelez  
 and putteþ out þe superfluitez. Oile of violet haþe aspecte Its uses.  
 24 to membrez þat bene dried by any infirmitè. It abateþ  
 bolnyngz wher þat euer þai be; And it softneþ þe asperitè<sup>2</sup>  
 of þe brest and of þe long, and it ceseþ pleuresy and hote  
 apostemez. And witte þou þat þer is tuo manerez of oile Oil roset,  
 28 roset, complete and rude. Complete is made of ripe oile  
 and of ful rosez ripe. Rude is made of vnripe oile and  
 of rosez þat haþe [not?] fully opned þair buddez. Oile  
 roset complete is resolutiue, confortatyue, and con-  
 32 ueniently cedatyue<sup>3</sup> of akyng. Rude forsoþe is extinctyue  
 of inflammacions, confortatyue, aggregatyue, inspissatyue,  
 prohibityue of cursez of humours. Oile of roses is special how it acts.  
 remedy agayns brennyng and hote apostemez, wher þat  
 36 euer þai be in þe body. ffor whi; in ane or tuo puttyngs  
 to it mitigateþ þe akyng, it dulleþ þe furiositè and þe  
 scharpnez of þe mater; It makeþ þe place for to vnbolne,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "smerwort" *overlined*.

<sup>3</sup> "cesyng" *overlined*.

<sup>2</sup> "scharpnez" *overlined*.

<sup>4</sup> "swage" *overlined*.



and it remeueþ þe rede colour. ffor-soþe it swageþ and softenep þe brennyng & þe prikkynge, þe smertyng and þe akyng, And it comfortep þe membres boþ in hote causes and in cold ; ffor after auctours, Oile roset coldeþ ane hote 4 membre and hetep a cold membre. And it doþ many oper profiteþ in þe body, And þerfor a gode lech puruey hym þat he want neuer oile rosette, syþe þer procedep so many help- yngz of it to mannez body. ffor why ; after galien, to euery 8 akyng hote oile rosette is mitigatyue, as it is seid afore.

It should  
always be  
kept in  
stock.

Preparation  
of Oil of  
Camomile.

33. [O]ile of camamille is þus made: *Recipe* cama- mille grene and fresch, and brisse it som- what in a mortar. After boile it with a softe fire in 12 comon oile als mych as sufficeþ. And putte a litel watre in þe oile þat þe herbe in seþing be nozt brent ; and boile it vnto þe herbez go doune to þe grounde and bigynne to be blak. Which y-done, take flours of camamille, if þou 16 may haue þam, and putte þam in ane erpen potte ; And 3ette þe forseid oile coled, als hote as it may, aboue þe flourez, and alsone couer þe mouþe of þe potte with par- chemyne and sette it in a saue place. fforsoþe if þou may 20 [not?] haue flours of camamille in tyme of þi confeccion, þan in-stede of flourez tak M.i of þe tendre braunchez of camamille and putte þam with-out any brissyng in a potte, and putte oile riȝt hote vpon þam, as it is seid afore. 24

Another  
preparation  
when the  
flowers are  
scarce.

[\* leaf 172]

\*And afterward when þou may haue flours of camamille, take þe forseid oile with þe braunchez of camamille and boile þam eftsoneþ vpon þe fire ; and as it is seid afore, putte to a litel watre or elleþ a litel vinegre, þat is better, 28 þat þe oile may be more penetratyue, and boile it vnto þe wastyng of þe watre or of þe vinegre ; and þat is known by boiling of þe oile made with noyse ; þan cole it, and 3ette it riȝt hote vpon þe flourez as it was seid. Oile of 32 camamille is temperate, and it is a blissyng þing of many helpyngs, and it is a conuenient resolutyue, and of akyng sedatyue, and it is prohibytyue of curseþ of humours for a litel stiptyknez in it. It comfortep synoweþ and al synuy 36 membryez ; It helpeþ to þe akyng of þe heued, And gener- ally it availeþ to al akyng, and it is conuenient to al com- plexions, and it is riȝt subtile. And als mych as it dissolueþ so mych consumeþ it. 40

Its uses.

34. [O]ile of masticus is made þus : *Recipe Masticus* Oil of  
 3 1, thuris albi alexandrie 3 ½ ; be þai pou- Mastick.  
 dred & decocte in 1 lb. of oile of rose or of almandez or Its prepara-  
 4 of notez ; and when it is cocte yno3, cole it and kepe it to tion.  
 vse. þis oile helpeþ to euery akyng, of þe stomak, of þe  
 iuncture3, of þe schuldrez, anoynted agayne3 þe fire, and  
 to akyng3 of þe lyuer and of þe splene, putte to hote with  
 8 lana succida. It comforteþ vertu assimilatyue in a  
 membre febled ; wherfor it helpeþ to men in þe ethic, in  
 þe ptisik, and disposed to þe lepre and to þe morfee, and to  
 old men and consumed. And anoynted it moisteþ þe Its uses.  
 12 skynne, and reuokeþ and restoreþ þe flesch consumed, and  
 comforteþ þe stomak and makeþ it to diffy in cold cause ;  
 it represseþ þe abhominaciones of þe stomak, it giffeþ  
 appetite, it scharpeþ þe mynde, It consumeþ al cold  
 16 passions, It availeþ to hole men and to seke in al  
 necessite3. When þou wilt make þis oile agayn3 þe vices  
 of þe stomak, þan may þou make it with oile in which ar  
 soþen som þings pertenyng to confortyng of þe stomak, as  
 20 wormode, Mynt, Macis, galinga, & sich oþer, And so schal  
 it better spede. Things to be  
 added when  
 it is used as  
 a stomachic.
35. [O]ile of almandez is made þus : *Recipe amigdal.* Oil of  
 24 skynnez with hate watre ; afterward brisse þam lang & Almonds.  
 wele without medlyng of any oþer þing ; which y-brissed, Its prepara-  
 be þai putte in a new strong bagge of lynne cloþe, and tion.  
 hyng þat bag ouer þe caldron or ouer a potte ful of boilyng  
 28 water, so þat þe bagge touch nozt þe watre bot þat only it  
 receyue þe fume of þe boilyng watre. Afterward presse  
 þe bag strongly and receyfe þe oile þat comeþ out \* and  
 kepe it to þine vse. Bot witte þou þat þis oile may nozt  
 32 long endure. It availeþ mych agayne brynnyng of vryne  
 within in þe 3erð, If it be cast in wyþ a syryng, And  
 agayns oþer brennyng3 also. Its uses.
36. [W]atre of almandez is made þus : *Recipe* Almond  
 36 almandes dulces clensed of þair skynnez water.  
 and dryed, and brisse þam in a mortar without medlyng Its prepara-  
 of any oþer liquour ; And after distille þam as þou dis- tion and  
 tilleþ rose watre. þis availeþ agayn3 brennyng of þe uses.

[\* leaf 172,  
back]



sonne in þe face, And also agayn3 brynnyng in a mannez  
zerd, put in by a siryng.

Oil of  
Juniper,  
how dis-  
tilled.

37. [O]ile of Iunipre is made þus: *Recipe* a new  
erþen potte, and putte it into þe erþe euen to 4  
þe mouþe; þan tak anoper erþen potte whos bothme may  
be receyfed within þe mouþe of þe potte þat standeþ in þe  
erþe; And putte ane holowe canel of yren þur3 þe bothme  
of þe ouer potte into þe neper potte þat standeþ within þe 8  
erþe; þan tak dry stikke3 of Iuniperi and kutte þam  
smal and putte þam into þe ouer potte, and þan lute þe  
mouþe3 of boþe pottes with clay medled with horsdong.  
And make a fire al aboute þe ouermore potte, And þan 12  
scha[1] oile distille þur3 þe canel into þe lawer potte, þe  
which kepe for þin vse, for it is ful noble for akyng. It is  
gode for al maner goute and for þe parallesy.

Its uses.

Ointment of  
Juniper.

38. [A]lso ane enoyntment made of it to wonde3 16  
þat vnneþ bene curable and long tyme  
haue bene in þe bone3: *Recipe* fruyte of Iuniperi &  
fresch lard of a male swyne and brisse þam togidre;  
Afterward take 3 partes of ri3t strong white wyne and 20  
seþe þe forseid þing3 in it, and when it is pikke sette  
doune fro þe fire. And putte þerof to þe forseid sore3  
& wonde3. It purgeþ, it filleþ, it heleþ & it cicatrizeþ.

Its prepara-  
tion

and uses.

A good  
plaister for  
the gout.

39. [A] gode emplastre for þe goute: *Recipe* blak sope 24  
als mych as sufficeþ, to which putte als mych  
of raw 3olke3 of eyren as is half of þe sope, and medle  
þam strongly in a dish or in a box vnto þat þe sope lefe  
his owne colour; þe which y-done, putte it with þi fynger 28  
or with a spatüre vpon subtile stupe3 of lyne and applie it  
faste vnto þe akyng place. Aboue þis emplastre, forsoþe,  
putte a strictorie of white of eiren and mele of whete and  
lynnen cloute3 y-dipped þerin, and putte it fast & applie 32  
it aboue þe forseid emplaster þat it be no3t remoued byfore  
dew tyme, bot if any competent cause aske it. þis medy-  
cyne is li3t \*but no3t litel effectual, þat haue I proued  
ofttyme3, als wele in wyemen as in men; þat with one3 36  
puttyng to it ceseþ ful grete akyng3 als wele in þe knee3  
as in þe fete and in oper ioynture3; bot be-war þat it be  
no3t perceyued of þe pacient ne of none oper; hold it  
pryuè and chere, and schew it no3t bot to þi son or ane 40

Its prepara-  
tion.

[\* leaf 173]

So good that  
it should  
only be  
shown to  
one's son.

als wele biluffed. I trow, forsop, þat it availeþ bifor al  
oper medicynez to þe goute, and more sone abateþ þe  
akyng. And it ow 5 daiez or 6 to lye stille without  
4 remeuyng if it may so bene applied.

40. [W]alwort<sup>1</sup> is ane herbe like vnto el[d]re in lefe3 and  
fruyte. In odour it is sumwhat greuou3 and stynkyng. Walwort  
and its  
virtues.  
In tast it is as war bitter, bot in vertu anence old men it  
8 is deemed expert and effectuale, and kynde & free to  
medicyne in many vse3; witnesse plinius, diascoride3, The uses of  
walwort.  
macrobu3 and many oper, whos rote3, rynde3, and branche3  
and leue3 and floure3 bene profitable in medicyne3. It  
12 haþe vertu of dissoluyng, consumyng of gret flemme and  
viscose with þe iuyse of it. It availeþ agayn3 þe gutte of  
þe ioynTURE3 and contraccion of synue3 of þe heude & of  
þe fete. It availeþ also agayn3 bolnyng3 and collections  
16 intercutanie3 wher-so-euer þai bene gedred in þe body.  
Also it availeþ most agayn3 brissyngs of membre3 and  
falle3, if þe membre3 be fomented in his decoctions. ffor  
why; it mitigateþ þe akyng, it ceseþ þe bolnyng, it minis-  
20 treþ vertue and strength to synowe3 and to ioynTURE3. It  
availeþ agayne3 bolnyng of þe womb of cold y-dropisy, if  
his Iuyse be dronken with hony and comyne. And witte  
þou þat þe Iuyse of walwort, or þe poudre of it if it be  
24 hadde redy, is namely in euery medicyne þat is restrictyue  
of blode. þe maner of makyng and kepyng of it is as þe  
maner of licium seid afore.

41. Valence of scabious or of Iacee albe is þus made: A valence of  
scabious.  
Its prepara-  
tion.  
28 Recipe Iuyse of scabious in somer, and cole it þur3 a cloþe;  
and tak swyne3 grese clensed of þe skynne3 and stamp it  
wele in a morter in smytyng it bot no3t in brekyng  
vtterly; and euermore putte in a litel of þe iuyse to þe  
32 grese þat it may wele be imbibed and þat þe talow may  
be made grene; þe which y-done, tak þat grese and couer  
it with þe forseid iuyse and so late it stand 9 daiez. And  
after 9 daiez take eftsone þe forseid grese with þe iuyse  
36 and stamp it as afore, and putte out þat þinne watryne3  
and discolored þat goþ out þerof, and so lat it stande 5  
daiez. \*After þe 5 day eftsone tak new Iuyse of scabious [\* leaf 173,  
back]  
and stamp it, as it is seid, with þe forseid grese; þe which

<sup>1</sup> "ebulus" overlined.



Its uses.

Whence its name.

y-done, latte it rest in a vessel with þe iuyse al a fourt-nyzt; which tyme ouerpassed, eftsoneȝ bete it as it is seid afore, and purge it of þe watrineȝ, and putte it in a clene vessel, and lat it stand stil anoþer fourtniȝt, And þan 4  
 brisse it wele vnto þat it be al of grene colour. And whan þe nedeþ for to vse þerof, as vnto þe antrax, putte þerof with þi fynger vpon clene stuppeȝ of lyne, and strech it and lay it on þe antrax anoynted with oile of rose, and 8  
 remeued it noȝt by a naturel day. ffor without dout it schal slee þe antrax and swage þe akyng, and brist it and vtterly cure it. And þis medyc[in]e is called Valence of scabious for þe valow of it. It may be kepte many ȝereȝ, 12  
 bot it is better if it be euery ȝere renewed and bette newly with oile roses, and putte vp agayne vnto it nede. And witte þou þat scabious y-dronken sleep þe antrax, and putteþ away þe venym of it fro þe hert þat it sle noȝt þe 16  
 pacient. Also þe same herbe ydronken turneþ inward apostemeȝ to outward and putteþ þam out insensibily. Also witte þou þat new scabious & fresch y-brissed with swynes grese and putte vpon antrax sleep it in a day 20  
 naturel, and takeþ away þe akyng for certayne. Bot for þat scabious may noȝt euermore be had redy & fresch, þerfor was þis medicyne made þat may long be kept, þat wonderfully sleep þe antrax and vtterly cureþ it, as I haue 24  
 proued myself ane hundreþ tymeȝ. Also witte þou þat Iacea alba is scabious, bot Iacea nigra is matfelon. And witte þou þat þat scabious þat groweþ among corneȝ with ane heuenly flour is better þan þat þat groweþ in mydoweȝ 28  
 þat hap no flour. After diascorides trowe þou to þis þat it hape no pere to þe forseid þingȝ wonderfully to be done, and þat softly. I haue proued it a hundreþ tymeȝ for certayne. 32

A valence of wormwood.

Its uses.

[\*leaf 174]

42. Valence of wormode is þus made: *Recipe* iuyse of wormode, smalach, plantayn, and with swyneȝ grese clensed wele of þe skynneȝ brisse it wele and long togidre in maner as it is seid afore of þe valence of scabious; þe 36  
 which y-done, kepe it to þin vse. þis valence of wormode availeþ to brissyngs of leggeȝ and of schynboneȝ, and to woundeȝ þat ar made in þe muscleȝ \*of þe armeȝ and of þe leggeȝ with a streyȝt wounde, as of a knyfe or of ane arowe, 40





- (1) A resonable gouernance of lawe; of lywyng.
- (2) Æsculapius helyd menne with fternices & medicines.
- (3) Aschepius taught to geder rotes and herbe; flowrie; and frote;.

- (4) Aschepius schewed mesures and quantitie; weghte; and wares.
- (5) Aschepius techeth to make puluere; confec-cionis & electuarie;.
- (6) Ypocras & galien schewe certeyne quantitie; in preseruynge.



or of sich oper. And it availeþ to al woundez for to hold þam opne, and for certayne it mitigateþ wele þe akyng. When þe nedep for to vse þerof in woundez, 3ette in first of oile of rosez or of violet 2 droppez or þre, and anoynt al 4 þe wounde about of þe same oilez, and þe membre þat is hurt. And afterward putte aboue of þe forseid valence vpon softe stupez of lyne, and bynde it competently, and lat it so abide a naturel day. þis medicyne, forsop, 8 represseþ wele bolnyng and akyng and holdeþ þe wounde opne, and gendreþ quitour, and draweþ out venym of þe wounde, and quencheþ þe brynnyng of þe membre. þis oyntment, forsop, luffed I mych; with þis medicyne cured 12 I a fischer at london, which was hurt in þe lacert of his arme of þe prikyng of a scharp yren standyng on þe gymewe; at þe frere Carome;<sup>1</sup>; Wherfore he was almost dede, what of akyng, bolnyng, and brynnyng, and what 16 of þe vncouenable cure of a barbour þat putte in þe wounde scharpe tentez of lynne cloþe, and putte aboue diaquilon. His cure, forsop, remoued away, I putte to about euensang-tyme of þe forseid valence with anoyntyng 20 of oile of roses, And bifore cokcrow þe pacient was delyuered of akyng and þe arme biganne for to swage,<sup>a</sup> and in the mornyng he sleped wele, and þe arme was purged of quitour by the wounde. Bot witte þou þat I 24 putte no tent in þe forseid wounde, bot al-only with 3ettyng in of oile and puttyng aboue of þe valence without any-þing atuix I cured hym finaly; wherfor I gatte mych honour. At nothyngham, forsop, I cured anoper 28 þerfitely with þe forseid medicyne, þat was smyten in þe arme, bot nozt þorow, with a knyfe; of whos life men despaired for akyng and anguysch of þe pacient.

A case cured  
by this  
valence in  
London,

and another  
at Notting-  
ham.

A sleeping  
powder used  
by rogues in  
France.

43. Puluiz for to make a man sleep agaynz his wille, after 32 maner of Ribaldez and trowans in fraunce, þat felawshypeþ þam by þe waiez to pilgrimeþ þat þai may robbe þam of þair siluer when þai ar aslepe. *Recipe semen iusquiamus, 3izannie, i.[e.] darnel, papaueris nigri, i.[e.] chessede, de 36 radice brionie sicc., ana; brek al-togidre in a brasen mortar into ful smal poudre, of which poudre giffe hym in his potage or in a kake of whete or in drynk, & he*

<sup>1</sup> cum hac  
medicina  
curavi quen-  
dam pisten-  
arium apud  
London.  
qui ex punc-  
turâ ferri  
acuti stan-  
tem super  
legimeus  
ad fratres  
Carmeli in  
lacerto  
brachii  
læsus.

<sup>a</sup> "vnbolne" *overlined*.

schal slepe alsone, wille he wil he noȝt, al-aȝay or more after þe quantite þat he haȝe taken.

Pillules for to prouoke slepe: *Recipe* amides ȝj, croci 4 ȝiii, opii ȝj; Make þam wyth watre of roses and make pillule <sup>1</sup> and giffe þam; And he þat takeþ þam schal slepe for certayne.

[leaf 174, back]  
Pills to cause sleep.

<sup>1</sup> R Amidi ȝj: croci ȝiii: opii ȝj. Confice cum aqua rosarum et pilulas deinde forma.

<sup>2</sup> Succus hyoseyami.

Ane vntement slepyng, *with* which if any man be 8 anoynted he schal mow suffre kuttyng in any place of þe body *without* felyng or akyng. *Recipe* succus iusquiami,<sup>2</sup> Mandrage, Cicute, lattuce, papaueris albi & nigri, and þe sedeȝ of al þise forseid herbeȝ, if þai 12 may be hadde, ana; opii thebaici, opii Miconis ana, ȝj or ij; fresch swyneȝ grese þat sufficeþ. Breke al þise wele & strongly togidre in a mortar, and afterward boile þam strongly and þan cole þam. And if it be 16 noȝt þikke ynoȝ, putte to a litel propoleos, i.[e.] white wex, and kepe it to þine vse. And when þou wilt vse þerof, Anoynt his front, his pulseȝ, his templeȝ, his arme-

An ointment to prevent pain.

Its preparation.

<sup>3</sup> Unga frontem pulsus, axillas, volas manuum et plantas pedum et statim dormiet patiens nec incisionem sentiet

20 he schal slepe so þat he schal fele no kuttyng.<sup>3</sup> þis is also if a man may noȝt slepe for oper cause, as in febreȝ or sich oper, for þis oyntment ouer schal giffe hym remedy, or þe pacient schal die. Also one grayne of opii 24 thebaici to þe quantite of ȝss., distempered *with* a pynte of wyne<sup>a</sup> or more after þe miȝt of hym þat schal drynk it, schalt make hym þat drynkeþ it for to slepe. Also þe sede alon of iusquiami albi giffen in wyne to drynk make 28 þe drynker alsone for to slepe, þat he schal noȝt fele what-so-euer is done to hym. And þis proued I myself for certayne. And witte þou þat it spedep for to draw hym þat slepeþ so by þe nose and by þe chekeȝ and by þe berde, 32 þat þe spiriteȝ be quickened þat he slepe noȝt ouer ristfully. Also be þe lech warre þat he giffe noȝt opium *without* croce for to drynk, for crocus and cassia lignea bene þe freneȝ, i.[e.] bridelleȝ of opii.<sup>4</sup>

How used.

Method of treating a patient to bring him round after its use.

<sup>4</sup> Quia crocus et cassia lignea sunt fræna opii.

36 44. ffor to wake a man þat slepeþ þus: Putte to his nose gray brede y-tosted & wette in strong vinegre; or put vinegre or mustard in his nose; Or wasch his heued in strong vinegre; Or anoynt his templeȝ *with* þe iuse of

To wake a sleeping man after opium.

<sup>a</sup> MS. wynde.



rubarb. And giffe hym som oper sternutoriez, and alsone  
 he schal wake. And witte þou þat it is gode for to giffe  
 hym afterward castoreum, for it is triacle of iusquiamus<sup>1</sup>  
 & opii & sich oper, wheþer it be giffen in þe mouþe or in 4  
 drynk, or it be put in þe nose; for castore chaufep &  
 most confortep þe synewez colded, and solueþ þe paralysye.  
 And also giffe hym þat confortep þe brayne, as castore,  
 nucis moschatz,<sup>2</sup> roses, nenufare, mirtellez & sumac.

<sup>1</sup> theriaca  
hyoscyami.

8 <sup>2</sup> Myristicæ.

*Contra spasmus et crampe.*

[Sloane MS.  
2002, leaf 79]

[\* leaf 79,  
back]

Contra spasmus et crampe radix brionie in aqua cocta et  
 postea pistata aut per se, vel in agrippa, vel oleo de semine  
 lini, vel in dialthea, vel oleo de lilio aut camomille, collo 12  
 emplastrata spasmus curat in quocunque membro cor-  
 poris fuit. Quia in collo \* est origo omnium morborum. Et  
 spasmus est contractio musculorum ad suas origines. Istud  
 carmen sequens contra spasmus expertissimum est a multis 16  
 inventis eo utentibus, tam in partibus transmarinis quam  
 in istis. Nam apud mediolanis, i.[e.] Melane, in lombardia  
 tempore quo dominus Leonellus filius regis Anglie nupsit  
 filiam domini Mediolani. Anglici ibidem spasmo vexaban- 20  
 tur propter potaciones vinorum fortium et calorum patriæ  
 et nimium repletiones. Unde quidam miles, et filius  
 domini Reginaldi de Gray de Schirlond juxta Chestre-  
 felde, qui fuit apud mediolanum cum domino leonello 24  
 et habuit secum carmen sequens, et quemdam armigerum  
 a spasmo vexatur ita quod caput suum retro trahebatur  
 fere usque ad collum suum, ad modum balistæ,<sup>a</sup> qui  
 pro dolore et angustia fere exspiravit. Quo viso, dictus 28  
 Miles accepit carmen, in pergamento scriptum in bursa  
 positum, in collo patientis apposuit † dicentibus circum-  
 stantibus orationem dominicam ad dominam Maria[m] et,  
 ut mihi juravit fideliter, infra quatuor horas aut quinque 32  
 sanitati est restitutus. Et postea multos alios a spasmo  
 ibidem liberavit, unde magna fama de illo carmine in illa  
 civitate exercuit :

† leaf 80]

Item in civitate Lincoln : . . . Item apud London : . . . 36  
 Item apud villam de Huntingdon :

<sup>a</sup> "crossbow" in the margin.

. . . . \*postea claudatur istâ cedulâ admodum unius litera ut non leniter possit aperiri, unde solebam scribere istud literis grecis, ne a laicis perspicietur. [\* leaf 80, back]

4 Quum ut istud carmen scriptum, se honeste in dei omnipotentis nomine gesserit et crediderit, sine dubio a spasmo non erit aggravatus. Istud habeatur in reverentia propter dominum qui virtutem dedit verbis, petris et 8 herbis, et secrete fingitur ne omnes nstant carmen ne forte virtutes datas a deo amittat.

*A charm against Spasm and Cramp.*

Bryony root boiled in water & afterwards crushed  
12 either by itself or in agrippa or in linseed oil or in  
dialthea or in oil of lily or camomile cures spasm when  
it is plastered upon the neck in whatever part of the  
body it may be. Because the source of all diseases is in  
16 the neck: And spasm is a contraction of the muscles at  
their origin. The following charm against spasm has been  
found most sovran by many who have used it both at  
home and abroad. For amongst the Mediolani [i.e.] the  
20 Milanese, in Lombardy at the time when the Lord Lionel,  
son of the king of England, married the daughter of the  
lord of Milan, the English there were troubled with  
spasm due to their potations of the strong & hot wines of  
24 the country & to too many carouses. Whereupon a certain  
knight, the son of Lord Reginald de Grey de Schirlond  
near Chesterfield, who was at Milan with the Lord  
Lionel & had with him the following charm, & saw a  
28 certain gentleman so troubled with the spasm that his  
head was drawn backward nearly to his neck just like a  
crossbow, & he was almost dead from the pain and  
starvation. And when the said knight saw this he  
32 brought the charm written on parchment & placed it in  
a purse & put it upon the neck of the patient whilst those  
who stood by said the Lord's prayer and one to our lady  
Mary, and, as he swore faithfully to me, within four hours  
36 or five he was restored to health. And afterwards he  
freed many there from spasm, & the great report of  
that charm spread throughout that state. Again in the

Whence  
come  
spasms.

Results of  
the marriage  
festivities at  
Milan  
when Duke  
Lionel  
wedded.

The charm,  
how used.



city of Lincoln . . . again in London . . . again in the  
Town of Huntingdon.

The words of  
the charm

In nomine patris ✠ et filii ✠ et Spiritus sancti ✠  
Amen.

4

⊕ Thebal ⊕ Enthe ⊕ Enthanay ⊕ In nomine Patris  
⊕ et Filii ⊕ et Spiritus sancti ⊕ Amen. ⊕ Ihesu  
Nazarenus ⊕ Maria ⊕ Iohannes ⊕ Michael ⊕ Gabriel  
⊕ Raphael ⊕ Verbum caro factum est ⊕.

8

Why written  
with Greek  
letters.

Let it be closed afterwards in the manner of a letter  
so that it cannot be opened easily, & for this reason  
I used to write it in greek letters that it might not be  
understanded of the people. And if any one carries that 12  
charm written fairly in the name of God almighty, &  
believes, without doubt he will not be troubled with  
cramp. Let it be held in respect on account of the Lord  
who gave virtue to words, to stones & to herbs, & let it 16  
be made secretly that every one should not know the  
charm lest perchance it should lose the virtues given by  
God.

## APPENDIX

[MS. Rawlinson, B. 102, leaf 30, back.]

Grant to R. de Rupella of land in the Cantred of Tirmany, Connaught, given to him by the Black Prince.

Sciant presentes et futuri quod ego Iohannes de Arderne dedi concessi et hac presenti carta confirmaui Domino Richardo de Rupella pro homagio et servicio suo totam terram meam cum omnibus pertinentijs suis sine aliquo retenemento quam habui in illo Theodo quod vocatur Crohun in Cantredo de Tirmany in Connatia de dono et feoffamento domini Edwardi illustris Regis Angliæ primogeniti in escambium manerij sui de Willinghale et Plesingho cum pertinentijs suis habendam et tenendam de me et heredibus meis eidem domino Richardo et heredibus suis et eorum assignatis adeo libere et quiete sicut idem dominus Richardus tenet terram suam de Clonedach' quam habet de dono et feoffamento predicti domini Edwardi et sicut plenius et liberius et integrius continetur in Carta quam idem dominus Edwardus de dicta terra mihi confecit reddendo inde per Annum mihi et heredibus meis ipse dominus Ricardus et heredes sui et eorum Assignati vnum denarium ad Pascha et faciendo pro me et heredibus meis predicto domino Edwardo et heredibus suis servicium feodi vnus militis pro omnibus servicijs consuetudinibus sectis exactionibus et omnibus demandis secularibus. Et ego Iohannes et heredes mei warrantizabimus acquietabimus et defendemus eidem domino Richardo et heredibus suis et eorum Assignatis totam predictam terram cum omnibus pertinentiis suis sine aliquo retenemento per predictum servicium sicut predictum est contra omnes homines et feminas in perpetuum. Et vt hec mea donatio firma et stabilis permaneat huic Carte Sigillum meum apposui. Hijs testibus, Dominis Iohanne de Ripar', Roberto de Vfforde, Ricardo de Tany, Willelmo de Wokingdon, Rogero de Bello Campo, Richardo de Ispanya, Militibus, Waltero de Essex, Thoma Iocelyn, Iohanne de Rupell', et Alijs.

[This is entered in the Bodleian Catalogue at Oxford under the heading "Arderne Iohannes, chirurgus." Cf. Forewords, p. x.]





## NOTES.

1/1. *Ploge* seems to be a variant of the more common form *plage* and is equivalent to 'Plague,' but it is not given in this form in the New English Dictionary.

1/4. An account of John Arderne is given in the Forewords. He calls himself Johannes Arderne Sirurgicus in 1372 and Magister Joh. de Arderne after 1376. I have adopted the simpler form.

1/4. The first pestilence was the Black Death, which entered England at Weymouth about the middle of August 1348, and ravaged the kingdom in 1349. It was pandemic, and yet, in spite of the tremendous mortality which attended its progress, it does not seem to have attracted much attention from the medical men who lived through it. Arderne only uses it in this passage as a means of determining the time when he began to practise in Nottinghamshire, yet he must have seen it in its full fury. Details of the Black Death will be found in Creighton's "History of Epidemics in England," vol. i, and in Father Gasquet's "The Great Pestilence now commonly known as the Black Death." The second pestilence, called the Great Plague, occurred in 1361, and killed amongst others Henry, Earl of Derby and Duke of Lancaster (cf. 1/10). The third pestilence in 1369 killed his daughter Blanche, wife of John of Gaunt.

1/8. *Sir Adam Everyngham*. The Everynghams had long been established at Tuxford. An Adam de Everyngham went bail for several deerstealers, 36 Hen. III (1251), and Thoroton, in the "Antiquities of Nottinghamshire" (ed. 1677, p. 380, col. 2), states that John de Lexington died 41 Hen. III (1256), seized of the manor of Tuxford and hamlet of Warsop, and of the land in Lexington held of Adam de Everyngham. The Records of the Borough of Nottingham (1155-1399, vol. i, p. 389) note on April 27th, 1330, a grant from Richard, son of Richard de Lameleye dwelling in Lampadidnawe in Wales . . . . . to William de Mekisburg of Nottingham of a messuage in Gedeling and all the land formerly held of Sir Adam de Everyngham in Gedelin, Carleton and Stoke Bardolf. The Sir Adam de Everyngham treated by John Arderne died 8th Feb., 2 Ric. II (1378-9), and he was probably operated upon not later than 1358. This treatise on the fistula was written in 1376 (see Forewords, p. xi), so that this passage must have been a later addition to the original manuscript. The armorial bearings of the Everyngham family are Argent, a fess azure, a label of three points gules. Thoroton (ed. 1797, vol. 3, p. 207) gives a pedigree of the family of Everyngham.

1/10. *Sir Henry, that tyme named Erle of Derby*. He was Henry Plantagenet (1299?-1361), son of Henry, Earl of Lancaster, and his Countess Maud. Sir Henry was cousin to Edward III who created him Earl of Derby in 1337, Earl of Lincoln in 1349, and Duke of Lancaster in 1351, being the second person in England to be made a Duke. Sir Henry was one of the original Knights of the Garter, and was looked upon throughout Europe as the very mirror of chivalry, when chivalry was at its height.



Readers of Froissart will recall many of his exploits often in company with that other great Captain, Sir Walter de Manny. Sir Henry sailed for Antwerp with King Edward III in July 1338, and in 1339, after the great sea fight at Sluys, he was left in prison in Flanders as security for the King's debts. It may have been at this time that Arderne was practising at Antwerp, if there is any truth in the tradition (see Forewords, p. xii). In 1343 Sir Henry, then Earl of Derby, was sent to Avignon to Pope Clement VI and Alfonso XI of Castile. Whilst in Spain he and his fellow ambassador, the Earl of Salisbury, did good service against the Moors at the siege of Algeçiras when cannon are said to have been used for the first time. Arderne treated a Spanish nobleman at Algeçiras (Forewords, p. xi).

1/13. The irregular endings of the technical terms which is noticeable here and in other parts of the MS. (cf. 24/5) is due to the scribe copying them as they stand in the Latin text where the case varies with the construction of the sentence in which it occurs.

1/14. Arderne's knowledge of the Gascony campaign is curiously minute and makes it possible that he had actually taken part in it or that he knew the country intimately. Writing more than thirty years after the event he gives the towns in the order in which they were visited by one of the three divisions into which the Duke of Lancaster, formerly the Earl of Derby, had divided his forces, rather than in the correct geographical order. The army landed at Bordeaux and captured Bergerac on 24th August, 1345. The town was granted to Lancaster as a reward for his services but reverted to the crown upon his death. It came afterwards into the hands of Edward "the Black Prince," and was given by him to John of Gaunt in 1370. The arms of the town "Deux pattes de griffon sur un champ d'or" may still be seen emblazoned in the Great Crowcher Book of the Duchy of Lancaster, says Mr. Armitage-Smith in his "John of Gaunt" (p. 199).

*Toulouse.* Sir Adam doubtless reached here with the force acting on the Lot and Garonne rivers after the battle of Auberoche on 24th October, 1345, when 300 lances and 600 archers defeated a force estimated at 10,000 strong under the Count of Lille-Jourdain.

*Narbonne* had some special association for John Arderne, since he named one of his best-beloved ointments Ungt. Noirbon, adding as a pun that though it was black (Noir) it was good (bon).

*Poitiers* was stormed on 4th October, 1346, with a tremendous slaughter of men, women and children. So much rich booty was taken that raiment was held of no account unless it was cloth of gold or silver, or plumes. The campaign ended here, and the Duke of Lancaster returned to London 13th June, 1347.

1/23. *Mene* is here used in the sense of "an instrument or agency," and is equivalent to "deo favente." It is as favourite a phrase with Arderne as "I dressed him, God cured him," used to be with Ambroise Paré.

1/29. *Balne by Snaith.* Balne is  $5\frac{1}{4}$  miles from Snaith, a small town in the West Riding of Yorkshire. There was a priory at Snaith belonging to the Warwick family.

2/1. *John Schefeld of Briztwell a-side Tekyll.* This John was probably a member of the knightly family of Sheffield of Nottingham. The manor of Tickhill was granted to John of Gaunt in 1372 with other rewards for surrendering the Earldom and Honour of Richmond, which was im-

mediately bestowed upon John de Montford to secure his allegiance then wavering between England and France.

2/2. *Sir Reginald Grey de Wilton*, also known as Grey de Shirland or De Grey. He was the fourth Lord de Grey and was aged 30 in 1342. He died in 1370, and held the manor of Shirland, co. Derby. His grandfather John, Lord de Grey, was Justice of North Wales and Vice-Justice of Chester 1296-97. Sir Reginald Grey's son, the fifth Lord de Grey, served in Gascony in 1366. The peerage became extinct in 1614 when the fifteenth Lord de Grey died in the Tower after having been found guilty of high treason in connection with the Bye or Priest's Plot. The Calendar of Close Rolls (Ed. III, 1354-1360, No. 1358) gives the names of Sir Reynold de Grey and John Arderne as witnesses to an enrolment of release by Roger de Puttenham, knight of the manor of Wylke, co. Warwick.

2/5. *Sir Henry Blakborne*. A Sir Henry de Blakeburn, son of William, son of Paulinus de Eleston of the County of Lancaster, obtained "a general pardon for his good service in the war of France . . . on condition that he did not withdraw from the King's service so long as he shall stay this time on this side the sea without his special licence." The pardon is granted by K and the testimony of Adam de Swynburn, under-constable of the Army. It is dated "By Calais, September 4th, 1346." There also exists a ratification of the estate of a Henry de Blakeburn as prebendary of Preston, in the church of St. Mary, Salisbury. It bears the date September 22nd, 1351. On May 7th, 1379, "Henry de Blakeburn was presented to the church of Reddcliffe-on-Soar by John de Wynewyk, and has since resigned it." ("Cal. of Patent Rolls," Ed. III, viii, 496; ix, 137; and Rich. II (1377-1381), p. 363.)

2/10. The transcriber has left out a line here. The text runs, "Afterward I halid Sir Iohn Masty parson of Stopporte in Chestre-shire."

2/11. Gunnas or Gunnays was a York family in the fourteenth century. Thomas Gunnays was a scrivener in 1363-4; John Gunnays a Tannator in 1389-90, and there was also John, a Marchaunt. ("Register of York Freemen," The Surtees Soc., vol. i, 1896.)

2/13. The scribe has made a mistake in the name. John le Colier was Mayor of Northampton in 1326-7, and again in 1339-40. He seems to have been a most regular attendant at the meetings of the Town Council, because his name appears as a witness to thirty-three documents between the years 1315 and 1340. ("Records of the Borough of Nottingham," vol. i, 1155-1399.) A William Colyar was Mayor of Northampton 1368-9.

2/29. *Towel*. Arderne's translator uses somewhat unusual terms for the parts with which he is dealing. The *towel* is always the Anus. It is, I suppose, a form of "tewel," a pipe or funnell, and the word has survived in the North of England as a "tuyer" in connection with the blast furnaces. *Longanon* or *Longaon* is the ordinary mediæval word for the rectum or lowest segment of the large intestine. The *Lure* is sometimes the ischio-rectal fossa, and sometimes the anus or rectum. The "Promptorium Parvulorum" gives "Mouth of a botel," "Lura," or Leather bagge, adds the Bibliotheca Eliotæ, ed. 1559. The New English Dictionary, s.v. Lure, 2 Her(aldic), says, "A conventional representation of a hawk's 'lure,' consisting of two birds' wings with the points directed downwards and joined above by a ring attached to a cord." Either of these similes suits the anatomy of the ischio-rectal fossa, but it is clearly the simpler one that was in Arderne's mind, as he did not know enough anatomy to visualise the ischio-rectal fossa in accordance with the hawk's lure. Cf. 11/10.



2/40. The opinions of Arderne's immediate contemporaries and predecessors on the subject of *Fistula in ano* are given in the Forewords (p. xvi).

3/8. The translation quite misses the beauty of this passage, which should read, "It is not opened to them that knock as they pass by, but to those who stand and knock."

3/13. *In diuanudiis*. These words have proved a crux from the earliest times. Some scribes have merely copied the words here printed, others have omitted them entirely. John Arderne clearly wrote a very bad hand, but Miss E. M. Thompson has made the following transcription of Sloane MS. No. 29301 (leaf 22, back, col. 80), which was presumably a fair copy produced under Arderne's immediate supervision—"Nota de honore dei. Ad honorem ergo dei omnipotentis qui aperuit mihi sensum ut thesaurum in agro studenter absconditum quod longo tempore pectoreque anelo diligencius ac pertinacius diu audius insuadaverim invenire prout mea suppetat facultas absque scernatis facunditate posteris, domino mediante istoque libello, explicite duxi exarandus. Non ut meipsum laude dignum ex tanto munere ceteris efferam sed, ut ne dominum irretem et pro dragma quam mihi tradidit affatu urgeor delatoris." The badly written words "diu avidius" in this passage were soon corrupted into "in diuanudiis," the "in" being an interpolation. "In diuanudiis" easily became "De Dinamidiis," the name of a spurious work ascribed to Galen, and thus Arderne acquired an undeserved reputation as a Grecian.

3/23. The transcriber has omitted the line, "þat is leful forsop to sey that is knowen & for to witness that is seene."

3/27. This was the Black Prince's campaign in 1355. It lasted eight weeks, and was of a freebooting character.

3/34. Yet John Arderne thought it wise to obtain the Minorite's secret. "Il ne révèle son secret (en 1370) que parce qu'il est vieux et qu'il a tiré des très-beaux bénéfices," says Daremberg (*Hist. des. Sci. méd.* i, 301, note).

3/36. It is unnecessary to show the debt of the medical profession in the middle ages to Galen, who was born at Pergamos about A.D. 131. Arderne probably quotes Galen through a Latin translation of an Arabic version. He knows him as the author of the *Megatechni* or *De methodo medendi*—*θεραπευτικῆς μεθόδου*—and of the *Microtechni*, or simply the *Techni* or *Tegni* which was the *ars medica* or *τέχνη ἰατρική*. The *Pantechni* or *Pantegni* used here by Arderne was not one of Galen's writings. It was written in Arabic by Isaac the Jew (d. 932 A.D.), and was translated into Latin by Constantinus Africanus (fl. 1036 A.D.), who issued it as his own. Cf. 55/3. Prof. Ed. Nicaise ("La Grande Chirurgie de Guy de Chauliac," Paris, 1890, p. 52) says that in 1309 the Faculty of Medicine at Montpellier demanded that each bachelor who wished to become a Master must have studied the following books of Galen, "De complexionibus; de malicia complexionis diverse; De simplici medicina; De crisi et criticis diebus; De Ingenio sanitatis." He had also to explain two books which had been lectured upon and one which had not been commented upon, of the *Techni* and *Prognostics*, or of the *Aphorisms* of Hippocrates, or of his *Regimen*, or the *Isagoge* of Johannitius, the *Febres* of Isaac, or the *Antidotary* of Rhazes. See Dr. Payne on Medical Books in use at Montpellier, Rashdall's "Universities of Europe," Vol. 2, part ii, page 780. The fact that Arderne knew and quotes all these writers lends some support to the theory that he was educated at Montpellier.

4/2. These passages on the Manner or Behaviour of a Leech form the true joy of those who travail amongst the old Masters of Medicine and

surgery. They are full of conceits, and give a picture of contemporary manners and customs which it is impossible to obtain in any other way. The parallel passages from Salicet, Mondeville and Lanfrank are given in the Forewords (xix-xxvi), and show that there was a common source for these paragraphs on medical ethics of which the chief was "De adventu medici" of Archimatheus, a master at Salerno.

4/24. The expression "for why" is employed by the translator as the English equivalent for the Latin word "Nam." It does not imply a question therefore, but is used as we should now say "because."

5/8. The greeting of ladies by thrusting the hands into their bosom had a long vogue in England, and it would be interesting to know whether the fashion of wearing low-necked dresses was a cause or an effect of the custom. By the end of the seventeenth century it was only used by near relatives, and Mr. Samuel Pepys records that he availed himself of the privilege.

6/4. Speaking of the cure of scabies by the inunction of a mercurial ointment (MS. Ashmol. 1434, leaf 131; cf. 79/1), Arderne says, "I have tried it many times and have made a good deal of money from it, and I got twenty shillings for a single application. And take notice that the inunction must be repeated for forty days, or for a month at least. ("Quod centies probavi et exinde multa lucra adquisivi pro certo et haec xxs. pro uno liserio. Et nota quod tale liserium per xl dies vel mensem ad minus debet portari.")

6/4. The fees charged by Arderne are very large, if it be remembered that money had at least seventeen times and perhaps twenty times its present value. I have given some account of the fees of our ancestors in Janus (May-June 1909, pp. 287-293), and to the facts there contained I may add an observation obtained by Prof. Ed. Nicaise for his edition of Guy de Chauliac's Surgery (*op. cit.* p. lxii). "A lady was attended in 1348 by three doctors, two Jews and a Christian, and she paid a fee of half a florin to each. The livre tournois at this time was equivalent to one florin and 16 sols of pontifical money—the cash then current at Avignon—and corresponded to 27 francs 34 centimes of modern French money. The general practitioner therefore received 8 francs 17 centimes for each visit, which is equivalent to three visits for a guinea."

6/5. The custom of paying for an operation by an annuity as well as by a fee lingered in England until late in the seventeenth century, for Richard Wiseman (1622?-1676), speaking of a patient, says, "This person retired into the country afterwards and returned to London at the end of two years, and acknowledged to me his cure by settling thirty pounds a year upon me during his life and paid me sixty pounds for the two years passed." Readers of French history, too, will recollect that Louis XIV paid Dr. François Felix the sum of one hundred and fifty pounds and settled a farm upon him in 1686 for curing him of a fistula.

7/29. "The Senator Boethius," says Gibbon, "is the last of the Romans whom Cato or Tully could have acknowledged for their countryman." ("Roman Empire," ed. 1862, v, 27.) He was born at Rome about 475 A.D. and was consul in 510. He was a minister of Theodoric, King of the Ostrogoths, who displaced the Emperor Odoacer. Boethius was afterwards imprisoned at Pavia and was put to death in 525 A.D. He was subsequently canonised as St. Severinus. He wrote the "De consolazione Philosophiæ" (Chaucer's translation of which was published in the Early English Text Soc.'s Extra Series, No. V, 1868), as well as some valuable treatises on



Music and Geometry. The "de disciplina scholarium" mentioned in the text is falsely ascribed to Boetius. It is quoted again 23/27.

7/39. Arderne repeatedly draws attention to the effect of the mind on the body, and makes it appear that what we now call neurasthenia was not unknown in his experience. Cf. 6/23, 8/3, 60/16, 64/32.

8/27. The operation of fistula recommended by Arderne is described in the Forewords (p. xvii) to this volume. Arderne purposely gives fancy names to the instruments and to the remedies he uses as part of a fixed design to keep his methods secret. This secrecy was a common feature of the medical profession until quite recently—indeed it still lingers in parts where medical men dispense "our ointment" or "our linctus." Arderne especially feared the competition of other leeches, cf. 15/9 and 30/3, of the Barbers, cf. 71/16, and of the laity, cf. 103/3, for when he used the charm against tic, tetanus and delirium tremens, he not only disguised the words in Greek characters but he made nonsense of them, "ne a laicis perspicietur."

8/29. The *sequère me* was a flexible probe, and was named appropriately enough because it was the guide to be followed.

9/4. The *acus rostrata*, or "snowted needle," was a grooved director along which the scalpel was passed. The snowted or curved end fitted into a hole in the cochlearia or shield which was introduced later in the operation to protect the opposite side of the rectum at the moment the fistula was divided. This snouted needle was made of silver.

9/12. The *tendiculum*, or dilator, made of boxwood, was used chiefly to keep the ligature taut whilst the fistula was being divided. For this purpose it was provided with a hole into which fitted (9/16) the *wrayste* or "vertile," much in the same way that the peg fits into a violin. The ends of the ligature were passed round the wrayste, which was then twisted until the frænum cæsaris was tight enough.

9/20. The *frænum Cæsaris*, or ligature, constricted the rectal side of the fistula. It seems to be merely a vestigium of an obsolete operation for the cure of fistula. Albucasis used it as an *écraseur*, and Arderne had sufficient reverence for authority not to discard it. But the operation he describes is one of simple division. The tendiculum, the wrayste and the frænum Cæsaris, therefore, are useless because as soon as the division was complete, they all fell out of the wound. Cf. 24/26. They steadied the parts whilst the incision was made, but they complicated the operation by giving the surgeon two instruments to hold in his left hand (the *acus rostrata* and the *tendiculum*) whilst he held the scalpel in his right hand. The cochlearia must always have been held by the assistant—the fellow of the leech—as Arderne calls him,—the surgeon's mate—as the Elizabethans knew him.

9/24. The *siringa* is probably only a clyster-pipe. Two forms are given, the one with side-openings, as was then used, the other an improved form recommended by Arderne as the result of his own experience (cf. 74/38) in which there is only a single terminal orifice.

11/1. *Aposteme* is an early form of the word which afterwards became Imposthume. It means a suppurating inflammation or an abscess.

11/6. Arderne's pathology of fistula is excellent and is clearly the result of observation. He has seen and treated cases of ischio-rectal abscess, and has observed how such abscesses have become chronic and ended in a fistula.

11/18. The axillary glands were the emunctories of the heart: the inguinal glands of the liver: the cervical glands of the brain.

11/19. *Chawellez* is quite an unusual word, and except for the Latin version it would be incomprehensible. The Latin gives the English gloss "fauces." It seems, therefore, to be a form derived from the same source as "Chawylbone" which the *Promptorium Parvulorum* renders *Mandibula*.

11/20. *Gilbertyn* is Gilbert the Englishman, known to all readers of Chaucer because he is named in the Prologue (l. 429) with Bernard and Gatesden. *Gilbertus Anglicus* flourished about 1210, and is said to be the first practical English writer on medicine though Master Richard preceded him. Dr. Payne in his Fitzpatrick lectures in 1904 says that Theodoric took his description of leprosy from Gilbertyn, a description evidently at first hand and in many respects very accurate. Gilbert wrote a compendium or *Laurea* of medicine, printed at Lyons 1510 (cf. 55/10), and a Commentary upon the verses of Gilles de Corbeil "*De Urinis*" (cf. 59/32). A commentary in English upon these same verses and attributed to John Arderne exists in manuscript in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow (No. 328).

11/21. *Ol. roset*. Oil of roses entered largely into the mediæval pharmacopœia as a soothing application. The ceruse here ordered to be mingled with it is carbonate of lead, and the litharge is protoxide of lead. The lotion thus had the soothing and astringent properties which is still attributed to lead lotion or Goulard extract.

11/24. *Wombe*. Arderne speaks consistently of the belly as the womb both in men and women; when he speaks specifically of the womb in women he employs the term *Marice*. Cf. pp. 80/39, 85/4 and 86/26.

11/27. Arderne, like his contemporaries, recognises two forms of Mallow. The *Althæa rosea*—which he calls "tame" mallow (cf. 12/15), because it was grown in the garden, and *Malva silvestris*—the wild mallow.

11/32. *A Nastar of tree*. Arderne fortunately gives the English equivalent for *Nastar* in the manuscript No. 112 (T. 5, 14), fol. 77, contained in the Hunterian Library, Glasgow, and says, "*Nastare species est clysteris sive enematis 'a glister pipe.'*" A *Nastar* of tree, therefore, is a wooden enema nozzle. The wood may be either boxwood, hazel or willow. His description of the bladder and its method of preparation is given later on; cf. 75/1 *et seqq.*

12/1. *After auctores*. The author is probably Serapion the younger who wrote a large work on pharmacology, which was translated from Arabic into Latin under the title "*Liber de medicamentis simplicibus*" or "*De temperamentis simplicium*." He lived about the end of the eleventh century. For Serapion the elder see 55/29, p. 124.

12/9. *Diachylon*. Three forms of diachylon plaster were used. One called Rhazes' plaster; a second Mesue's, and the third diachylon commune. Arderne here recommends Mesue's diachylon which contained mucilage of *Althæa* and oil of camomile amongst many other ingredients.

12/15. *M*. The symbol *M*. is used for Manipulus in dispensing drugs—a handful—and the handful was either large or small. The small handful or pinch was denoted by the letter *P*. for *Pugillus*, and it was usually estimated at about the eighth part of the Manipulus.

12/21. *Lana succida* is sufficiently described in the text. It seems to have been a crude method of obtaining what is now called lanolin. An undressed fleece is still used in folk-medicine.



\* 12/21. The persistence of these simple remedies is shown by Miss Edith Durham's interesting account of Higher Albania (Lond. 1909, p. 93). She says, speaking of a comminuted fracture of the leg treated by an old Franciscan at Vukli:—"He then plugged and dressed the wound with a salve of his own making—the ingredients are extract of pine resin, the green bark of elder twigs, white beeswax and olive oil. The pine resin would provide a strong antiseptic. The property of the elder bark I do not know. . . . In gunshot wounds he was very expert. For 'first aid' his prescription was: Take the white of an egg and a lot of salt, pour on to the wound as soon as possible and bandage. This only temporary till the patient could be properly treated with rakia (the local alcoholic drink) and pine salve as above. The wound was to be plugged with sheep's wool, cleaned and soaked in the salve. The dressing to be changed at night and morning and at midday also if the weather be very hot. Should the wound show signs of becoming foul, wash again with rakia as often as necessary. This treatment he had inherited from his grandfather who had it from his. The exact proportions and way of making salve he begged to be excused from telling me as they were a family secret." Every word of this passage would have been approved by Arderne. He would have recognised his Unguentum sambuci (cf. 30/21), the egg meddled (cf. 28/4) with salt would have been nothing new to him, the cleaning of the sheep's wool he might have considered an improvement upon his own lana succida (cf. 12/20), as he had an open mind (cf. 35/4), and he would have endorsed thoroughly the old priest's disinclination to give away the secret of a preparation (cf. 15/8).

12/40. *Wormed*, i. e. warmed.

13/20. *Ragadie3* was the name given to fissures formed round the anus and vulva. It is used here to denote chronic ulceration. *Frousingez* seems to be a mere repetition of *ragadie3*, as it does not occur in the Latin texts.

13/24. An *ulcus undesiccable* is an ulcer which continues to form pus in spite of treatment. Mediæval surgeons were very skilful in frightening themselves with names.

14/4. There were two Geoffrey Scropes living in the latter half of the fourteenth century. (i) Sir Geoffrey Scrope, knighted before Paris, 1360. He was the eldest son of Sir Henry le Scrope of Masham, Co. York, the first Lord Scrope, who was Governor of Guisnes and Calais in 1360. This Geoffrey Scrope was slain at Piskre, Lithuania, in 1362 (cf. 67/34). (ii) Sir Geoffrey le Scrope, son of Stephen, second Lord Scrope, who was living in 1409, but had died *sine prole* before 1418. The brother of this Geoffrey le Scrope was Stephen le Scrope, Archdeacon of Richmond in Yorkshire, who died September 5, 1418.

14/20. It is clear from this and the following lines that Arderne had seen and noted cases of uræmia following upon long-continued urethral fistulæ. The headache, giddiness, dull pain in the loins and vomiting which occur during the later stages of renal disease are all duly noted.

14/38. Bernard de Gordon was teaching at Montpellier in 1285, and was living in 1318. He wrote the "*Lilium medicinæ*," but Arderne here shows that he was absolutely ignorant of Anatomy.

15/8. This is another good instance of the secrecy which characterised the practice of surgery at this period. It was still a trade to be taught, and it was many years before it became a profession to be learned. (Cf. 8/25 and 71/15.)

16/4. It would have been impossible for Arderne to have escaped the belief in Astrology which was a feature of his time. He gives the usual table, common to all his contemporaries, for finding the house of the moon on any given day, and he thought that the planets had an influence upon the twelve parts of the body which correspond to the signs of the zodiac.

16/7. *Ptholomeus* was Ptolemy the physician, who lived at Alexandria in the third century B.C., and was perhaps identical with Ptolemy the Geographer. De Mondeville quotes Ptolemy the physician and refers to his "Centilegium"; Guy de Chauliac also speaks of his "Centiloquium." Pictagoras was Pythagoras the Greek philosopher, born about 582 B.C. He was steeped in the mystical lore of Egypt and India; a vegetarian and a social reformer, his name is chiefly associated with the doctrine of Metempsychosis.

*Rasis* is Abú Beér Mohammed Ibn Zacariyá Ar-Rázi, commonly known as Rhazes. He was born in 850 A.D. and died about 932. He was the first great Arabian physician, and his text-book called the "Continent" was only displaced by the work of Haly Abbas. Rhazes is still interesting to us because he first distinguished clearly between Smallpox and Measles.

16/8. *Haly* is Haly the Arabian physician who died in 994 A.D. He wrote the "Royal Book" which displaced Rhazes' text-book, and was in turn displaced by the Canon of Avicenna. Cf. 56/7, p. 124.

21/2. Arderne's account of fistulate or festred gout makes its probable that he is describing the condition which is now known as chronic inflammation of the bone due to infective micro-organisms. Sophocles described Philoctetes as suffering from a similar condition. Cf. 46/25.

21/9. *Ypocras*, i. e. Hippocrates, lived during the golden age in Greece (460-377 B.C.), and was contemporary with Socrates. His writings were known through Galen's commentaries upon the Prognostics, Aphorisms, and on Regimen in Acute Diseases, which had been translated into Latin before the fourteenth century.

21/27. The meaning of this passage may be thus rendered, "Take heed lest thou art so blinded by the desire for money as to operate upon a case thou knowest to be incurable."

22/12. *Lusting* is here equivalent to grudging.

22/17. The details of the operation are admirably given, and it is quite possible to follow each step, a very rare thing in the case of mediæval writers on surgery, but Arderne was a master of this part of his subject. Cf. Forewords, p. xvii.

22/22. The *rig bone* is the vertebral column. Cf. 34/34, 62/8, 70/24.

23/1. Arderne shows his ability by recommending a cutting operation. It proves that he was not afraid of the bleeding which daunted his contemporaries and many of his successors. Cf. 24/32.

23/21. Both John Arderne and Henri de Mondeville were never tired of repeating that surgery was an art to be learnt by practice. It was too much the custom of the time to rely upon authority and to think that everything could be learnt from books.

23/27. *Boece*. Cf. 7/29.

24/5. *Freno cesaris*; 24/9. *frenum cesaris*. Cf. 1/13, p. 108.

24/21. Arderne gives a choice of two cutting instruments, a razor and a lancet. Dr. Stewart Milne ("Surgical Instruments in Greek and Roman Times," Oxford, 1907, p. 31) describes a form of razor in which "a scalpel



blade is mounted on a ring and the fore-finger is passed through the ring." Such a razor would have suited Arderne's purpose admirably, but he used some form of scalpel. "Lanceola," says Dr. Freind ("The History of Physic," part 2, p. 177), "in its proper genuine signification is no older than Julius Capitolinus, how long it has been applied to signify a surgical instrument I cannot tell; however, it may be traced as high at least as the time of William of Bretagne, who lived in 1220 and wrote the history of Philip August, whose chaplain he was." He gives some account of the lanceola, and distinguishes it very plainly from the Phlebotomus, both which instruments we see were made use of in that age. "Lanceola dicitur subtile ferrum acutum, cum quo minutores aliqui pungendo venam aperiant in minutione. Aliqui cum Phlebotomo venam percutiunt." (Lanceola is a name given to a delicate pointed instrument with which some bleeders open a vein by puncturing it in bleeding. Others breathe a vein with a phlebotome.) (Cf. 61/23.)

24/29. Arderne here shows that he knows the last thing a surgeon learns—the knowledge when to stop in operating.

24/32. Surgeons had no satisfactory instruments for stopping bleeding until pressure forceps were invented by Sir Spencer Wells about 1884. Many devices were tried and had their day, but hæmorrhage remained the bugbear of every operating surgeon, and the fear of its occurrence limited the scope of his work. Arderne here recommends the excellent, simple and cleanly method of sponge pressure to arrest the immediate hæmorrhage, and afterwards uses a styptic powder. Arderne gained a great reputation for his prescriptions (cf. Forewords p. xxxi), and it is evident that he was a good physician as well as a practical surgeon; cf. pp. 97 and 98. The styptics here recommended were all in common use. *Boli* is Bolus armeniacus, a yellow earth containing oxide of iron. *Sanguis draconis* was the resin obtained from the fruit of the *Calamus draco*. *Aloes epaticus*: the mediæval materia medica recognised socotrin aloes and hepatic aloes which was an inferior quality.

25/9. *Walwort* is either the *Sambucus* or the Pellitory. Arderne probably means the Elder, of which it was said "this tree has not one part but is used in Pharmacy." The juice is still used in the form of Elder wine.

26/11. Directions for making *sanguis veneris* and oil of camomile are given on pp. 89 and 94.

26/13. *A nastar of tree*, a wooden clyster-pipe; cf. 11/32, p. 113.

26/21. The preparation of *Pulv. sine pari* is given on p. 86.

27/6. The preparation of *Salus populi* is given on p. 90. It is characteristic of the time that fancy names are purposely given to all these preparations lest their composition should become known to the barbers or to other leeches.

27/25. *Bolnyng* is equivalent to swelling or swollen.

27/28. *Alum zucarin. combust.* is described on p. 81. Three kinds of alum were recognised: alum glass, alum plume, and alum zuccarin. Alum glass was the crude alum crystals; alum plume was the natural aluminium sulphate; alum zuccarin. was the re-crystallised form; but alum zuccarin. was also used as a synonym for sugar candy. The crude alum was sometimes called *Alumen roche* from the town of Roche in Syria, and as this was often written *Alumen Rō* it came to be called Alum of Rome.

27/30. *Sarcocolla* is the resin of the *Penæa sarcocolla* and *mucronata*. It was thought to make the flesh adhere together, hence its name.

27/31. *Psidie* is pomegranate bark.

27/32. *Terra sigillata*, or Lemnos earth, was imported from Egypt in large pastiles stamped with the Sultan's seal, hence its name. It had astringent properties.

27/38. *Ceruse* is carbonate of lead. *Lithargyrum* or Litharge is the protoxide of lead which forms as a pellicle on the surface of melted lead; lithargyrate of silver and gold are formed similarly when these metals are melted.

28/10. Arderne clearly indicates the calling of an apothecary as distinct from the barbers, surgeons and physicians of the time. As a surgeon he gathered his own simples and made his own preparations, rather to keep their composition a secret than because he was obliged to do so, for the apothecaries would have made them up for him equally well.

30/21. "*Smalach*," says Dr. R. C. A. Prior ("On the Popular Names of British Plants," Lond. 1879, p. 217), "or Smallage, is a former name of the celery, meaning the small ache or parsley compared with the great parsley, *olus atrum*. *Ach*, Fr. *ache*, is derived from the Latin *apium* by the change of *pi* to *ch*, as in *sapiam* to *sache*."

*Wormode* is wormwood, the *Artemisia absinthium*. The word is corrupted from A.S. and O.E. *wermod*. Wormwood was used in the Middle Ages to keep off *mod* or *made*, a maggot; the first syllable, derived from A.S. *werian*, to keep off, has become by similarity of sound *worm*.

30/22. *Molayne* is the *Verbascum Thapsus*, or *Tapsibarbus* *ebulus*, the hig (hag) taper, or Bullock's lungwort.

*Walwort* is the dwarf elder, the *Sambucus ebulus*, sometimes called Danesblood or Danewort.

*Spurge* or *Spurge* is the *Cataputia minor*; *Weybread* is the plantain—*Plantago major*; *Mugwort* is the *Artemisia vulgaris*. It is said to have obtained its popular name from its use against *moughte*, *mough* or *moghe*, a moth or maggot. *Auance* is *Avens* or Herb Benett, *i.e.* *Benedicta*, the *Geum urbanum*. "Where the root is in the house the devil can do nothing and flies from it; wherefore it is blessed above all herbs," says Platearius, whose book Arderne had read. Cf. 79/10.

30/23. *Petite Consoude* was the *consolida minima* or the daisy—*Bellis perennis*. The name *Consoude* was given to several different plants in the Middle Ages, *e.g.* the Comfrey, the Bugle and the Wild Larkspur. "And for healing of wounds, so soveraigne it is, that if it bee put into the pot and sodden with pieces of flesh, it will souder and rejoiner them, whereupon the Greekes imposed upon it the name of *Symphytum-Consound*," says Pliny in Philemon Holland's translation (Bk. 27, ch. vi, p. 275).

*Wodbynd* is the Woodbine or *Lonicera Periclymenum*.

31/21. *Diastolmus* is the plaster used as a local application, whilst *tapsimel* is the confection for internal use. *Tapsimel* here mentioned, and for the first time, had an extraordinary popularity and was officinal as late as 1773. Cf. Forewords, p. xxx.

32/7. The deadly nightshade is called in German *Nachtschatten*, and it is possible that Arderne may have learnt the Flemish word for it, if he was at Antwerp, as is reported traditionally. Cf. Forewords, p. xii.



33/13. Arderne gives a formula for his unguentum ruptorium (Sloane MS. 29301, leaf 35, col. 1), which is substantially the same as the one mentioned here. It consists of unslaked lime well mingled with black soap and made into a mass, which was afterwards bound with diachylon upon the part to be destroyed. Jamerius (cf. 55/3, Rubrica xxi) also gives a formula for a ruptory, "De unguento quod ruptorium dicitur. Unguentum forte quod ruptorium dicitur. R. Saponis saracenici pondus x denariorum; calcis vive pondus viii, capitelli fortissimi pondus v denariorum. Confice sic: calx prius cribellata cum sapone diu conficiatur, deinde addatur capitellum, et cum predictis commisceatur." There were two kinds of lime ointment. The older form was made by "taking of lime that hath been washed at least seven times lb.ss. Wax ℥iii; Oil of Roses lb.i. Let them all be briskly worked together in a leaden mortar, after the wax hath been by a slow fire melted in a sufficient quantity of the same oil." (Alleyne, *op. cit.*, p. 330, col. i, No. 11.) The other ointment was the more active. R. Quicklime ℥vj; Auripigment ℥iss.; roots of Florentine Orris ℥i; yellow Sulphur; Nitre ana ℥iss.; a strong lixivium of Bean Stalks lb. ii.; Mix and boil all, in a new pot glazed, to a just thickness, which you may know by anointing a feathered quill therewith, if the feathers easily fall off; then add Oyl of Spike ℥ss.; and make an ointment or liniment." (Salmon's "New London Dispensary," 1678, p. 768, col. 2.) Soap was of two kinds: White soft soap known as French soap, and hard grey soap called Saracenic soap. The latter is meant when the prescription demands black soap.

34/4. Arderne anchored his tents in much the same way as we now anchor drainage tubes in deep wounds by putting a thread through one end. He uses the word "ground" systematically for "bottom," so that where we should say the bottom of the wound he says (34/6) "in the ground of the fistula."

35/15. *Reparaled* means the same as re-dressing a wound, that is to say, changing the dressings.

36/15. Arderne loved to play upon words. Cf. 37/12 and 91/32. He could not resist the pun with "bubo," which is the technical term for an abscess in the axilla or groin, and also means an owl. Guy makes the same joke (ed. Nicaise, p. 166). Buboes were the characteristic mark of the bubonic plague, and he must have seen many examples. In the later epidemics the Searchers recognised the disease by the botch which is a plague token.

37/6 *et seqq.* Arderne gives a most creditable account of cancer of the rectum, and distinguishes it clearly from dysentery.

37/29. Those who know how many cases of cancer of the rectum are still overlooked and are treated as cases of chronic constipation, will trow with Arderne that there are still many "wele unkunyng leeches" abroad.

38/11 *et seqq.* The treatment and the picture of the later stages of cancer of the rectum are excellent, and are evidently drawn from repeated personal experience.

38/40. Arderne very properly insists on a digital examination in cases of chronic ulceration of the rectum. Such an examination is still too often omitted. Both time and knowledge are then lost, to the great detriment of the patient.

39/8. *Blo* is throughout the scribe's method of spelling blue; "bloness" (cf. 52/27), therefore, is the same as bluish.

39/27. Arderne again warns against the dishonest habit of operating merely for the sake of the fee when no commensurate advantage is gained by the patient.

39/40. *Aysel* is an early form for eissel—vinegar.

40/1. *Virga pastoris* was used by the old writers on materia medica for several varieties of *Dipsacus*, and more especially for *D. pilosus*, *silvestris* and *fullonum*. It is the Teasel.

40/21. There were several varieties of white ointment. The form attributed to Rhazes contains oil of roses  $\text{℥ix}$ ; Ceruse carefully washed in rose-water and powdered  $\text{℥iii}$ ; white wax  $\text{℥ii}$ . Avicenna's ointment contained litharge as an ingredient, with the white of eggs beaten into it.

40/27. *Attrament* is here a synonym for Vitriol (cf. 79/1). "Of atramente $\text{z}$ , i. e. of vitriole $\text{z}$ ." It also means Ink (cf. 67/28).

40/33. *Celidone* is the *Chelidonium majus*, the juice of which was greatly esteemed as a collyrium, "because," says Gerarde (p. 911), "some hold opinion that with this herbe the dams restore sight to their young ones, when their eyes be put out." Dr. Prior (*op. cit.* p. 40) says that this notion, quoted by Gerarde from Dodoens and copied by him from Pliny, who had it from Aristotle, was received and repeated by every botanical writer, and is embodied in the Regimen Sanitatis Salerni—

"Cæcatis pullis ac lumine mater hirundo  
Plinius ut scribit, quamvis sunt eruta reddit."

which was Englished—

"Young Swallowes that are blind, and lacke their sight,  
The Damme (by Celendine) doth give them light,  
Therefore (by Plinie) wee may boldly say,  
Celendine for the sight is good alway."

41/1. *Few savage* is erysipelas. Cf. 91/9, p. 133.

41/8. The second pestilence was the epidemic of 1361. Cf. 1/4.

41/33. *The bloody fik* is explained in the treatise on hæmorrhoids to be a bleeding pile. Cf. 56/21.

42/38. I cannot identify the powder creoferoboron or (43/2) the emplastre sanguibætos, nor does Arderne give the formulæ for their preparation.

43/40. *Unguentum viride*. The green ointment in the later pharmacy (1733) consisted of Verdigris; Ung. *Ægyptiacum*; Oint. of Elder; Colophony and Oil of Spike. The Ung. *Ægyptiacum* was ascribed to Mesue, and in its simplest form was compounded with verdigris, honey and the sharpest vinegar.

44/38. Women held a well-recognised position as practitioners of medicine in the Middle Ages, and several of the matronæ or mulieres Salernitanæ attained renown at the School of Salernum. The best known is Trotula de Ruggiero, who wrote "de mulierum passionibus." But Arderne seems to allude here to the "ladies bountiful" of his time, for whom he had no great regard. Guy de Chauliac puts them last of his five sects of medical practitioners. The first contained Roger, Roland and the Four Masters who treated wounds with poultices; the second, like Bruno and Theodoric, used dressings of wine and dried up the wounds; the third included William Salicet and Lanfrank, who occupied, he says, a position intermediate between the other two sects. The fourth class embraced those who had been trained on the battlefield, and for whom



Arderne had a sneaking regard; they treated their wounds with charms, oil and wool, and said that God has given virtue to words, herbs and stones (cf. 104/15); whilst the fifth class consisted "of women and many idiots who refer all their sicknesses to the Saints."

45/1. *Drink of Antioch*. Harl. 2378 MS. [B], p. 25, gives a receipt for "*The Drink of Auntioch*.—Take 1 handful of daysye and 1 handful of bugle and 1 handful of red coole and 1 handful of strebery-wyses [stalks] and 1 handful of fenule and half an handful of hempe and as mych of auence, as myche of tansey, as mych of herbe Robert [cf. 54/17], as mych of mader, as mych of comfiry, iiii branche of orpyne, vi croppes of brere, vi croppes of red netle, and thyse herbes ben sothen in 1 galoun of whyt wyn In-to a potell, and afterward put thereto as mych of hony clarified and after the mydlyng set it ouer the fyr and thanne steme it a litil, and this drynk schal ben vsed in this manere: ȝif to hym that is wounded or brysed by þe morwen of this drynk iii sponful and vi sponful of water and loke that the seke be wel kept fro gotouse [gouty] metes and drynkys, and from wymmen, and loke also that the maladye be heled with brere-leues or with leues of the rede coole." ("Medical Works of the XIV cent.," by Rev. Prof. G. Henslowe, 1899, p. 77.) There was also an antidote of Antiochus. It was an ancient preparation composed of germander, agaric, colocynth, Arabian stæchas, opoponax, sagapenum, parsley, aristolochia, white pepper, cinnamon, lavender, myrrh and honey. It was used in melancholy, hydrophobia and epilepsy. This was known as Antiochi hiera. There was also a theriacum of Antiochus which was also an antidote to every kind of poison. It contained thyme, opoponax, millet, trefoil, fennel, aniseed, nigella sativa and other herbs.

45/31. A *porret* is a young leek or onion—a scallion—says the New English Dictionary.

46/25. Arderne gives in these passages a tolerably clear account of the condition known to us as tuberculous dactylitis, and to our immediate predecessors as spina ventosa. Cf. 21/2.

47/25. Arderne is perfectly honest in his statements, and does not claim this patient as a cure.

47/28. *The buzt of the knee* is the bow or bend of the knee.

48/2. The *pede lyon* is the *Leontopetalum*, *Brumaria*, Lion's leaf. It was considered to be good against the bites of serpents; the root applied helps the Sciatica and cleanses old filthy ulcers.

48/18. *A spature*. The *Spathomele* or spatula probe is the commonest of the classical surgical instruments. It consists of a long shaft with an olivary point at one end and a spatula at the other. The olive end was used for stirring medicaments and the spatula for spreading them, when it was employed in pharmacy. But it was so handy that it was often used as a blunt dissector, as Arderne did in this case. It was also used by painters for preparing and mixing their colours. See Dr. Milne, "Surgical Instruments in Greek and Roman Times," p. 58.

48/32. *Ventose*. The cupping instruments were either of horn, copper, or glass, and they were used either with or without scarifications—wet or dry cupping.

48/38. This appears to be Arderne's sole piece of correct anatomical knowledge, except the information he had gained as to the position of the superficial veins of the arms and legs. Cf. 49/12.

49/14. The treatise on *Fistulæ* ends abruptly with the words "flesshe, etc." The manuscript continues on the opposite page in a different hand, and with an account of isolated cases, inflammation in the arm and leg, with Arderne's treatment.

49/38. The first case seems to be one of thrombosis. The *vena epatica* is the *vena hepatica* of the arm and not of the liver. The vein arises on the back of the hand near its ulnar edge, taking origin from the plexus on the back of the hand and fingers. It ascends to the ulnar side of the forearm, where it is called the anterior cubital vein. It was known to mediæval anatomists as the *Salvatella* (cf. 61/22), that on the right side being the *salvatella hepatica*, and the vein on the left arm the *salvatella splenetica*. In like manner the external saphenous vein was known as the *salvatella pedis aut saphena*. William of Salicet (Ed. Pifteau, p. 459) describes them carefully, saying, "*Saluatella, hepatica in manu dextra, et splenetica in manu sinistra, quae est inter digitum annularem et auricularem. . . . Salutella pedis aut saphena.*"

50/1. *Dove's dung* remained in use until after 1733. Alleyne, in his "New English Dispensatory," p. 146, col. 2, says: "The dung is sometimes ordered in cataplasms to be applied to the soles of the feet in malignant fevers and deliriums with an intent to draw the humours downwards; which may not be ill-guessed."

50/7. Arderne gives an account of his early experience of arsenic as a dressing on page 83.

50/24. *Auripigment* is orpiment, or native yellow arsenic.

52/8. The word *garse*, to scarify, seems to have an interesting history if, as the New English Dictionary suggests, it is derived through the Latin from the Greek *χαράσσειν*, to cut or incise, and has given origin to the English *garsh* or *gash*.

52/14. *Epithimation* was identical with the modern fomentation of wounds and inflamed parts. Guy de Chauliac in his seventh treatise, *Doct. i, chap. iv* (Ed. Nicaise, p. 605): says, "Embrocations and Epithems are simple or compound solutions with which the limbs are bathed and fomented. Sponges or linen being wrung out of them are applied to the part, and are frequently changed."

52/15. *Solsequium* is the chicory or endive; marigold being *Calendula officinalis*.

52/26. A *felon* was originally any small abscess or boil, but in later times the term was restricted more especially to a whitlow. The gloss *anthrace* written in a contemporary hand seems to imply that Arderne was using the word in its earlier sense and to signify a carbuncle.

52/28. The *canon* seems to have suffered from an attack of gouty eczema, which ended in thrombosis and the formation of a callous ulcer of the leg.

53/15. A *mormale* was an inflamed sore, especially on the leg. Readers of Chaucer will remember of the Cook in the Prologue, line 386, "But great harm was it as it thought me That on his schynne a mormal hadde he." Arderne adopted the treatment still used for callous ulcers: he applied firm pressure, cleansed it, and afterwards applied a stimulating ointment.

54/17. *Herb Robert* is the *Geranium Robertianum*. It is said to have been called after Robert, Duke of Normandy, to whom the "Regimen Sanitatis Salerni" was inscribed; but it may refer to Knecht Ruprecht, a



German forest spirit. It was thought to be cleansing and binding, stopping blood and helping ulcers.

54/37. The *vena basilica*. Cf. 49/38, p. 121.

55/1. The *sophena vein*. Cf. 49/38, p. 121.

55/3. The introduction to the "Treatise on Piles" is much shortened in this translation. The Latin text runs thus, and I am indebted to Miss E. M. Thompson for the transcription—

*"Extractus pro emoroidis secundum Lanfrancum.*

"Extracta emoroidarum secundum Lanfrancum bononensem discretissimum magistrum Regis francie qui duos libros chirurgie composuit, viz. minorem qui incipit sic 'Attendens, venerabilis amice Bernarde componere librum,' etc. Majorem vero qui incipit sic. 'Protector rite sperantium deus excelsus et gloriosus cuius nomen sit benedictum in secula,' etc. ¶ 'Omne quod investigari potest vno trium modorum investigari potest aut per ejus nomen,' etc. ¶ Item extracta emoroidarum secundum magistrum Bernardum de Gordon' in suo libro, quem librum composuit dictus Bernardus apud Montem Pessulanum i.[e.] Mont Pelers, anno domini millesimo ccc° iii° et anno lecture sue xx° qui sic incipit 'Interrogatus a quodam Socrates quomodo posset optime dicere Respondit si nichil dixeris nisi quod optime sciueris nichil autem optime scimus nisi quod a nobis frequenter dictum est et quod ab omnibus receptum est.' ¶ Item extracta a passionario Magistri Bartholomei qui sic incipit: 'Assiduis petitionibus mi karissime compendiose morborum signa causas et curas inscriptis redigere cogitis,' etc. ¶ Item extracta a micrologio Magistri Ricardi excellentis industrie et a libro Magistri Rolandi et a libro Magistri Gwidonis de gracia pauperum et a practica Rogeri Baron. Et a practica Rogerini et a practica Magistri Johannitii Jamarci et Gilbertini ac aliorum plurium expertorum quorum doctrinam inspexi et practizando que experciora reperi in hoc libello domino mediante innotescent. ¶ Ricardus qui incipit si quid agam preter solitum veniam date cun[c]ti. ¶ Rolandus Rogerus Braun Rogerinus, Johannitius, Jamarcus, Gwidon, Gilbertinus."

Arderne shows here the extent of his reading in connection with hæmorrhoids in the same manner as he does in his commentary on Giles of Corbeuil's treatise de Urinis, where he also quotes his authorities. The first thing perhaps that strikes us is the number of books to which he had access. Books during his lifetime were a luxury of the rich, and those who know the early history of the University of Oxford will remember the gratitude with which the gifts of books from Duke Humphry and the Duke of Bedford were received from 1439 onwards, as "life-giving showers wherewith the vineyard was rendered fruitful, and from which an abundant supply of oil from the olive trees of the University might be expected." Arderne may, of course, have spent his fees in buying MSS. just as some of us do at the present day, but it is probable that he had access to the Libraries of his patrons like John of Gaunt, who were men of letters as well as of affairs, and he was thus able to quote verbatim et literatim, as in the present instance.

Lanfrank of Milan, as has been said (cf. Forewords, p. xxv), was a pupil of William de Salicet. He was one of the great teachers of Surgery at Paris, and died in 1306. The "Chirurgia magna" was issued in 1295-6 as an enlarged edition of the "Chirurgia parva" published in 1270. He taught that Anatomy was the foundation of Surgery.

Bernard of Gordon was Professor at Montpellier, where he began to teach in 1285, and published his "Lilium medicinæ" in 1305. The words

quoted by Arderne are printed in the 1542 edition of the "Lilium" as the first words of the Preface. Arderne gives the date as 1303. The Lyons and Paris editions both give it 1305.

Master Bartholomew of Salernum was a pupil of Constantinus Africanus late in the eleventh century. Arderne is mistaken in ascribing the "Passionarius" to him. The book, which is often called the "Passionarius Galeni," was really written by Gariopontus, a teacher at Salernum early in the eleventh century. The edition printed at Basel in 1531 gives the authorship correctly, but the Lyons edition in 1526 calls it Galen's.

Master Richard seems to be Richard the Englishman already mentioned. Cf. 11/20, p. 113. He was also called Ricardus senior, and was a Master at Salerno at the end of the twelfth century. He also lived in France and in England. His book, "Micrologus," is a collection of short treatises written at different times: (1) Practica, (2) De Urinis, (3) Anatomia, (4) Repressiva, (5) Prognostica. Taken alone Micrologus would probably refer to the "Practica." None of Richard's works have been printed.

Master Roland was from Parma, and he edited in 1264 the "Practica Chirurgiæ," which was written by Master Roger in 1180. Roger's book was sometimes called "Rogerina," or "Rogerina major, medius et minor." It was often attributed to Roger Bacon. This was the text-book upon which the Four Masters wrote their celebrated Commentary. "Roger and Roland," says Sir Clifford Allbutt ("The Historical Relations of Medicine and Surgery," Lond. 1905, p. 27), "stand like Twin Brethren in the dawn of modern medicine bearing the very names of romance. Roger's book was no mere cooking of Albucasis. Before Theodoric, Roger refractured badly united bones. For hæmorrhage he used styptics, the suture or the ligature; the ligature he learned no doubt from Paul."

Master Guido is Guy de Chauliac, the contemporary of Arderne, for he flourished in the second half of the fourteenth century. Guy took orders and was physician to Pope Clement VI at Avignon; Arderne with a bias towards religion remained a layman. Both were Master surgeons. Guido held with Lanfrank that Anatomy was the basis of Surgery; Arderne drifted towards drugs, words and charms, and knew no anatomy.

Roger de Barone or de Varone is credited with a treatise "Summa Rogerii," or "Practica parva." The date is disputed, but it was probably written at Montpellier late in the thirteenth century.

Johannice is Johannitus Honein Ben Ishak (809-873), the son of a Christian Apothecary, and one of the great translators of medical works from Greek into Arabic. His introduction to Galen's "Microtechni" was issued in Latin under the title "Isagoge Johannitii."

Jamarcus, in all probability, is Johannes Jamerius, a surgeon of the school of Salernum. Guy de Chauliac quotes him no less than forty times, and says in one passage: "Jamerius followed, who made a sort of rough surgery in which there were many pointless things, but he was chiefly a disciple of Roland" ("Puis est trouvé Jamier qui a fait quelque Chirurgie brutale, en laquelle il a meslé plusieurs fadeizes, toutefois en beaucoup de choses il a suivy Rogier," Cap. i, p. 14, Ed. Nicaise). Dr. Pansier (Janus, 1903) gives an account of the manuscripts of his works at Oxford and Paris, and Prof. Pagel of Berlin has published a manuscript of his surgery (Berlin, 1909), under the title "Chirurgia Jamati."

Master Gilbertyne is Gilbert the Englishman. Cf. 11/20, p. 113.

55/17. *Anence* is clearly a variant of *Anent*, *i. e.* "according to."

55/24. This passage shows how little the people have learned about medical terms since John Arderne wrote this treatise. "Piles" is still a generic name for all diseases of the rectum in the out-patient room of a



hospital, and no one who has had much experience takes a diagnosis of piles as correct until he has verified it by examination.

55/29. John Damascene is the name under which the fourteenth-century writers on surgery concealed the identity of the elder Serapion, who lived in the ninth century. Some of his works were published under the name of Janus Damascenus. The Pandects in seven books were translated into Latin under the name of the Breviarium. Cf. 12/1, p. 113.

56/7. Avicenna, the Prince of Science, was born near Bokhara in 980 A.D. and early showed his precocity, for he knew the Koran and several books of philosophy by heart when he was ten years old. His genius turned first to law, but at the age of 16 he had made such progress in medicine as to warrant his appointment as personal physician to the Sultan Ben Mansur. "Wein, Weib und Gesang" killed him at the age of 57, in June 1037, but not before he had written his "Canon," which was translated into Latin in the twelfth century and remained a text-book until the middle of the seventeenth century.

57/30. *Morphew* was a general name given to skin eruptions which changed their colour. The white morphew appears to have been an early stage of leprosy in some cases; vitiligo in others. Black morphew was a general term which included many different diseases of the skin.

59/32. Ægidius Corboliensis, or Gilles de Corbeil, was descended from the Counts of Corbeil, and devoted himself to the study of medicine at Salerno. He is said to have taught medicine at that school, and afterwards from the end of the twelfth to the beginning of the thirteenth century to have lived at Paris as Major-domo and Physician to Philip Augustus (1180-1223). His two works, "De Urinis, de Pulsibus, de Virtutibus et laudibus compositorum medicamentorum" and "De Signis et symptomatibus ægritudinum" are in metre and expressed in classical Latin far superior to that of contemporary medical authors. Arderne wrote a commentary in English upon the "Tractatus de urinis," and a copy of it exists in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow. It is described in the Catalogue (p. 264) as:—328. Ægidii Corboliensis, Tractatus Metricus de Vrinis. Master John Arderne, Commentary in English on the above Treatise "De Vrinis." (Press Mark U. 7. 22; Q. 7. 16; Q. 7. 130.) Description. Vellum  $7\frac{3}{4} \times 5\frac{1}{4}$  ff. 68, originally ff. 69 (or ff. 70), well written in a plain hand in single cols. of about 29 lines, each  $5\frac{5}{8} - 5\frac{1}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$ , margined with brown crayon, not ruled, signatures, traces only left, practically all gnawed off (by beetles) where not cropped, catchwords, foliation modern (in pencil), rubrics, rubricated initials and ¶ ¶, running titles, initials touched with vermilion, marginalia much cropped, writing retouched in places, fol. sec. blank. Early Cent. xv. Binding, thin beech boards, covered quarter calf, coarse dark blue paper sides. Early Cent. xviii.

Collation. Two paper fly-leaves (i<sup>2</sup>) both attached || 1<sup>s</sup>—3<sup>s</sup>, 4<sup>r</sup> (8), 5<sup>s</sup>—7<sup>s</sup>, 8<sup>r</sup> (8), 9 (6). Two fly-leaves (ii<sup>2</sup>), ii, 2. attached; 4, 6 is cut out (probably to remove a miswritten leaf as the text is continuous); 8, 3 is a half sheet (probably so originally).

Contents:—i. Ægidius (Gilles) of Corbeil's Treatise (in Latin verse) on Urines, with Master John Arderne's Commentary.

Begins (l. i (f. i) r<sup>o</sup>. lines 1-8); E (rubricated initial with gestures) go Magister Johannes Arderonn hanc (struck out) hoc (above) opusculum composui / de Iudicijs / Vrinarum per colores et contenta secundum Indicium / Egidij. et ypocratis. Walterij. Gilis. Gilberti, Gordoni. Johannis de / Sancto Amando. ysaac. Auicenne. theophili, Galyeni. Galterij / et tholomej. in medicinam et medicum domini regis illustrissimi / principis henrici

quarti cuius anime propicietur deus. Amen. / de. nigra. vrina. capitulum primum.

Ends (6, 5 (f. 44) v°. line 26); ¶ vryn black and watery in a fat manne mortem significat.

60/6. *Noli-me-tangere*. Guy de Chauliac (iv<sup>me</sup> traité Doct. i, ch. vi, p. 318, Ed. Nicaise), speaking of chancre ulceré, says that Guillaume de Salicet called it "*Noli-me-tangere* because the more it was meddled with the worse it became (Finalement, Guillaume de Salicet juge, que chancre est maladie despitueuse et fascheuse, d'autant que plus on la manie, plus il est indigné. Parquoy il conseille que ne soit touché, sinon légèrement, et a cette cause est appellé *Noli-me-tangere*)." I cannot find the passage in Pifteau's edition of Salicet's Surgery.

60/24. *Millefoile* is the yarrow—*Achillæa Millefolium*—though Apuleius, according to Dr. Prior, seems to have meant the horse-tail, *Equisetum*.

60/27. *Bursa pastoris* is the Shepherd's purse, *Capsella bursa*, which was long considered an excellent styptic.

*Parrencis* is the Periwinkle, the *Vinca major* and *minor*. It seems to have derived its name from the Latin *Perivincula* because it was used for chaplets.

61/5 and 12. So long as the blood was looked upon as stationary it was a common belief that the vein from which the blood was taken altered the result. Arderne teaches here that letting blood from the external saphenous vein stopped bleeding from a pile, whilst bleeding from the internal saphenous vein increased the hæmorrhage.

61/22. The *vena salvatella* (cf. 49/38, p. 121) ran along the back of the hand between the third and fourth metacarpal bones. Patients were bled from it when they were chronic invalids owing to "congestion of the liver or spleen," says Prof. Nicaise.

61/23. There is here a clear distinction made between the clumsy phlebotome with its halbert shape and the more delicate and easily manipulated lancet (cf. 24/21).

62/6. It is clear from this passage that Arderne was as unwilling to demean himself by breathing a vein as we should now be to crop a poll. Both were the duties of the barber, who was clearly in an inferior position.

62/14. This mutilated passage runs in another English translation (Sloane MS. No. 76), "Alsoe Gordon saythe that in ouer mich or greate fluxe in reasonable aged persones nothings avayleth moare then pourginge, for the grosse and slymye matter being poured awaye the medicyns restrictyue shull worke the better. Mirobalans will worke excellently in that case for they pourge before and stoppe after them, that is, it loseneth by reason of his swiftness in digestion and bringeth forth all grosse humour with yt. yt must be warely prepared, whose preparation is pis. It must be dissolved with warme mylke and whaye and not boyled or sodden with anythinge, for by boylinge the gummy substance vadeth awaye in the smooke and so the strength thereof ys weakened."

62/32. The meaning of this passage seems obscure at first, but Arderne says that *myrobalani* in their different forms were good against the different humours recognised by the ancient physicians—Sanguis, choler, melancholia and phlegma. "Myrobalani are the fruit of several species of *Terminalia* and of the *Phyllanthus emblica*," says "Mayne's Expository Lexicon" (Sydenham Soc. edition). They contain a large quantity of tannin and in



the *M. chebulæ* some gallic acid. They were much employed by the Arabian physicians in many diseases; some lauding them as emetics and cathartics which purged away all evil humours; and others as useful in the treatment of diarrhœa and dysentery, acting first as a laxative and then as an astringent—the view taken by Arderne, cf. 62/14. They were formerly much employed in European medicine, but are not now used. The dose was 2 to 8 drachms. *Myrobalani citrina* is the fruit of a variety of *Terminalia chebulæ*; they were sometimes called White Galls. *Kebuliz* is the fruit of the *terminalia chebula* which resembles *M. bellericæ* in figure and ridges, but is larger and darker with a thicker pulp.

*Indi*, or *Myrobalani indicæ*, are probably the unripe fruit of *Terminalia chebula* and *T. bellerica*. These black myrobalans are oblong shaped and have no stone.

The *belleric* myrobalans are the fruit of *Terminalia bellerica*. They are yellowish-grey in colour and roundish or oblong in shape. The *Emblici* are the produce of the *Embllica officinalis* or the *Phyllanthus emblica*, a plant inhabiting the East Indies and frequently cultivated. The dried fruits are used as a purge and also as a tanning agent.

63/22. *Storax calamita* is the dry resin of the Storax tree.

63/25. *Porcelane* or *Porcelayne* is the older name of *Portulaca communis*, purslane. It was recommended at first as a great assuager of choleric heat; afterwards as a cure for scurvy and all skin eruptions; and lastly as an ingredient in salads.

63/29. The Latin text gives *lapis hæmatites* for *lapis omoptoes*.

*Hæmatites*. The bloodstone is found in iron mines in Germany and Bohemia of a black, yellowish, or iron colour. The best is brittle, very black and even, free from filth, and of a Cinnabar-like colour. It is to be reduced into a most subtile powder by levigation with plantain water. It is good against the gout, fluxes of the Womb and Belly, spitting blood and bleeding at the nose; mixed with woman's milk it helps blear eyes and suffusions.

*Ypoquistid* is *Hypocistis*, the juice of the root of the shrub *Cistis* or Holly Rose dried in the sun. It was regarded as an astringent, and *Acacia* was used as a substitute for it. *Sumak* is the *rhus obsoniorum* of which the fruits were looked upon as cooling and astringent.

*Quinque-Nervia* is the *Plantago lanceolata* or Ribwort, of which the distilled water "helps spitting and pissing blood, and the Ptysick, stops the Courses, eases the Cholick and heals a Dysenteria, cools inflammations, dissolves nodes and mundifies Fistulas. The Essence is better," says Salmon in 1678.

64/1. This passage is given in greater detail in the later English translation (Sloane MS. 76), where it runs: "Of the Emmorroydes and Menstrualles. The Emorroydes or menstrualles flowinge strongly, or the pacient sore afflicted with the force of blood, ye must consider of the suerest waye and that which returns blood fastest. First, if the pacient be not very weake, let him bleed somethinge of both Basillic vaynes of the arme and set cuppinge glasses under woman's breistes and so doinge and by bindinge the armes paynedly will provoke the humours to returne, and after that use local remedies."

64/6. *Muscilage dragaunte*. This should certainly be *Muscilage Dragagant*. Arderne is careful to explain the difference between *Dragaunte* and *Dragagant*. 79/3-4. *Dragant* is a crude sulphate, acting as an astringent, whilst *dragagant* is *tragacanth*.

64/11. *Red coral* was long used as an astringent in diarrhœa and in the form of a compound syrup, and it was employed as a teething powder for children. It is still used as a charm against the evil eye in London, for most babies' rattles mounted in silver are tipped with a piece of red coral.

64/13. *Canell*. Arderne's translator uses canell throughout as the equivalent of Cinnamomum.

64/18. *Coprose* is Green Vitriol. Salmon says in 1678: "This owes its colour to Iron; in London it is well known that most of the old iron which is gathered by many poor people is sold to the Copperas houses at Rotherhith and Deptford, which they boil up with a dissolution of the Pyrites, which is a stone found on the shore of the Isle of Shepey and other such like places, and let the liquor run out into convenient vessels or Cisterns in which it shoots into those forms we meet with amongst druggists. It is chiefly used as an Astringent."

64/25. *Kynnyng* is clearly a variant of the more common form chine, to burst open or split. It is still in familiar use, as in the Chines of the Isle of Wight.

64/32. Arderne shows both in this passage and in previous ones (cf. 7/39, p. 112) that neurasthenia was not unknown in his practice.

64/36. *Clyffying*. This is an early instance of the confusion between Cliff and clift, the original form of Cleft.

65/27. *Psidie* was pomegranate rind: *Balaustia* being the flowers of the wild pomegranate—*Punica sylvestris*.

*Mummè* was divided into five forms. (1) A factitious made of bitumen and Pitch-Pissasphaltum; (2) Flesh of the carcase dried in the Sun, in the country of the Hammonians between Cyrene and Alexandria, being Passengers buried in the Quick-sands; (3) Ægyptian, a liquor sweating from carcases embalmed with Pissasphaltum; (4) Arabian, a liquor which sweats from carcases embalmed with Myrrh, Aloes, and Balsam; (5) Artificial, which is Modern. Of all which the two last are the best, but the Arabian is scarcely to be got; the second and third sorts are sold for it. The artificial or modern mummy is made thus: "Take the carcase of a young man (some say red hair'd) not dying of a disease, but killed; let it lie 24 hours in clear water in the Air; cut the flesh in pieces, to which add powder of myrrh and a little Aloes; imbibe it 24 hours in the spirit of wine and Turpentine, take it out, hang it up twelve hours; imbibe it again 24 hours in fresh spirit, then hang up the pieces in dry air and a shadowy place, so will they dry and not stink." (Salmon, "The New London Dispensatory," 1678, p. 194.) There was a tincture, an essence, an elixir and a balsam of this precious medicine. It dissolved congealed and coagulated blood, provoked the terms, expelled the wind out of both the bowels and the Veins, helped Coughs and was a great Vulnerary. It was also said to purge. The dose was a drachm.

*Olibanum* is frankincense, the resin obtained from *Boswellia Carteri*. It was employed as a stimulating expectorant, as an emmenagogue, as an ointment in skin diseases and some diseases of the eyes, and as an ingredient of stimulating plasters.

66/3. *Red Jasper* was considered to be of the nature of the blood stone, for it not only stops bleedings at the nose and other fluxes of blood but also the flux of the terms.

*Saphir*. "The Sapphire is either Oriental or Occidental, and of each



there are Male and Female. It is a glorious, clear, transparent, blew, or sky-coloured stone, these are the Males. The females are white and unripe, so they want colour. The stone laid whole to the forehead stays the bleeding at the nose. You may dissolve it in juice of Lemons or Spirit of Vinegar and so use it; drunk in wine it helps against the stinging of scorpions. You may also beat it into a powder and levigate it with rosewater."

"The Ruby or Carbuncle is either white or red; being drunk, it restrains Lust and makes a man lively and cheerful."

66/4. The dung of swine helps the bitings and stinging of serpents, Scorpions, and Mad-dogs. It softens, discusses, and cures hard tumours, Scrophulas, Corns, Warts, Bleeding at the nose, Itch, Small-pox, Scabs, Fractures, Luxations, Wounds, Burns, Scalds, stops Bleeding, etc.

66/7. The belief in the juice of nettle as a blood purifier still lingers among us. As a child I had repeated attacks of urticaria; on several occasions I was ordered a tumblerful of the infusion of nettles to be taken hot and in the morning, fasting, but so far as I remember without effect either in shortening the intervals between the attacks or curing their painfulness.

66/19. *A streit wound*: cf. "streit is the gate and narrow is the way which leadeth unto life" (Matt. vii. 14).

66/25. Arderne here recommends the use of acupressure as a means of arresting hæmorrhage.

67/8. *Comyn*. Dr. Prior derives this word from the Arabic *al gamoun*. It is the *Cuminum cyminum*. Its seeds have long been in general use as a stomachic.

67/13. *Orpine* is the *Sedum Telephium*, a well-known inmate of the cottage garden, being esteemed as a vulnerary. The Latin text gives *Succus ebulæ*, juice of the Danewort or Dwarf elder.

67/28. The Lombards as an enterprising trading community in London are mentioned again in the Treatise on Clysters; cf. 76/32.

67/28. Two kinds of ink seem to have been used by the surgeons in the fourteenth century, *Attramentum* and *Encaustum*. The *Attramentum* seems to have been a sulphate containing powdered galls, whilst the *encaustum*—literally, purple ink reserved for the royal use—was made with *Chalcantum*, a generic name for the sulphates of copper, iron and zinc. Salicet (Ed. Pifteau, p. 207) used the purple ink to stain the bone for the purpose of discovering a line or fracture of the skull. Henri de Mondeville (Ed. Nicaise, p. 506) marked out his flaps with it before amputating. Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 343) employs *attramentum* (cf. 40/27, p. 119), as a local astringent in piles, and (p. 521) uses the purple ink for surface marking.

67/31. *Bdellium* is a gum resin somewhat resembling very impure myrrh. It is the product of various species of *Balsamodendron*.

67/32. *Anteros* was *anthera*, *semen rosarum*. Rose threads, viz. the yellow threads in the middle of the flowers. They were used with *dentifrices* and to dry up defluxions.

67/34. This Demetrius may have been Demetrius II, King of Georgia, son of David III, who came to the throne in 1126 and died 1158. He was constantly at war with the Mussulmen. It may have been his son Demetrius III who died 1289. Arderne perhaps heard the story from those who had been to Lithuania with Sir Geoffrey Scrope. Cf. 14/4, p. 114.

67/39 and 68/1. The Cuckoo's Bread is the *Oxalis Acetosella*. It is called also Cuckoo's Meat or Gowk's Meat and Wood Sorrel. It was called Hallelujah because it blossomed between Easter and Whitsuntide, the season at which the 113th to the 117th Psalms were sung. Arderne's translator calls it Alleluia. Cf. 68/1.

68/14. *Galang* is the name given to two kinds of roots obtained from a species of *Alpinia*, the greater and smaller galanga. The word itself is said to be a corruption of the Chinese liang-kiang, mild ginger.

69/1. Arderne gives the reason for using Crocus or Saffron with opium (cf. 101/35), because it acted as a bridle to that drug.

69/14. This appears to be the original prescription for the Valence which handed Arderne's name down to posterity until after the publication of the "Pharmacopœia Londinensis." (Cf. Forewords, pp. xxx-xxxi.) My copy, said to be the editio quarta, with the frontispiece dated 1632, says (p. 155), "Valentia Scabiosæ Iohannis Ardernii, ex Oppido (vulgo) Newark in Comitatu Nottingham; Chirurgi exerciatissimi; qui floruit anno 1370; tempore Edouardi tertii Regis Angliæ, ipsissimis verbis ex antiquo manuscripto excerpta. . . Tapsivalencia ejusdem authoris. . . Tapsimel ejusdem. . . Hæc ad verbum ex veteri Manuscripto et stylo suo."

69/29. *Populeon* was an ointment made from the buds of the white poplar or Aspen tree. Cf. 77/3.

70/19. *Furfur* is Bran. It entered very largely into the materia medica of the older leeches.

71/21. *A welked grape*; cf. Chaucer, Pardoner's Tale, l. 270, "For which ful pale and welked is my face," in the sense of wrinkled or shrivelled.

71/26. This short treatise on Tenesmus is excellent from a professional point of view, and it does not appear that the use of the term has materially altered in the course of the centuries which have elapsed since Arderne wrote it.

71-74. These are the passages which show Arderne to be a first-rate observer independent of book work. The prognosis holds good to this day. If the enema is returned at once either the bowel is paralysed because the patient is moribund from some obstruction which may be situated high up, or there may be an obstruction near the anus without paralysis, or the bowel is blocked by the impaction of fæces consequent upon obstinate constipation. In the last case the patient may recover, and Arderne says therefore that his rule is not without exceptions.

72/9. *Diagredium* is made from scammony by putting the powder into a hollow quince, covering it with a paste and baking it in an oven or under ashes.

72/12. The iliac passion was a general name for intestinal obstruction at a time when morbid anatomy was unknown. It included a variety of conditions from simple colic to suppurative peritonitis in all its forms. The scene closed with fæcal vomiting, as no attempt was ever made to treat it by surgical means.

72/20. *Scariola* is the endive, *Cichorium Endivia*.

72/23. *The dusty meel of the milne* is only the finest flour used as a vehicle to make the grease and honey into a mass.

72/27. Cabbage, *Brassica sativa* or *Caulis*, was much used by the school of Salernum, and Arderne mentions it previously. Cf. 70/19 and 72/27.



72/28. *Fenigreke* is the *fænum græcum*, whose seeds were used in emollient clysters, for they are mucilaginous.

73/6. *Mellilote* is here explained by Arderne as the tops of colewort, but the term is usually applied to *M. officinalis*, the dried flowers of which were used for making poultices. Two varieties were recognised, the white and the yellow.

73/30. The translator has omitted the passage about the ostrich feather and the Prince of Wales which is given in Forewords, p. xxvii. It should come after the word *lure*.

73/32. *Cimbalarie* is the Pennywort—*Linaria Cymbalaria*--so called from its round leaves. It was good "against all inflammations and hot tumours, St. Antonie's fire and Kibed heels."

74/2. *Triasantalorum*. There were three kinds of Sandal in use, album, rufum, and citrinum. *Triasantalorum* therefore is a confection of the three Sandals just as *Diatritonpipereon* is a confection of the three peppers.

74/26. Salicet (Ed. Pifteau) gives two formulas (pp. 171 and 504) for making an unguentum apostolorum. The ointment contained white wax : pine resin : aristolochia : incense : mastic : opoponax : myrrh : galbanum, litharge, etc. Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 617) gives a similar formula, and adds that Mesue named it *Cerasesos*, but Master Anserin de la Porte and Master Pierre de l'Argentiere of Montpellier call it *Gratia Dei*, because it cures bad ulcers so wonderfully. Henri de Mondeville (Ed. Nicaise, p. 800) calls it the green ointment of the Twelve Apostles on account of its twelve chief ingredients, and states that some writers call it *Unguentum Apostolicon*, others *Unguentum Veneris*, or simply the Plaister.

74/30. Pellitory of the wall is the *Parietaria officinalis*. It grows on old walls and was thought to draw lime from the mortar.

74/31. Allusion to this interpolation in the text is made in Forewords (p. xii). It shows that the translation here printed cannot be earlier than 1413, the year of Henry IV's death.

74/33. The short treatise on *Enemata* is written to show Arderne's improvements in apparatus as well as in methods. He is, as usual, ahead of his contemporaries in simplifying both.

75/23. *Rerepigre*. This word seems to be a mistake of the copyist for *Hiera pigre*, *Yera pigra*, or *iera pigra*. The sacred bitter, an aloetic purgative which has long been popular. Dr. Payne says it is still sold in the shops of herbalists under the debased name of "Hackry-Packry." The usual formula was that given by Galen.

76/19. *Mercurialis*. The English mercury—chenopodium is sometimes called Good Henry—the all-good, to distinguish it from a poisonous form. The Grimms in their "Wörterbuch" explain this name as having reference to elves and kobolds, which were called "Heinz" or "Heinrich," and as indicating supernatural powers in the plant (Dr. Prior, p. 94). It was thought to be laxative, and was long given by nurses to children with their food.

76/32. Lombards. Cf. 67/28, p. 128.

76/36. This passage may mean either that the patients came to Arderne, or that they were relieved before he got home again.

77/3. *Popilion*. Cf. 69/29, p. 129.

77/12. This is an early use of the treatment of chronic constipation by abdominal massage, which has lately become fashionable again.

78/25. Arderne is here advocating rectal feeding which is now commonly used and with excellent results.

79/1. This last treatise is only a fragment in the present translation. A much fuller text is found in the Bodleian Library, where it exists in three parts. The first MS., Ashmole 1434, leaf 117, begins "Attramentorum, i. e. vitriolorum," and ends "facit calcantum." This corresponds, therefore, with p. 79, line 1 to page 81, line 23. The second part is in MS. Digby 161, leaf 16. It begins, "Alumen zucarinum vulgariter alumglas," and ends leaf 23, back, "nobillissimum est ad regem." The translation only contains a small part of this as it ends at page 85, line 22. The third part is in Ashmole MS. 1434, leaf 128, back, to leaf 131. It gives a good account of Arderne's treatment of Scabies by which he made a great deal of money (cf. 6/4, p. 111).

79/1. This passage explains itself. *Dragagant* is Tragacanth, a gummy exudation obtained from incisions made in the stem of *Astragalus gemmifer*. It is a demulcent and is still used in medicine as a vehicle to suspend heavy and insoluble powders like the subnitrate of bismuth.

79/4. *Dragant* is a modification of Chalcantum from chalcis or vitriol romanum. Cf. 64/6. *Calcothar* is the red oxide of iron obtained by calcining sulphate of iron or green coperose.

79/10. Platearius was the name of a distinguished medical family living in the twelfth century. John, the elder, wrote "Practica brevis" and "Regulæ urinarum." John, the son, wrote "Tractatus de ægritudinum curatione" and "De conferentibus et nocentibus corporis humani." Matthew, brother of John the son, made a name for himself, but his writings are unknown. Matthew (floruit 1130-1150), grandson of John the elder and son of John the younger, wrote "De simplici medicina liber," quoted from the first words of the text as "circa instans." John, the third son of Matthew the elder and therefore cousin of Matthew "circa instans," was also known to fame.

79/18. *Venemyd wound*. The expression is still in common use, only we say a "poisoned wound," and bacteriology has given us an explanation of its occurrence.

79/27. *Fraudulent ulcers*. Guy de Chauliac divides ulcers into corrosive, sordid, cavernous, fistulous and chancre. The fraudulent ulcer is sordid, the characters are a sore or stinking scab. Henri de Mondeville also describes (Ed. Nicaise, p. 421, note) a fraudulent corrosive ulcer.

80/27. *Lutum sapienciæ*, also called lutum sapientum, was used by the alchemists for sealing their vessels. It was made with flour, white of egg, chalk and clay.

80/39. Arderne uses *marice* as the special term for the uterus, and employs the word *womb* where we should say "belly." Cf. 11/24, p. 113.

81/11. *Pulv. hermodactilez*. *Hermodactylus* is a name given to many plants with tuberous roots, notably to *hermodactylus tuberosus*. One form was used as a cure for gout, and may have been colchicum.

81/30. The *scab* is here scabies or the itch, a contagious disease which the habits of the time made prevalent through every class of society.



82/31. Arsenic was known at this time in the forms of the yellow sulphide, orpiment or Auripigmentum, and the red sulphide or Realgar. Arderne gives an interesting and evidently truthful account of his early experiences with the drug as a local application. Henri de Mondeville held a similar respect for it, perhaps based also on the grounds of experience, for he says "Realgar is strongly corrosive, dangerous and poisonous" (Ed. Nicaise, p. 850).

85/22. The translator has left out a most interesting case which reads as if the patient had Actinomycosis. Digby MS. 161, leaf 18, gives these details, the translation is mine. "A certain man, however, at Bridgeford-on-Trent, in the county of Nottingham, had a bad ulcer upon the back of his hand, and there were grains in it like barleycorns full of blood, and if the hand was compressed by the fingers a sanious and stinking discharge was driven out with itching and sometimes with pain." The patient was completely cured after realgar and soap had been applied.

The text runs:—"Quidam homo tamen in Briggeforde super Trent in Comitatu Notyngham', habuit serpiginem granosam super tergum manus et grana erant similia granis ordeï plena sanguine et si manus cum digitis compressa sanies sub granis erumpebat cum fetore pruritu et aliquando cum dolore.

"Quando vero post multa medicamina recepta 'cum pulvere realgar' et sapone nigro commixtum totum herpetem predictum bene liniui et firmiter applicaui. Paciens vero ingentem dolorem per diem naturalem perpessus est, et manus nimis erat inflatus pre dolore et calore. Quo viso, superposui vitellum oui crudum cum oleo rosarum, et manum bene cum dicto oleo permixi tandem incepit fieri diuisio circa extremitates ulceris et medicina predicta nihil nocuerat sano corio sed tantummodo quod infectum fuerat mortificauit. Continuato vero medicamine de vitello et oleo rosarum tota illa pellis dicte manus infecta, bene est emulsa et omnino separata sine neruorum aut venarum lesione. Qua vero reparata vulnus cum vitello oui crudo et cum melle rosarum mixto et alfitis subtilicia cum stupis lini delicatis inter ossa et emplastrum apposit'.

"Emplastrum jamdictum super stupas lini mundas extensum supraposui et cum hac sola cura peroptime patientem curaui sine mutilacione neruorum aut venarum. Post consolidacionem vulneris supraposui emplastrum de diaquilo resoluto cum unguento maluarum et lili et supposui longo tempore donec pellis noua fuerat bene digesta et ne reciperet alteracionem a aëre vel alio casu contingente."

87/25. These rules show the excellence of Arderne's practice. The simplest dressings were only renewed when it was necessary. He was in every way an opponent of meddlesome surgery, and thus takes a very high place, not only amongst his contemporaries, but amongst all surgeons.

88/9. And yet almost immediately he shows the lack of critical faculty which characterizes so many mediæval writers. The superstition about the harmfulness of a menstruating woman is well known to all students of folk-medicine. The question is still raised in all seriousness from time to time both in lay and medical papers.

89/7. *Pulv: sanguinis veneris*. The use of human blood was no new thing. Dr. J. F. Payne has an interesting article on the subject, "Arnold de Villa Nova on the therapeutic use of human blood" (Janus, 1903, pp. 432 and 477). Jamerius (cf. 55/3, p. 123) used a powder which he called "human powder," many years before Arderne, "against all wounds." The formula ran, "℞. Symphyti; balaustie, rosarum, squinanti, masticis olibani ana ʒij: aluminis, arilli uvarum ana ʒj, atramenti, sanguinis draconis

ana 3ss: galbani 3ij: galle asiane 3j: colofonie, boli armenici ana 3ij: sanguinis humani 3vi. Effunde super pellem arietis et siccati et ejusdem pellis arietine combuste et pulverizate 3ijj" [rubric xxxvii].

89/14. *Alkanet* is the root of *Anchusa tinctoria*. It was formerly used as an astringent, but is now only used as a colouring material.

89/30. A hollow ulcer or *ulcus concavum* is the same thing, says Henri de Mondeville (Ed. Nicaise, p. 425), as a deep or hidden ulcer. It is any ulcer whose whole extent is not visible. It is often called by "les ydiotes chirurgiens," or "cyrurgici rurales," a fistula, but it differs from a true fistula both in treatment and results.

90/23. The gloss on *edere terrestris* is useful to identify the plant as the ground-ivy, *Hedera helix*, because the term *hedera terrestris* was also applied to the Yew, *Taxus baccata*—called in Mid. Latin *ivius*. Dr. Prior (*op. cit.*, p. 261) gives a most interesting account of the chain of blunders which led to the confusion between a creeping form of *Hedera* and a full-grown evergreen shrub.

91/9. *Wild fire* is a synonym for erysipelas. Cf. 41/1. The Persian fire was sometimes shingles (or herpes zoster): sometimes a carbuncle. St. Anthony's fire meant erysipelas in some cases, ergotism or endemic gangrene in others.

91/24. *Pater noster and Ave maria*. On this method of estimating small portions of time see Forewords, p. xxix.

94/35. *Curse of humours* is the flowing of a discharge, just as we still speak of menstruation in a woman as "the courses."

95/14. *Abominaciones of the stomach*. This is a good example of the early spelling of abomination, due, says The New English Dictionary, "To an assumed derivation from *ab homine*, away from man, inhuman, beastly." It really comes from *ab* and *omen*. The word is genuinely expressive of the conditions in gastric catarrh.

97/5. *Walwort* is the dwarf-elder, *Sambucus ebulus*.

97/9. *Plinius* is Pliny the Younger whose "Natural History" is still good reading whether in the original or in Philemon Holland's translation.

*Dioscorides* is Dioscorides Pedacius who lived in the time of Nero and Vespasian, and was celebrated as the great classical botanist and pharmacologist. His great work, "*περὶ ὕλης ἱατρικῆς*," appeared in five books.

*Macrobius* is quoted also by Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 12), and by Gilbertus Anglicus. Macrobius died 415 A.D. He wrote "Saturnalia," containing miscellaneous remarks on physics, antiquities, literary criticism, etc.

98/6. *Anthrax* is considered both by Salicet and by de Chauliac. Salicet (Ed. Pifteau, p. 176) says that anthrax and carbuncle are the same, except that anthrax is the more malignant and acute. It was called "Bonne Bube," says Guy (Ed. Nicaise, p. 100), "in the opposite sense because it is very wicked and very dangerous," just as we call the fairies "good folk" or say of a baby "how ugly he is."

100/15. The *gymewe3*. The New English Dictionary gives this word as a variant of *gemew* or *gemow*, the plural of *gemel*, twins; and of a door double. It gives as a quotation 1523, in Kirkpatrick, "Relig. Ord. Norwich" (1848) 170, "Within the White Freris, in Norwich, at the Jemowe door." It would be interesting to know whether the *gymewe3* or *Jemowe* door was peculiar to the Carmelites.

*Frere Carome3*. It is clear from the Latin text that the *Frere Carome3* were the Carmelites or White Friars who had their convent and church



east of the Temple in London. The Carmelite Convent was founded by Sir Richard Gray in 1241, upon ground given by Edward I. In 1350 Courtenay, Earl of Devon, rebuilt the Whitefriars church, and in 1420 Robert Marshall, Bishop of Hereford, added a steeple. At the Dissolution Dr. Butts was given the Chapter house as a residence. The church was pulled down in the reign of Edward VI, but the refectory of the convent remained as the Whitefriars theatre. The right of sanctuary remained for many years, as is known to every reader of Scott's novels. The Library at Lambeth Palace contains a will (Staff. 2, p. 548, Will 91) dated Feb. 1, 1446, and proved May 12, 1449. The will is made by John Arderne, armiger, who desires to be buried by Margaret his wife, if dying in London, or by Elizabeth his wife, if dying at Leygh. "His body," the document states, "is actually buried in the Carmelite church under the marble tomb with Margaret." The will is dated at St. Margaret's, Westminster, and leaves his effects to John, his son, and Bridget, his daughter.

100/33. In 1376, about the time Arderne was writing this treatise, the Commons petitioned the king "that Ribalds . . . and sturdy Beggars may be banished out of every town" (Ribton Turner, "Vagrants and Vagrancy," p. 52).

A truant was any vagabond, beggar or rogue.

100/35. *Jusquiamus* is henbane, *Hyoscyamus niger* or *alba*.

100/36. *3izannie* is the cockle or tares which the wicked man sowed (Matt. xiii. 25). Darnel was a general name for all kinds of cornfield weeds, says Dr. Prior (*op. cit.* 64).

*Chessede* is chess-seed, chesses being a name applied to the poppy-chasses and chese boules, from the shape of its capsule.

*Briony root* was looked upon as a powerful hydrogogue purging agent, whilst the juice of the plant was a remedy for gout.

The ribald's potion would not have done much harm even in considerable doses.

101/10. *Cicuta* is water hemlock, the *Cicuta virosa*.

101/12. *Opium* is a tear which flows from the wounded heads or leaves of the black poppy, being ripe. Some promiscuously use it with Meconium, but they do ill; for opium is a drop or tear, Meconium the gross expressed juice from the whole plant. However, they are both of one quality: opium is the finer gum and the stronger, Meconium is the coarser and weaker, yet the more malign.

"Opium is three-fold. 1. Black and hard, from Syria and Aden. 2. Yellower and softer, from Cambaia. 3. White, from Cairo or Thebes, which last, commonly called Thebian opium, is the best, being heavy, thick, strong-scented like Poppy, bitter and sharp, inflammable, almost of the colour of Aloes, and easie to dissolve in water. The counterfeit when washed colours the water like saffron." (Salmon's "New London Dispensatory," 1678, p. 167, col. 2.)

101/16. *Propoleos* is bee bread. Henri de Mondeville in his "Antidotaire" (Ed. Nicaise, p. 831) says: "85. Cera, en grec Propolis, en Arabe Scham'a (Schamha): elle tient le milieu entre les quatre qualités."

102/3. *Castor* was long looked upon as "a most noble Drug of great use in all distempers of the head." It is the secretion from the cloacal glands of the *castor fiber* obtained from the Hudson Bay territory. Its properties have hardly yet been adequately tested, and it is possible that it may regain some of its former prestige.

102/8. The *nux moschata* or myristica is the nutmeg, which was looked upon as a comforter of the head and stomach. Mace, which is the arillus of the fruit dried in the sun, has similar properties.

102/8. *Nenufare* is the water-lily used in medicine as an oil, syrup and water. The lily with yellow flowers stoppeth the lask and bloody flux, but the white-flowered lily is the strongest, and is powerful in stopping the Whites, drunk in red wine.

*Mirtellez* is the *Rubus hortensis*, the garden bramble or dwarf myrtle bush. The leaves astringe and stop fluxes; the fruit and berries bind, cool in fevers, quench thirst, stop vomitings.

102/8. The Manuscript stops here abruptly, but I have copied the charm from another source, partly on account of its intrinsic interest, partly because of the sidelight it sheds on the Duke of Clarence's wedding festivities and of Arderne's desire for secrecy.

104/5. In some of the later manuscripts the words *Enthe* and *Enthanay* have become *Gnthē* and *Gnthenay*.

104/8. *Verbum caro factum est* were words of power in the middle ages. Friar Odoric of Pordenone, who was in Northern China about 1320 when the Yang-tsi floods caused the devastation which some think started the Black Death, says ("Yule, Cathay and the way thither," Hakluyt Soc. I, 156, quoted in Creighton's "History of Epidemics," I, 155): "I saw such numbers of corpses as no one without seeing it could deem credible. And at one side of the valley, in the very rock, I beheld as it were the face of a man very great and terrible, so very terrible indeed that for my exceeding great fear my spirit seemed to die in me. Wherefore I made the sign of the Cross, and began continually to repeat *verbum caro factum*, but I dared not at all come nigh that face, but kept seven or eight paces from it."





## INDEX.

- ABDOMINAL massage after a clyster, 77, 131  
 Abscess, ischio-rectal, 11, 13  
 Abscess, mammary, a plaster for, 12  
 Acacia for piles, 63, 67  
 Actinomycosis, Arderne's case of, 132  
 Acupressure to stop bleeding, 66, 128  
 Acus rostrata, the snouted needle, xvii, 15, 23, 33, 112  
 Acute disease, 21  
 Ægidius Corboliensis, account of, 124  
 Ægidius Corboliensis is quoted, 59  
 Ague quartan, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Albania, persistence of mediæval methods in, 114  
 Albucasis, treatment of fistula by, xvi, xvii, 112, 123  
 Algeçiras, siege of, xi, 108  
 Alkanet, 89, 90, 133  
 Alkenemistrez, 83  
 Allbutt, Sir Clifford, quoted, 123  
 Alleluia, or woodsour, 68, 129  
 Alleyne, Dr., quoted, xxxi, 118, 121  
 Almonds, oil of, to prepare, 95  
 Almonds, water of, to prepare, 95  
 Aloes, 65; bad for piles, 63  
 Aloes hepaticus, a styptic, 25, 27, 65  
 Aloes internally, open veins, 67  
 Aloes locally a styptic, 67  
 Aloes, the varieties of, 116  
 Alphice, or barley-meal, 92  
 Alphita, 66  
 Alum, 46, 49, 116  
 Alum combust, 73, 81  
 Alum glass, 54, 81, 116; preparation of, 82  
 Alum plume, 54, 88  
 Alum powder, 67  
 Alum Rō., 116  
 Alum scissum, 81  
 Alum water, preparation of, 82  
 Alum, varieties of, 116  
 Alum zucarine, burnt, 35, 40, 65, 86  
 Alum zucarine, combust, 27, 35, 40  
 Alum zucaryne, 54, 65, 81  
 Amenorrhœa, the urine in, 60  
 Anæsthesia, an ointment, to procure, 101  
 Anathemasy, piles due to, 58  
 Anence, meaning of the word, 123  
 Ani pruritus, 73  
 Ankles, fistulæ of, 46, 47  
 Anteros, or Rose threads, 67, 128  
 Anthrace, treatment of, 52, 98  
 Anthrax, meaning of the term, 123  
 Anthrax, treatment of, 52, 98  
 Antioch, drink of, 44, 47  
 Antioch, formula for the drink of, 120  
 Antioch, the hiera of, 120  
 Antioch, the treacle of, 120  
 Antwerp, Arderne practises at, xii, 108, 117  
 Anyse, 63  
 Apii emplastron, 51  
 Apii, juice of, 49, 50, 72  
 Apium, 49, 50  
 Aposteme, 112  
 Aposteme of the lure, signs of, 11; treatment of, 13  
 Apostemes, fraudulent, 81  
 Apostemes, the treatment of inward, 98  
 Apostemes, venomous, 81  
 Apostles, ointment of the, 130  
 Apostolicon, 74, 79, 130  
 Apothecaries mentioned, 28, 117  
 Apothecary, Arderne's recognition of, 117  
 Appleton, William de, xi  
 Arabic ointment, 92  
 Archimathæus of Salerno, 111  
 Arderne acts like an idiot, 84  
 Arderne and abdominal massage, 77, 131  
 Arderne, fees charged by, 6, 111  
 Arderne land granted to a John Arderne, x, 105



- Arderne not a blood-letter, 62  
 Arderne quotes himself, 26  
 Arderne, John, a fishmonger, x, note  
 Arderne, John de, 107  
 Arderne, John, lived in Newark, 1  
 Arderne, John, reasons for treating fistula, 3  
 Arderne, Master John, biography of, x; date of birth, x; as a surgeon, xiv; operation for fistula, xvii; treatise on the fistula, xv; the works of, xv  
 Arderne, Richard, a skinner, x, note  
 Arderne, Sir John, x  
 Arderne, will of a John, in 1446, 134  
 Arderne's belief in Astrology, 115  
 Arderne's clyster pipe, 74  
 Arderne's experience with arsenic, 83-85  
 Arderne's knowledge of books, 122  
 Arderne's knowledge of Galen, 110  
 Arderne's tapsivalencia ointment, 69  
 Arderne's treatment of scabies, 111  
 Arderne's valence of scabious, 97  
 Arderne's valence of wormode, 98  
 Argentin, Dr., quotes Arderne, xxx  
 Arm, a case of swollen, 49  
 Arm, the liver vein of, 54  
 Arm, vena hepatica of, 49  
 Arnitage-Smith, Mr. Sydney, quoted, x, xi, xiv, 108  
 Arms of Bergerac, 108  
 Arms of the Everyngham family, 107  
 Arnold de Villa Nova, quoted, 132  
 Arrow wounds, 89, 98  
 Arsenic, 44, 45, 50, 51  
 Arsenic a dangerous dressing, 83, 85  
 Arsenic, Arderne's experience with, 83  
 Arsenic, remedial effects on the tissues, 44, 45  
 Arsenic, sublimed, 83  
 Arsenic, varieties of, 82, 132  
 Astrology, Arderne's belief in, 115  
 Astrology in surgery, 16, 17  
 Astronomers quoted, 16, 17  
 Atramente, 53, 79, 128  
 Atreos piles, 56  
 Attrament, 40, 80  
 Attramentum, or Black ink, 128; or vitriol, 119  
 Attritos piles, 56  
 Auripigmentum, 46, 47, 49, 50 86  
 Auripigmentum, its relation to arsenic, 82  
 Auripigmentum, or native arsenic, 121  
 Auripigmentum, qualities of, 83  
 Auripigmentum rubrum, 83  
 Auripigmentum, uses of, 83  
 Avance, or Herb Benedict, 30, 117  
 Avicenna, account of, 124  
 Avicenna quoted, 3, 56, 78  
 Avicenna, the Canon of, 115  
 Avicenna, white ointment of, 119  
 Aysel, or vinegar, 119  
  
 BALAUSTIA, or wild pomegranate, 65, 74, 127  
 Balne by Snaithe, 1; hamlet of, 108  
 Bandages after fistula operation, 25 for piles, 70  
 Bandages, list, 25  
 Bandaging a patient after fistula operation, 25  
 Bandaging, the advantages of good, 25  
 Barber, bad treatment by a, 100  
 Barber, duties of, 60, 125  
 Barber surgeons, xix  
 Barbers not to be taught to detriment of Masters in surgery, 71  
 Barberry, 74  
 Bark dust, 74  
 Barley bread soaked, for piles, 63  
 Barley meal, 27, 41, 66, 92  
 Barone, Roger de, account of, 123  
 Bartholomew of Salernum, account of, 123  
 Bartholomew of Salernum, Maister, quoted, 55, 123  
 Basilic vein, 126; phlebotomy of, 61, 72  
 Bath, hot, treatment by, 72  
 Bawn, Roger, quoted, 55, 122  
 Bdellium, or Myrrh, 67, 128  
 Bean as a styptic applied locally, 66  
 Bean meal, 27  
 Beans, 63  
 Bedington known to Arderne, xxx  
 Belleric myrobolans, 126  
 Bergerac, arms of, 108  
 Bergerac, town of, 108  
 Bernard de Gordon quoted, 14, 38, 55, 56 note, 60, 64, 73, 114, 125  
 Bernard of Gordon, account of, 122  
 Bible quoted, 7

- Bibliography, xxxiii-xxxv  
 Black choler, 62  
 Black Death, 109  
 Black entrete, 53  
 Black ointment, its composition, 54  
 Black pepper, 92  
 Black pitch plaster, 81  
 Black poppy, 100, 101  
 Black Prince, Edward the, xii, xxvii, 2, 3, 130  
 Black soap, 48, 50, 118  
 Bladder for clyster, 26  
 Bladder for enema, its preparation, 75  
 Blakborne, Sir Henry, 109; cured of fistula, 2  
 Blanche, wife of John of Gaunt, 107  
 Bleeding, Arderne's method of arresting, 116  
 Bleeding from the basilic vein, 54  
 Bleeding-iron inferior to a lancet, 61  
 Bleeding, the influence of the Moon on, 16, 17  
 Bleeding, the times for, 61  
 Blood, excess of, a cause of piles, 56  
 Blood, how purified, 57  
 Blood-iron, or phlebotome, 61, 70  
 Blood-letter, a, 62  
 Blood-letting not undertaken by Arderne, 62  
 Blood, means of staunching, 24  
 Blood, medicinal use of human, 132  
 Blood, the, runs freely, 60  
 Blood, to staunch, 24, 25, 65, 66  
 Blood, when to draw maiden's, 90  
 Boar's dung, 66  
 Boetius, 7, 23, 111  
 Bole, armoniac, 27, 28, 36, 38, 40, 63, 65, 67  
 Bole powder, a styptic, 25  
 Boli, meaning of, 116.  
 Bolus armeniacus, a styptic, 116  
 Bone, dead, treatment of, 43, 54  
 Bone, mortification of, 54  
 Bones, fistula of, evil signs in, 46, 47  
 Books, Arderne's knowledge of, 122  
 Bordeaux, 41, 108  
 Brain, remedies to comfort, 102  
 Bran decoction for a clyster, 38, 49, 69, 75, 76, 77  
 Bran ointment, 88  
 Bread, barley, for piles, 63  
 Breast, inflammation of, 12, 52  
 Briggerac, town of, 1, 108  
 Brimstone and soap ointment, 44, 46  
 Briony root, 100; medicinal uses of, 134  
 Brizwell near Tickhill, 2  
 Broom ashes, 53  
 Bruised leg, treatment of, 54, 98  
 Bruising of limbs, 97  
 Bruno mentioned, 119  
 Bubo, nature of, 37  
 Bubo, pun upon the word, 36, 37  
 Bubo within the lure incurable, 37, 39  
 Buboos and owls, 36, 37  
 Burns, treatment of, 91  
 Bursa pastoris or Shepherd's Purse, 63, 74, 78, 125  
 Butter, 30  
 Buttocks, bandaging of, 25, 26, 70  
 Buttocks, ulceration of, 39, 41  
 Buzt, meaning of the word, 120  
 Buzt of arm, swelling of, 49  
 Buzt of knee, emposteme in, 47  
 CALCOTHAR, meaning of the term, 131  
 Calx vive, 47, 48  
 Camomile, flowers of, 94  
 Camomile for a clyster, 75, 76  
 Camomile, oil of, 12, 26, 88  
 Camomile, oil of, to prepare, 94  
 Camphor for piles, 63  
 Cancer and dysentery differential signs, 37  
 Cancer of mouth, 86  
 Cancer of rectum to be distinguished from dysentery, 39  
 Cancer of the rectum, signs, 38; treatment, 38; incurable, 39  
 Cancer of the yard, 92  
 Cancer, treatment by licium, 81, 85  
 Cancerous ulcers, 81, 86  
 Canell or cinnamon, 63, 64, 127  
 Canella, a styptic, 64  
 Canon, the case of a, 52  
 Caprifole, juice of, 44, 81, 85  
 Carbuncle, the medicinal use of, 128  
 Carbuncle, treatment of, 52  
 Carbuncles, 81  
 Carleton, Notts., 107  
 Carmelites, the church of the, 133  
 Carmen, contra spasmus et crampe, 102  
 Carome; friars, 100



- Carp, 49, 50, 51  
 Cassia fistula, a bridle to opium, 101  
 Cassia fistula for a clyster, 75  
 Castile, king of, xi  
 Castor, its source, 134  
 Castoreum, 102  
 Cato quoted, 8  
 Caule<sub>3</sub>, croppe<sub>3</sub> of, 73  
 Caution as a styptic, 66  
 Caution used, 45, 46, 51  
 Celidone, juice of, 40, 41, 73  
 Celidone, or the chelidonia majus, 90, 119  
 Centilegium of Ptolemy, 115  
 Ceraseos, 130  
 Cerebral symptoms in fistula, 14  
 Ceruse, or carbonate of lead, 11, 27, 65, 113, 117  
 Chafing of skin, treatment of, 40  
 Chalcantum, meaning of the term, 128, 131  
 Chapped lips, an ointment for, 97  
 Charm against cramp, 102  
 Chauliac, Guy de, 55, 122, 123; classification of medical practitioners by, 119; formula for Ungt. Apostolicon, 130; classification of ulcers by, 131; quotes William of Salicet, 125; treatment of fistula by, xvii; use of ink by, 128  
 Chawelle<sub>3</sub>, the, 11, 113  
 Chawylbone, 113  
 Chessede, or chess-seed, 100, 134  
 Chesterfield, 103  
 Children, to cure pustules in the mouths of, 32  
 Choler, 62  
 Christmas Day, a man whose leg swelled on, 52  
 Chronic disease, 21  
 Chynnyng<sub>3</sub> of the lure, 73  
 Cicatrization of a wound, 27  
 Cicuta or water hemlock, 101, 134  
 "Ciliaca passio," 58  
 Cimbalarie, or pennywort, 130  
 Cineris geneste, 53  
 Cinnamon, 68  
 Cinquefoil for piles, 63  
 Cipresse, 63  
 Citonior, oil of, 41  
 Citrine ointment, 65  
 Citrine<sub>3</sub>, 62, 125  
 Clarence, marriage of Lionel Duke of, xxix, 102, 103  
 "Clarificatio de vicio splenis," Gordon's, quoted, 60  
 Clay and horsedung as a cement, 80, 96  
 Clay used as a styptic, 66  
 Clothing, the manner of a leech's, 6  
 Clowes, William, xiv  
 Clyffing, meaning of the word, 127  
 Clyster, 26; abdominal massage after, 77  
 Clyster, administration of, needs skill, 76  
 Clyster, amount to be given, 76  
 Clyster, components of a simple, 75  
 Clyster, date of the Treatise on, xii  
 Clyster, for fistula, 11; formula for, 76  
 Clyster, how to examine the results of, 77  
 Clyster, leech to be skilled in administering, 75  
 Clyster, Lombards skilled in giving, 76  
 Clyster, method of administering, 76  
 Clyster, mitigative, 65  
 Clyster of bran, 38  
 Clyster pipe, Arderne's form of, 74  
 Clyster relieves ventosene<sub>3</sub>, 78  
 Clysters for piles, 65  
 Clysters, nutrient, 78  
 Clysters periodic, 78  
 Clysters, prognosis from, 77  
 Clysters, a treatise on, 74-78  
 Cluttered or clotted blood, 71  
 Coclear, the shield, xviii, 24, 112  
 Codde, fistula of, 32  
 Coddes of the testicles, cure of fistula in, 2  
 Colace or cabbage, 70, 129  
 Cold a styptic, 66  
 Cole<sub>3</sub> for piles, 63  
 Colica passio, a clyster for, 75, 78  
 Colic may come from tenesmus, 72  
 Colic relieved by clysters, 76  
 Colier, John, case of, 32  
 Colier, John le, 109  
 Colocynth pulp a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Colyar, William, 109  
 Colyn, John, cured, 2  
 Comfrey, 74  
 Comyn, derivation and use of, 128  
 Concave ulcer, 133  
 Condyloma, 68; etymology of, 56

- Confection of Tapsimel, 31, 40  
 Confectio sanguinis veneris, 90  
 Connaught, grant of land in, x, 105  
 Constantinus Africanus, 110, 123  
 Constellations, influence of, on the body, 16, 17  
 Constipation a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Constipation relieved by clysters, 76  
 Contents, Table of, xxxvi-xxxvii  
 Contusions, treatment of, 52  
 Coprose, or green vitriol, 53, 64, 79, 127  
 Coral for piles, a styptic, 64  
 Coral, red, 66, 67; the medicinal use of, 127  
 Corbeil, Giles of, account of, 124  
 Corboliensis Ægidius, 59, 113; the treatise of, xiii; account of, 124  
 Coriander for piles, 63  
 Coriander juice, 74  
 Corrosive powders, rule for using, 87  
 Cotton, teazed, 25, 67  
 Covetousness, warning against, 21  
 Cramp, charm against, 102  
 Crayfish, 41  
 Creoferoboron powder, 42, 44, 45, 46  
 Creoferoboron, powder, not identified, 119  
 Crete, vitriol is found in the isle of, 17  
 Crevice, the lobster, 41  
 Crocus, a bridle to opium, 101  
 Crocus oil, 68  
 Crocus, or saffron, 69, 101, 129  
 Croydon known to Arderne, xxx  
 Cuckoo's bread, or wood sorrel, 129  
 Cummin, 97; bad for piles, 63  
 Cummin, externally a styptic, 67; internally opens veins, 67  
 Cummin, powder of, 67  
 Cupping for hæmorrhoids, 62  
 Cupping with scarification, 66  
 Cure of fistula, 21  
 Cure, time of, in fistula of fingers, 42  
 Curse of humours, 42, 93, 94; meaning of the term, 133  
  
 DAMASCENE, JOHN, an *alias* of Serapion, 124; quoted, 55; his ointment, 80  
 Danger signals in bleeding piles, 59  
 Darnel, 100  
 Dates of the treatises, xii  
 Day, method of reckoning, 100  
 Dead flesh, 44, 46, 53, 83, 87  
 Deaf piles, 56  
 Death of patients in autumn or harvest, 38  
 De disciplina scholarium quoted, 23, 111  
 De Eardene, x  
 'De ingenio' of Galen quoted, 82  
 Dei Gratia, formula for the Ungt., 130  
 Demetrius, king of Persia, 67, 128  
 Denny, Hew, fishmonger, cured, 2  
 Derby, Henry, Earl of, 1, 107, 108  
 Derlyng, Hugo, cured of fistula, 1  
 Diabrosi, piles due to, 58  
 Diachylon plaster, 12; varieties of, 113  
 Diaflosmus, confection of, 31, 32, 92; explanation of, 117  
 Diagredium, a cause of tenesmus, 72; preparation of, 129  
 Dialthæa, 12  
 Diaquilon, 12; varieties of, 113  
 Diarrhœa, 62  
 Diatritonpipereon, 130  
 Diet a cause of piles, 57  
 Diet for fistula, 21  
 Dilating forceps, Arderne's, 35  
 Dioscorides, 97; account of, 133  
 Disease, influence of mind on, 6, 7, 8  
 Disease, influence of sun and moon upon, 21  
 Disease, when acute and chronic, 21  
 Distillation of juniper oil, 96  
 Dock, red, 68  
 Dominica oratio, 103  
 Doves' dung, uses of, 50, 121  
 Dragagant, or tragacanth, 64, 79, 126, 131  
 Dragagante is different from Dragagante, 79  
 Dragant, 79; the composition of, 126  
 Dragaunt mucilage for piles, 64, 126  
 Dragma, a talent, 3  
 Dressing of wounds not to be too frequent, 87  
 Dressings after fistula operations, 25  
 Drink a cause of piles, 59  
 Dropsy caused by piles, 57  
 Dropsy, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Dropsy, treatment of cold, 97  
 Dung of dove, 50, 121  
 Dung of horse, 80  
 Dung of swine, medicinal use of, 128  
 Dung of wild boar, 66



- Duration of the cure of fistula, 29  
 Dysentery, 37, 62  
 Dysentery and cancer, differential signs, 37, 39  
 Dysentery to be distinguished from piles, 55  
 Dyuelyn ointment, 53, 54  
  
 EARS discharging, 81  
 Ears, ulcers of, 81  
 Edere terrestris, or ground ivy, 133  
 Edward, Prince of Wales, mentioned, xxvii, 2, 3  
 Egg, hard roasted, 69  
 Egg, raw, as a dressing, 26, 28, 29, 51, 53, 66, 67, 72, 83, 96  
 Egg, white of, 25, 31, 32, 50, 51, 53  
 Egg, yolk of, 11, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 35, 36, 38, 40, 54, 65, 72, 83, 96  
 Eiren, white of, 31, 32, 67  
 Emeroydes *v.* hæmorrhoids, 55 *et seqq.*  
 Emplastron apii, 51  
 Emplastron Nerbon, 42, 87  
 Emplastron sanguiboetes, 43, 44, 45, 47, 51  
 Emplastron sanguiboetes not identified, 119  
 Emplastrum diafosmus, 31, 32  
 Emplastr. vitriol, 81  
 Emposteme in buzt of knee, 47  
 Emunctories of the body, 11, 113  
 Encaustum, or purple ink, 128  
 Endive for clyster, 72  
 Enema, 26. *See* Clyster  
 Enemata, a treatise on, 74-78  
 Epistaxis, to arrest, 80  
 Epithimation, meaning of the term, 121  
 Epithimation of a wound, 52  
 Erysipelas, 40  
 Ethic patients, a help for, 95  
 Euphorbium bad for piles, 63  
 Evening the proper time to bleed, 61  
 Everyngham, Sir Adam, 107; armorial bearings of, 108; cured of fistula, 1  
 Excoriations of the skin, 36, 40, 43, 90  
 Experience teaches, 38  
 Experience, value of, 3  
 Extractum nigrum, its composition, 53, 54  
  
 Eyes, cure of, 85, 86  
 Eyes, treatment by licium, 85, 86  
  
 FALCONERS use orpiment, 83  
 False flewme, 58  
 Farmacie is medicine, 68  
 Feathers, burnt, a styptic, 25  
 Feathers of fowl, burnt, 66  
 Feeding by the rectum, 78  
 Fees for an operation, 6  
 Fees in the fourteenth century, 111  
 Fees, Mondeville's advice about, xx, xxii, xxiii  
 Fees to be paid before an operation, 15  
 "Felon," meaning of the term, 121  
 "Felon," treatment of, 52  
 Fenigreke, 72, 130  
 Ferris, Richard, xiv  
 Festered gout, 21, 46, 47, 115  
 Feu sauvage, 4, 27, 41, 91  
 Fics, 56; the French name for piles, 55  
 Fics-herbe, 67  
 Fig, a bloody, 41  
 Figs, bleeding, in the hand, 92  
 Figs cured, 92  
 Figs in the yard, 92  
 Fik, meaning of the term, 119  
 Fingers, fistula of, 42  
 Fire, analogy of the working of, 30  
 Fire, Persian, or shingles, 133  
 Fire, St. Anthony's, or ergotinism, 133  
 Fire, wild, or erysipelas, 41, 91, 133  
 Fishmonger, treatment of a London, 100  
 Fistula, blind internal, operation for, 34  
 Fistula, causes of, 11  
 Fistula, complete, cure of, by ligature, 34  
 Fistula, contemporary treatment of, xvi  
 Fistula, cure of, 21  
 Fistula deemed incurable, xvi, 2, 4  
 Fistula, definition of, 11, 20  
 Fistula, dressings for, 25, 27, 34  
 Fistula, duration of the cure of, 29, 33, 36  
 Fistula, examination of, 33  
 Fistula, good signs for operating upon, 21  
 Fistula, head symptoms in, 14  
 Fistula in ano, duration of cure, 6

- Fistulo in ano, the fees for operating upon, 6, 111  
 Fistula in ano, instruments for, 8, 9, 13  
 Fistula in ano, prognosis of, 6  
 Fistula in ano, treatise on, 1-49  
 Fistula in men, prognosis of, 21  
 Fistula, influence of diet on, 21  
 Fistula, length of time for cure, 34  
 Fistula, method of cutting, 23  
 Fistula, method of fretting, 29  
 Fistula, method of placing the patient for operation on, 34  
 Fistula, mortification of, 35  
 Fistula neglected by the old surgeons, xvi, 2  
 Fistula of arm, 20; bone, 47; breast, 20; buttocks, 13; coddes, 2, 32; costes, 20; feet, 20, 21, 46; hands, 20; joints, 20; knees, 20; legs, 20, 21, 47; metacarpal bones, 4, 6; penile, 14; scrotal, 13; thighs, 20; urethra, 14  
 Fistula operation, dressings for, 25; opening of bowels after, 26, 29  
 Fistula, sequelæ of, 14  
 Fistula, treatment after operation, 26  
 Fistula, treatment by cutting, 21  
 Fistula, treatment by licium, 85  
 Fistula, treatment by ligature, 29  
 Fistula, urethral, 21  
 Fistulæ, multiple, treatment of, 32  
 Fistulæ, situation of, 20  
 Fistulate gout, 21, 27, 46, 47, 115  
 Flanders known to Arderne, xii, 117  
 Flanders, name of nightshade in, xii, 32, 117  
 Flayings of the skin, 36, 40, 43, 90  
 Fleobotome, 47  
 Flesh, dead or mortified, 44, 46, 54, 83, 87  
 Fleume, scab of salt, 82  
 Flosmus in mullein, 31  
 Flowers of camomile, 94  
 Flowers of pomegranate, 74  
 Fomentation, 70  
 Fools and no true leeches, 87  
 Fools' treatment of piles, 70  
 Forceps for dilating anus, 35  
 Forlong, the distance of a, 76  
 "For why," the English rendering of *Nam*, 4, 111  
 Four Masters, account of, 123  
 Fowl's grease, 12  
 Frænum Cæsaris, the ligature, xvii, 9, 22, 24, 112  
 France, a sleeping powder used in, 100  
 France, pilgrims robbed in, 101  
 Frankincense, 40  
 Fraudulent apostemes, 81  
 Fraudulent ulcers, 79, 86, 131  
 French name for piles, figs, 55  
 French soap, 118  
 Frere Caromez, the White friars or Carmelites, 133  
 Fretting a fistula, 29, 39; of skin, 64  
 Friar minorite cures fistula, 3, 110  
 Friars preachers cured of fistula, 2  
 Frousingez, 13; meaning of, 114  
 Fumitory, juice of, 63  
 Fumitory, water of, 63  
 Furfur, or Bran, 70, 129  
 Furnivall, Dr., quoted, xxix  
 GALANG, or ginger, 68, 129  
 Galen, Arderne's knowledge of, 110; quoted, 3, 12, 57, 60, 80, 94  
 Galenic writings known to Arderne, 110  
 Gall bladder the prison of melancholy, 60  
 Galls, 63, 65, 67, 74  
 Galls, powder of, 27  
 Gariopontus of Salerno, 123  
 Garlic, 50  
 Garlic bad for piles, 63  
 Garse, meaning of the word, 121  
 Garsing a wound, 52, 55, 63  
 Gascony, 1, 41  
 Gascony campaign, Arderne's knowledge of, 108  
 Gaunt, John of, x, xi, xiii, 107, 108  
 Gaunt, Blanche, the wife of John of, 10  
 Gawel or Myrrh, 74  
 Gedelin, Notts., 107  
 Geneste, ashes of, 53  
 Gilbert the Englishman, or Gilbertus Anglicus, 113, 123  
 Gilbertus, Maister, 73  
 Gilbertyn, quoted, 11, 55, 113  
 Giles of Corbeil, account of, 124  
 Gilles de Corbeil, xiii, 113  
 Ginger, 68  
 Glass, powder of, 44, 54  
 Glass, use of, in wounds, 44



- Glisters, 26, 27, 29  
 Glutæal sinuses, 13  
 Glysters, a treatise on, 74  
 Goats' milk, 72; artificial, 72  
 Goats' milk a good vehicle for myrobalans, 63  
 Goats' tallow, 73  
 Good Henry or Chenopodium, 130  
 Goose grease, 12  
 Gordon, Bernard de, 114, 122; quoted, 59, 60, 61, 64, 83, 125  
 Gout, a good plaster for, 96  
 Gout, festered, 21, 115  
 Gout, fistulate, 21, 46, 47  
 Gout of the joints, 97  
 Gout, treatment of, 96, 97  
 Gray, Sir Reginald de, 2, 102, 109  
 Gray, Sir Richard, founds a Carmelite convent in London, 134  
 Grease of hens, 72  
 Great men, licium fails to cure, 86  
 Great men, treatment of, 25, 86, 89  
 Great wine, 63  
 Greek, charm written in letters of, 104  
 Greek physicians, use of the word hæmorrhoids, 55  
 Greek powder, 41  
 Green ointment, 54  
 Gruel for piles, 63  
 Guido, Master, account of, 123  
 Guild of Surgeons, xix  
 Gum arabic, 27  
 Gum arabic for piles, 64, 67  
 Gums, inflammation of, 81  
 Gums, swollen, 81  
 Gunnas, a family of York, 109  
 Gunnay, Thomas, 109  
 Gunnays, John, 109  
 Gunny, Thomas, cured, 2  
 Guy de Chauliac, quoted 55, 122; account of, 123; use of ink by, 128  
 Gymewe3, the, 100; meaning of the word, 133  
  
 "HACKRY-PACKRY," 130  
 Hæmatites, or lapis omoptoes, 63, 126  
 Hæmorrhage, means of stopping, 15, 24, 116  
 Hæmorrhoids, French name for, 55; Greek name for, 55; Latin name for, 55; Londoners' name for, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Hæmorrhoids, a treatise on, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, attritos, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, causes of, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, condition of the urine in, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, condylomatous, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, danger signals in, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, deaf, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, definition of, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, diet in, 63  
 Hæmorrhoids, dietetic causes of, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, diseases caused by, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, diseases prevented by, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, distinguishable from dysentery, 58  
 Hæmorrhoids, distinguishable from passio iliaca, 58  
 Hæmorrhoids, drink a cause of, 59  
 Hæmorrhoids, due to anathemasy, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, due to diabrosi, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, due to melancholy, signs of, 60  
 Hæmorrhoids, due to rixi, 58  
 Hæmorrhoids, etymology of, 55  
 Hæmorrhoids, excess of blood a cause of, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, means of stopping, 15, 24  
 Hæmorrhoids, melancholy, a cause of, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, morale3, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, mulberry, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, ointment for, 91  
 Hæmorrhoids, operation upon thrombosed, 70  
 Hæmorrhoids, phlebotomy in, 61  
 Hæmorrhoids, plethora a cause of, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, prevented by phlebotomy, 62  
 Hæmorrhoids, produced by bleeding from internal saphenous vein, 61  
 Hæmorrhoids, purgation recommended in, 64  
 Hæmorrhoids, purgatives a cause of, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, purgatives in, 62  
 Hæmorrhoids, purse-like, 71  
 Hæmorrhoids, remedies for, 63  
 Hæmorrhoids, restrained by bleeding from external saphenous vein, 61  
 Hæmorrhoids, scammony and aloes harmful in, 63  
 Hæmorrhoids, signs of, 56

- Hæmorrhoids, soothing clyster for, 65  
 Hæmorrhoids, symptoms of, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment by clysters, 64, 65  
 Hæmorrhoids, treated by cupping, 62  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment by rubbing, 60, 65  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment by sweating, 63  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment in delicate folk, 64  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment in the luxurious, 60  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment in strong men, 64, 95  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment of, by fools, 70  
 Hæmorrhoids, treatment of inflamed, 69, 70  
 Hæmorrhoids, uses of, 57  
 Hæmorrhoids, or uve, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, varieties of, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, verucalæ, 56  
 Hæmorrhoids, when excessive, 158  
 Hæmorrhoids, when temperate in amount, 58  
 Hairs of hare as a styptic, 62, 66  
 Hallelujah, or wood sorrel, 68, 129  
 Haly, 16, 17, 115  
 Hameldon, Sir Thomas, cured, 2  
 Hand, figs of, cured, 92  
 Hare's hairs burnt, 25, 66, 67 ; not burnt, 25, 67  
 Hartshorn, 74  
 Headache, cure for, 41  
 Headache, symptoms in fistula, 14  
 Headache, treatment of, 94  
 Heat, a styptic, 66  
 Hedera terrestris, sometimes the Yew, 90, 133  
 Henry IV cured of prolapse, xii, 74, 130  
 Henry, Earl of Derby, death of, 107, 108  
 Henry, Good, or chenopodium, 130  
 Hen's feathers, burnt, a styptic, 25, 66  
 Hen's grease, 72  
 Herb pede lyon, 48, 120  
 Herb Robert or geranium robertianum, 121  
 Hermodactile; powder, 81, 131  
 Hiera pigre, explanation of the term, 130  
 Hig (Hag) taper, 117  
 Hippocrates quoted, 21, 57, 70 ; Arderne's knowledge of, 115  
 Hippocratic writings known to Arderne, 110  
 Hog, lard of, 96  
 Holle, John of, cured, 2  
 Hollow ulcers, 89  
 Homily quoted, 7  
 Honey, 44, 48, 49, 50, 65, 73, 75, 76, 77, 81, 85, 92, 97  
 Honey cotted with vinegar, 65  
 Honey of Mullein, xxxii  
 Honey scomed, 30, 31, 40, 65, 73  
 Honey, use of, in wounds, 44  
 Horse dung, 80  
 Horse-kicks, injuries from, 52, 54  
 Horsemint, 74  
 Human powder, its composition, 132  
 Humours, causes of, 93, 94  
 Humours, the varieties of, 125  
 Huntingdon, 102  
 Hyoscyamus, 100, 101  
 Hypoquistidos for piles, 63  
 IDIOT, Arderne acts like an, 84  
 Idiot surgeons, 133  
 Iera pigra, 130  
 Iliaca passio to be distinguished from piles, 58  
 Iliac passion, meaning of, 129  
 Iliac passion the result of tenesmus, 72  
 Iliac passion, signs of, 59  
 Impatience of patients commented on, 55  
 Incurable wounds, treatment of, 96  
 Indi melancholy, 62  
 Indi myrobalans, 126  
 Inflammation a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Ink of Lombards, 67  
 Ink, varieties of, 128  
 Intercutaneous collections, cure of, 97  
 Isaac the Jew, 110  
 Isagoge Johannitii, 123  
 Itch, treatment of, by Arderne, 111  
 Itching, cure of, 40  
 JACEA ALBA is scabious, 98  
 Jacea nigra is matfelon, 98  
 Jamarci, Maister, quoted, 55  
 Jamarcius, account of, 123  
 Jamerius, quoted, 118 ; account of, 123



- Jamerius' human powder, 132  
 Jasper, red, medicinal use of, 66, 127  
 Johannice, account of, 123  
 Johannitus, the 'Isagoge' of, 110 ;  
     account of, 123  
 Joints, gout of, 97  
 Joints of fingers, fistula of, 42  
 Joyntour of the fingers, fistulæ of, 46  
 Juice of apium, 50, 72  
 Juice of caprifoile, its uses, 81, 85  
 Juice of celidon, 73  
 Juice of coriander, 74  
 Juice of livane, 73  
 Juice of marigold, 52  
 Juice of Mercury 93  
 Juice of mullein, 64, 67  
 Juice of nettle a styptic, 66  
 Juice of nettle, the medicinal use of  
     128  
 Juice of orpyne, 67  
 Juice of plantayne for piles, 64  
 Juice of porres (leeks), 45, 67  
 Juice of rhubarb, 64  
 Juice of scabious, 97  
 Juice of solsequium, 52  
 Juice of walwort, uses of, 97  
 Juice of woodbine, 44  
 Juniper ointment, 96  
 Jusquiamus, juice of, 100, 101 ;  
     seed, 100 ; treacle, 102  
 Jusquiamus, or Henbane, 134  
  
 Kanva3 or Canvas, 92  
 Kebuli3 fleume, 62  
 Kebuli3 myrobalans, 126  
 Kilyu3 vein, its anatomy, 57  
 Knee, emposteme in the buzt of, 47  
 Knees, fistulæ of, 46  
 Knife wound, to stop bleeding from,  
     66  
 Knife wounds, 89, 98, 100  
 Kynnyng, meaning of the word, 127  
  
 LACHE knot, 29  
 Ladanum, 63  
 Ladies' name for Pulvis sanguinis  
     veneris, 89  
 Ladies, the leech not to meddle  
     with, 5  
 Lady, patient treated by, 44, 119  
 Lady treats a case of swollen arm  
     49  
 Laici, 103  
 Lameleye, Rich de, 107  
 Lampadidnawe in Wales, 107  
  
 Lana succida, 12, 67, 113, 114  
 Lancaster, Duke of, xi, xiii, xiv, 1  
 Lanceola, description of, 116  
 Lancet, 13, 15, 24, 32, 70, 71, 125  
 Lancet and Razor, difference be-  
     tween, 115  
 Lancet preferable to a bleeding-iron,  
     61  
 Lanfrank, treatment of fistula by,  
     xvi ; ideal surgeon, xxv ; quoted,  
     54, 55, 56, 57, 119 ; account of,  
     122  
 Laon, king of, xi  
 Lapis omoptoes for piles, 63, 126  
 Lard, 34, 45, 48, 50, 51, 54, 69, 77,  
     84, 97, 98, 99, 101  
 Lard, shavings of, 51  
 Lard, skin of, 47, 69, 97, 98  
 Lard tents, 48  
 Latin use of the term hæmorrhoids,  
     55  
 Leech, a witty, 28, 30  
 Leech, breath of, hurtful to wounds  
     after eating garlic and onions, 88 ;  
     or commerce with menstruating  
     women, 88  
 Leech, intelligence of, 23, 28  
 Leech should beware of arsenic, 83,  
     85  
 Leech, the fellow of the, 22, 112  
 Leech, the qualities required by  
     Arderne in, 4-8  
 Leech, the temptations of, 21  
 Leech to be skilled in giving ene-  
     mata, 75  
 Leech to think for himself, 23, 34,  
     115  
 Leech, uncunning, 37, 38, 42, 86  
 Leeks a styptic, 67  
 Leeks bad for piles, 63  
 Legs, a case for fistula of, 46, 47  
 Lende3, the, 34, 56  
 Leonellus filius regis Angliæ, 102  
 Lepra, 95  
 Leprosy, piles a preventive from,  
     57  
 Lettuce, 101  
 Lexington, John de, 107  
 Lice on falcons, to destroy, 83  
 Licism, 81, 84, 85, 97  
 Licism fails to cure a great man, 86  
 Licism, preparation of, 44  
 Licism, use of, in wounds, 44, 46  
     84, 85  
 Lientery, 62

- Ligature, treatment of fistula by, 29  
 Ligatures, leech to a keep a stock of, 30  
 Liliū medicinæ quoted, 38, 55  
 Lily oil, 12  
 Lily root, 68  
 Limbs, bruises of, 97  
 Lincoln, 102  
 Linseed oil, 28  
 Lionel Duke of Clarence, 103; marriage of, xxix  
 Liquorice a good vehicle for myrobolans, 62  
 List bandages, 25, 26  
 Litharge, 11  
 Litharge of gold, 27  
 Litharge of silver, 27  
 Litharge, powder of, 54  
 Lithargyrum, varieties of, 117  
 Lithuanian crusade, 114, 128  
 Liver, action of, on the bowels, 78  
 Liver pain, 95  
 Liver vein of the arm, 54  
 Lobster, 41  
 Lombards skilled in clysters, 76  
 London, 102  
 London, men of, call hæmorrhoids piles, 55  
 Longanon, meaning of the word, 109  
 Longaon, 13, 14, 22, 32, 78  
 Longaon, chynnyngs of, 71  
 Longaon, to replace, 74  
 Louis XIV of France cured of fistula, 111  
 Lumbardy ink, 67  
 Lunæ, Nota de cognitione signorum, 16  
 Lupus, the urine in, 60  
 Lupus, treatment by licium, 85  
 Lure, xii, 13, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 30, 31, 33, 35, 38, 39, 40, 56, 58, 61, 64, 65, 67, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 77  
 Lure, against the going out of, 74  
 Lure, aposteme of, treatment for, 13  
 Lure, arrest of bleeding from, 80  
 Lure, bubo within, 37  
 Lure, cancer of, 86  
 Lure, flux of blood in, 55  
 Lure, inflammation of the, 11  
 Lure, itching of, 73  
 Lure, meaning of the word, 109  
 Lutum sapiem, 80  
 Lutum sapienciæ, the preparation of, 131  
 Lyvane juice, 73  
 M, meaning of the symbol, 113  
 McCaw, Col., quoted, xi, xii, xxxii  
 Macrobius quoted, 97, 133  
 Mallard grease, 12  
 Mallow, 49  
 Mallow and swine's grease, plaster of, 11  
 Mallow leaves, 68  
 Mallow, varieties of, 113  
 Mallows, an ointment of tame, 12  
 Mallows for a clyster, 75  
 Mammary abscess, a plaster for, 12  
 Mammary abscess, treatment of, 52  
 Mammary inflammation, a plaster for, 12  
 Mandragora, 101  
 Mania, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Manipulus, 12, 113  
 Manny, Sir Walter de, 108  
 Mantua, 103  
 Marice, 80, 85, 86  
 Marice, arrest of bleeding from, 80  
 Marice, cancer of, 86  
 Marice, canker of, treated by licium, 85  
 Marice, meaning of, 113  
 Marigold, juice of, 52  
 Marigold, or Calendula officinalis, 121  
 Massage after a clyster, 77  
 Massage for chronic constipation, 131  
 Masters in surgery superior to Barbers, xviii, xix, 71  
 Masters, the Four, account of, 123  
 Mastic, 63, 65, 67  
 Mastic oil, to prepare, 95  
 Mast, Sir John, 109  
 Matfelon is jacea nigra, 98  
 Mayor of Northampton, case of, 32  
 Meal, barley, 41, 66  
 Meal, dusty, 72, 129  
 Meal, rye, 50  
 Meal, wheat, 48  
 Medicine, epochs in, ix  
 Medicines not to be unduly complex, 27  
 Medicines to be adapted to the patient, 25  
 Mediolani, 102  
 Medlars for piles, 63



- Megatechni, 110  
 Mekisburg, Will de, 107  
 Melancholia, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Melancholy a cause of piles, 56  
 Melancholy confined in the spleen, 60  
 Melancholy confined in the gall bladder, 60  
 Melancholy, indi, 62  
 Melancholy, its cause, 57  
 Melancholy, signs of, 60  
 Melane, 102  
 Melilote or Colewort, 73, 130  
 Mel rosat, 28, 81  
 'Mene,' meaning of, 108  
 Mene, our Lord being, 3  
 Menorrhagia, purgatives in, 62  
 Menorrhagia, treatment of, 63  
 Menstruating women harmful to wounds, 88, 132  
 Menstruation provoked by bleeding from internal saphenous vein, 61  
 Menstruation restrained by bleeding from the external saphenous vein, 61  
 Merch, juice of, 30  
 Mercurialis, juice of, 93  
 Mercurialis, or Good Henry, 76, 130  
 Mercury, 53  
 Mesaraic veins, 78  
 Mesue, the plaster of, 113  
 Metacarpal bones, fistulæ of, 46  
 Micrology, Master Richard's, quoted, 55, 73  
 Microtechni, 110  
 Milk, a good vehicle for myrobalans, 62  
 Milk, artificial goat's, 72  
 Milk, goat's, a good vehicle for myrobalans, 63  
 Milk, goat's, as a clyster, 72  
 Milk, sour, for piles, 63  
 Millefoile, or the Yarrow, 63, 125  
 Milne, Dr. Stewart, quoted, 115, 120  
 Mind, the effect of, on the body, 6, 7, 8  
 Minorite's cure for fistula, 3, 110  
 Mint, 63  
 Mirfield, John, xxix  
 Miobalans, a good purgative, 62, 125  
 Miobalans, for a clyster, 75  
 Mirtelle, or garden bramble, 63, 102, 135  
 Molayne, or Verbascum Thapsus, 30, 117  
 Mondeville, Henri de, treatment of fistula by, xvii, xix; the ideal surgeon of, xx; formula for Ungt. Apostolicon, 130; on a hollow ulcer, 133; opinion of realgar, 132; on Propoleos, 134; use of ink by, 128  
 Montford, John de, 109  
 Montpellier, medical requirements at the University of, 110  
 Moon, directions to find the house of, 16, 17  
 Moon, influence of, on the body, 16, 17, 21  
 Moon, tables to find the house of, 16, 17  
 Moore, Dr. Norman, quoted, xxix  
 Morale, piles, 56  
 Morfee, 57, 83, 95, 124  
 Mormale, meaning of, 121  
 Mormale, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Mormale, treatment of, 53, 54  
 Morphew, meaning of the term, 124  
 Morphœa, 83  
 Morphœa, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Morstede, Thomas, xiv  
 Mortification of fistula, 35  
 Mouth, cancer of, 86  
 Mouth, cancer of, treatment by licium, 85  
 Mucilage of dragaunt for piles, 64  
 Mucilage of gum-arabick for piles, 64  
 Mucilage of tragacanth, 126  
 Mugwort or artemisia, 30, 49, 50, 117  
 Mulberry piles, 56  
 Mullein, honey of, xxxii  
 Mullein, juice of, 30, 64, 67, 73  
 Mullein, powers of, xxxi  
 Mummy, the various forms of, in medicinal use, 65, 67, 74, 127  
 Mundification of a wound, 27  
 Mutton fat, 73  
 Myristica, 102, 135  
 Myrrh, 27, 63  
 Myrtle for piles, 63, 102, 135  
 NAGHTSTACH, xi, 32

- Nail, dead, treatment of, 43, 44, 45  
 Names of no value, 83  
 Narbonne plaster, 42, 91  
 Narbonne, pun upon, 108  
 Narbonne, town of, 1  
 Narrow (*streit*) wounds, treatment of, 98  
 Nasal polypus, 79  
 Nastar, xxvii, 26, 27, 29, 35, 36, 65, 67  
 Nastar, meaning of, 113  
 Nastar of tree, 11, 26, 27, 29, 30, 67  
 Neat's bladder, preparation of, for an enema, 75  
 Neck, the source of all spasmodic diseases, 103  
 Need hath no law, 62,  
 Needle, the snouted, 9, 15, 24  
 Neirbon, a pun upon, 91  
 Neirbon, town of, 1  
 Nenufare, 102, 135  
 Nerbon plaster, 42, 91  
 Nettle, 50  
 Nettle juice, a styptic, 66  
 Nettle, juice of red, 66, 79  
 Nettle juice, the medicinal use of, 128  
 Nettle tops, 66  
 Newark, 41  
 Newark, Arderne lived in, 1  
 Nicaise, Prof. E., ix  
 Nitre, 53  
 Noli-me-tangere, meaning of the term, 125  
 Noli-me-tangere, the urine in, 60  
 Noli-me-tangere, treatment by *licium*, 85  
 Northampton, the Mayor of, cured, 2, 32  
 Northamptonshire, a patient from, with rectal cancer, 39  
 Nose, arrest of bleeding from, 50  
 Nose-bleeding, to stop, 66  
 Nottingham, a case of, 100  
 Nottingham, the Mayor of, 109  
 Nutrient enemata, 78  
 Nux moschata, or nutmeg, 102, 135  
  
 OAK bark, 74  
 Oculus lucidus, 85  
 Oil of almonds, to prepare, 95  
 Oil of camomile, to prepare, 26, 88, 94  
 Oil of crocus, 65  
 Oil of juniper, to prepare, 96  
 Oil of mastic, to prepare, 95  
 Oil of roses, 26, 73, 92, 93  
 Oil of rue, 76.  
 Oil of violets, 36, 67, 68, 69, 73, 93, 100  
 Oil roset, an infusion of, 11  
 Oil roset, its properties, 26, 93  
 Ointment of mallows, 12  
 Ointment for sleep, 101  
 Ointment for spots on skin, 50  
 Ointment of soap and brimstone, 44, 46, 50  
 Ointments, a method of melting, 90  
 Old men, a help to, 95  
 Oleum seriacum, preparation of, 91  
 Ol. olivæ, 26  
 Ol. roset, 11, 113  
 Olibanum or frankincense, 65, 127  
 Olivai, 65  
 Olive oil, 12, 26  
 Onions, bad for piles, 63  
 Operation, fees for, xx, xxii, xxiii, 6, 15, 111  
 Operation for fistula, 22  
 Operations, an ointment to produce anæsthesia during, 101  
 Opium, 69  
 Opium, bridled by crocus, 101  
 Opium, miconis, 101  
 Opium, thebaic, 101  
 Opium, the varieties of, 134  
 Oratio Dominica, 103  
 Orpiment used by falconers, 83  
 Orpine, meaning of the word, 128  
 Orpment, 73  
 Orpyne, juice of, 67  
 Orment, a name for arsenic, 83  
 Ostrich feather, the Prince of Wales', xxvii, 130  
 Oumfray, Adam, cured of fistula, 2  
 Owles and buboes, 27  
 Oyster shell for melting ointments, 27, 30, 70, 90  
  
 P, meaning of the symbol, 113  
 Panis cuculi, 67  
 Pantechni, 110  
 Pantegni, 110  
 Pap, children's, 72  
 Papaver albus, 101  
 Papaver niger, 100  
 Paralysis, treatment of, 96  
 Parvencis, or the periwinkle, 125  
 Passenham, the seneschal of, x  
 Passio iliaca, a clyster for, 75, 78



- Passio iliaca may come from tenesmus, 72 ; meaning of, 129  
 Passio iliaca, signs of, 59  
 Passio iliaca to be distinguished from piles, 58  
 Passionarius Galeni, the authorship of, 123  
 Passionary of Bartholomew of Salerno, quoted, 55  
 Passions of the spleen, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Paternoster, 91, 103  
 Patient, addresses to, 22  
 Patients are now impatient, 58  
 Payne, Dr. J. F., quoted, xxxii, 113, 130  
 Pears for piles, 63  
 Pede lyon, or lion's leaf, 48, 120  
 Pellitory, 130  
 Penile fistula, 14  
 Penny used as a measure, 54 ; as a weight, 64  
 Perinæal fistula, 13  
 Periodic clysters, 78  
 Peritory, 74, 76  
 Perseverance, value of, 3  
 Persia, king of, cured, 67, 128  
 Persian fire, or shingles, 133  
 Pestilence carbuncles, 81  
 Pestilence, the first, 1, 107  
 Pestilence, the second, 41, 119  
 Petite consoude, or the daisy, 30, 117  
 Petty morel, 31  
 Peyters, town of, 1 ; sack of, 108  
 Phlebotome, 125  
 Phlebotomy, after treatment of, 61  
 Phlebotomy and astrology, 16, 17  
 Phlebotomy at heel, 61  
 Phlebotomy a preventive of piles, 62  
 Phlebotomy, infrequent, a cause of piles, 57  
 Phlebotomy in piles, 60  
 Phlebotomy of vena salvatella, 61  
 Phlebotomy, periodic, 61  
 Phlebotomy, the hour for, 61  
 Phlegm, false, 58  
 Phthisis caused by piles, 57  
 Pictagoras, 16, 17, 115  
 Piles, a general name for rectal inflammation, 55  
 Piles, operation on thrombosed, 70  
 Piles symptoms of, 57  
 Pilgrims robbed in France, 101  
 Pills to provoke sleep, 101  
 Piper niger, 92  
 Piskre, 114  
 Pitch plaster, 81  
 Plague blotches, 81  
 Plantagenet, Henry, xiii  
 Plantain for piles, 40, 63, 74  
 Plantain, juice of, 63  
 Plantain water, 63, 74  
 Plaster, good for the gout, 96  
 Plaster of mallow and swine's grease, 11  
 Plaster of Paris, auripigmentum compared to, 82  
 Platearius, quoted, 79 ; account of the family of, 131  
 Pleurisy, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Pliny, quoted, 97 ; account of, 133  
 Ploge, 1, 107  
 Poitiers, town of, 1 ; sack of, 108  
 Polypus of nose, 79  
 Pomegranate flowers, 74  
 Popilion, 69, 76, 129  
 Popliteal space contains only fat, 48  
 Poppy, black, 100, 101 ; white, 101  
 Populeon, or Aspen ointment, 129  
 Populi, pulv. salus, 90  
 Porcelane for piles, 63  
 Porcelane, or purslane, 74, 126  
 Porres, juice of, 45  
 Porret, meaning of the word, 120  
 Porre; or leeks, juice of, 67  
 Porris, 45, 50, 74  
 Pott, Percivall, xiv  
 Poudre sanz pere, 26, 86  
 Powder of litharge, 54  
 Powder of walnut, 97  
 Powder of white glass, 44, 54  
 Prayer, the Lord's, 91, 103  
 Prayers used as a measure of time, xxix, 91, 133  
 Probe, xvii  
 Prognosis, advantages of, 38  
 Prognosis from amount of discharge in fistula, 36  
 Prognosis from bleeding piles, 59  
 Prognosis of fistula in ano, 6, 15, 21  
 Prognosis of fistula in fingers and toes, 42, 47  
 Prognosis, reasons for assigning too long a time, 6  
 Prolapse, King Henry IV cured of, xii, 74

- Prolapse of anus, xii, 74  
 Prolapse of rectum, 74  
 Propoleos, or bee bread, 101, 134  
 Proud flesh, 44, 46, 51, 79, 80  
 Pruritus ani, 73  
 Psidie, or pomegranate, 27, 65, 74, 67, 117, 127  
 Psillium, 74  
 Ptholomeus, or Ptolemy, the Physician, 16, 17, 115  
 Ptsik patients, a help for, 95  
 Pugillus, 113  
 Pulv. alkanet, 90  
 Pulv. alum, 67  
 Pulv. alum zucarín combust, 27  
 Pulv. arsenic, 85  
 Pulv. corrosiv. 65  
 Pulv. creoforoboron, 42, 44, 45, 46, 51  
 Pulv. creoforoboron not identified, 119  
 Pulv. cummin, 67  
 Pulv. Diatritonpipereon, 130  
 Pulv. grecus, preparation of, 41, 92  
 Pulv. hermodactile, perhaps colchicum, 81, 131  
 Pulv. humanus, its composition, 132  
 Pulv. incarnatyve, 53  
 Pulv. litharg., 54  
 Pulvis sanguis veneris, receipts for, 89  
 Pulvis sine pari, 26, 28, 32, 34, 36, 64, 65, 86, 87  
 Pulvis sine pari failed once, 89  
 Pulv. salus populi, 37, 40, 90  
 Pulv. trisantalorum, 74, 130  
 Pulv. vitriol: combust, 79  
 Pun on the word Neirbon, 91  
 Puns by Arderne, 118  
 Purgatives a cause of piles, 57  
 Purgatives a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Purgatives for piles, 62, 64  
 Pusche, treatment of, 52, 90, 91  
 Pustules cured by licium, 86  
 Pustules of skin, 50  
 Pustules, treatment of, 50, 51  
 Putrid flesh destroyed by salus populi, 37, 42  
 Puttenham, Sir Roger de, 109  
 Pythagoras, 16, 17, 115  
 QUARTAN ague, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Quicklime, 64, 92  
 Quicksilver, 40, 53  
 Quid pro quo, 27, 51, 65, 69, 72  
 Quinces for piles, 63  
 Quinque-nervia, or Ribwort, for piles, 63, 126  
 RAGADIE, meaning of, 13, 114  
 Rain water, 63, 74  
 Raisins a good vehicle for myrobalans, 62  
 Raisins, preparation of, for a laxative, 62  
 Ranula, 81  
 Razor, 15, 24, 32, 43, 47, 49, 71  
 Razor and lancet, difference between, 115  
 Realgar, 82, 83, 132  
 Rectal examination, importance of, 39  
 Rectal feeding advocated by Arderne, 78, 131  
 Rectal ulceration, 37-38  
 Reddleve-on-Soar, church of, 109  
 Rerepigre, explanation of the word, 130  
 Rerepigre for a clyster, 75  
 Rhagades, a cause of tenesmus, 13, 36, 73  
 Rhazes, account of, 16, 17, 115  
 Rhazes, the antidotary of, 100  
 Rhazes, the plaster of, 113  
 Rhazes, white ointment of, 119  
 Rheum, what it is, 48  
 Rhubarb, juice of, 40, 64, 68  
 Ribald's potion, composition of, 110, 134  
 Ribalds and Trowans in France, 100  
 Ribwort for piles, 63  
 Richard Anglicus, account of, 11, 113, 123  
 Richard, Maister, quoted, 55, 73  
 Richmond, the honour of, 108  
 Rigbone, meaning of, 115  
 Rigbone, nerves of, 70  
 Rigbone, the, 22, 34, 62, 70  
 Rixi, piles due to, 58  
 Rize, or Rue, 63  
 Roger de Barone, or Varone, account of, 123  
 Roger, Master, account of, 119, 123  
 Rogerina, account of, 123  
 Roland, Maister, of Parma, quoted, 55; account of, 119, 123  
 Rose oil, 26, 73  
 Rose, red, 74



- Rose water, 28, 63  
 Roses, oil of, preparation, 12, 92, 93  
 Roset water, 65  
 Rasis, or Rhazes, account of, 115  
 Ruby, the medicinal use of, 66  
 Running water, 74  
 Ruprecht, Knecht, 121  
 Ruptorye ointment, 14, 33  
 Ruptorye ointment, formula for, 118  
 Rye meal, 50, 51  
  
 SALERNI, regimen sanitatis, quoted, 119  
 Salerno, Gariopontus of, 123  
 Salerno, position of medical women at, 119  
 Salerno, the regimen, quoted, 119  
 Salernum, Archimathæus of, 111  
 Salernum, Bartholomew of, 123; formula for an Ungt. Apostolicon, 130  
 Salicet, William de, ideal surgeon of, xxiv; quoted, 119, 121, 125; treatment of fistula, xvi; use of ink by, 128, 133  
 Sal nitri, 53  
 Salt, 49, 50  
 Salt and water a good clyster, 76  
 Salus populi ointment, 27, 28, 30, 90  
 Salus populi, uses of, 37, 40  
 Salvatella vein, explanation of, 121  
 Sanguiboetes plaster, 43, 44, 45, 47  
 Sanguiboetes plaster not identified, 119  
 Sanguinis veneris confectio, 90; pulv., 89  
 Sanguis draconis, a styptic, 25, 27, 28, 38, 63, 65, 66, 116  
 Sanguis veneris, xxix, 26, 28, 33, 34, 35, 36, 76, 84, 87, 89, 90, 132  
 Sank damours is pulv. sang. veneris, 89  
 Sank de pucell. is pulv. sang. veneris, 89  
 Santalum for piles, 63  
 Saphena vein, bleeding from, 55  
 Saphena vein, inner, phlebotomy of, 61  
 Saphena vein, outer, phlebotomy of, 61  
 Saphena veins, anatomy of, 61  
 Sapphire, the medicinal use of, 127  
 Saracenic soap, 118  
 Sarcocolla, 27; explanation of, 117  
  
 Savoy palace burnt, xi  
 Scab, the, 81, 82, 83  
 Scabies, treatment of, by Arderne, 111  
 Scabious is jacea alba, 98  
 Scabious, juice of, 98  
 Scabious, powers of, xxxi  
 Scabious, valence of, to prepare, 97  
 Scabious with a heavenly flower, 98  
 Scammony, a cause of tenesmus, 63, 72  
 Scammony bad for piles, 63  
 Scarification for piles, 62  
 Scarification, or garsing, 52, 55  
 Scarifying a wound, 52, 55  
 Scariola, or chicory, 129  
 Scariole for clyster, 72  
 Scarth of pot, or potsherd, 82  
 Schefeld, John, cured of fistula, 2  
 Scomed honey, 30, 40, 65, 73  
 Scrope, Archdeacon of Richmond, Yorkshire, 114  
 Scrope, Lord, 114  
 Scrope, Master Giffrey, 14  
 Scrope, Sir Geoffrey, 114  
 Scrope, Sir Henry le, 114  
 Scrope, Stephen, 114  
 Scrotal sinuses, 13  
 Secrecy enjoined on leech lest barbers learn, 71  
 Secrecy inculcated, 8, 15, 29, 30, 71, 103, 114  
 Secrets to be kept, 8  
 Sengrene is rhubarb, 64  
 "Sequere me," the probe, xvii, 8, 15, 22, 33, 112  
 Sequestrum, Arderne removes a, 85  
 Serapion, also known as John Damascene, 124  
 Serapion, the younger, 113  
 Sharp, Samuel, x  
 Shears, 26, 87, 92  
 Sheep's tallow, 49, 73  
 Sheffield, John, 2, 108  
 Shelforde by Nottingham, the priest of, cured, 2  
 Shins, treatment of injuries to, 88, 98  
 Shirland, near Chesterfield, 2  
 Shirland, Sir Reginald Grey of, 109  
 Shooters' Hill known to Arderne, xxx  
 Signs of danger in bleeding piles, 56  
 Silence, the value of, 6, 8  
 Silk, white, leech to keep a stock of, 30

- Simple men, God reveals things to the, 2  
 Siringa, the syringe, 9, 112  
 Skin, an ointment for spots on, 50  
 Skin, flayings and excoriations of, 36, 40, 43, 46, 51, 90  
 Sklyse, a, 31  
 Sleep, a powder to produce, 100  
 Sleep, ointment and pills to provoke, 101  
 Sleep, to awaken a man from, 101, 102  
 Slip knot, 29  
 Smalach, juice of, 30  
 Smalach, or parsley, 49, 117  
 Snail, black, 53  
 Snaith, 1; priory of, 108  
 Sneezing of menstruous woman hurtful to wounds, 88  
 Snouted needle, 9, 15, 24  
 Soap and brimstone ointment, 44, 46  
 Soap and sulphur ointment, 46, 50  
 Soap, black and white, 76, 118  
 Solsequium, or endive, juice of, 52, 121  
 Sour milk for piles, 63  
 Spain, king of, xi  
 Sparge, or cataputia minor, 30, 117  
 Spasm, charm against, 102  
 Spatome, or spatula, 31, 40, 48, 69, 92, 93, 96  
 Spleen, diseases of, 60  
 Spleen pain, 95  
 Spleen, piles a preservative from the passions of the, 57  
 Spleen, the prison of melancholy, 60  
 Spodin for piles, 63  
 Sponge used for staunching blood, 24, 25, 32, 70  
 Sponges, 15, 24  
 Spoon, the cochlear, 24  
 Sprains, treatment of, 94, 97  
 Squibula, 38, 76, 77, 78  
 St. Anthony's fire, or ergotinism, 133  
 Sternutories, 102  
 Stick, injuries from, 54  
 Stoke Bardolf, Notts., 107  
 Stomach, abhominaciones of, 95, 133  
 Stomach ache, 95  
 Stomach, remedies to comfort, 95  
 Stomach, the urine in diseases of, 60  
 Stones, injuries from, 52, 54  
 Stopporte in Cheshire, 109  
 Storax, 63, 126  
 Strains, treatment of, 94, 97  
 Stupes, 25, 26, 28, 32, 44, 49, 67, 87, 100  
 Styptic herbs, 63  
 Styptic powder, 41  
 Styptics, Arderne's use of, 116  
 Styptics for blood, 15, 24, 25, 41, 65, 66, 74  
 Succus apii, 50  
 Suffumigation, 74  
 Sugar, 58  
 Sulphur, 40, 46, 48  
 Sulphur and soap ointment, 46, 50  
 Sulphur water, 82  
 Sumak for piles, 63, 67  
 Sun, influence of, on disease, 21  
 Sunburn, treatment of, 95  
 Superfluous flesh, 79, 80  
 Surgeon, the ideal, xix  
 Surgeon, the qualities required in, by Arderne, 4  
 Surgeons, dangers incurred by, xxvii  
 Surgeons, the Master, xviii  
 Sweating a treatment for piles, 63  
 Swine's bladder, preparation of, for an enema, 75  
 Swine's dung, medicinal use of, 128  
 Swine's grease and mallow plaster, 11  
 Swooning a result of tenesmus, 72  
 Swooning of a patient after operation, and treatment of, 32, 33  
 Sword wounds, treatment of, 52  
 Swyne's grease, 68, 69  
 Syringe, use of, 33, 34, 95  
 Syryng, 33, 34, 95  
 TALLOW, 49, 90  
 Tallow of goats, 73; hart, 90; pig, 97; sheep, 73, 90, 92  
 Tame mallows, 12  
 Tanny powder, 27  
 Tansy, 74  
 Tapsibarbastus and mel compounded, 73  
 Tapsimel, xxxii, 35, 36, 40, 65, 92, 117  
 Tapsimel, preparation of, 23, 31  
 Tapsivalencia, preparation of, xxxi, 69  
 Tartar, 46  
 Tartar of ale, 49  
 Tartar water, receipt for, 52



- Techni of Hippocrates, 110  
 Teeth, a remedy for disease of, 81  
 Tenasmon, 39, 56, 71  
 Tenasmon, prognosis of, 72  
 Tenasmon, signs of, 71  
 Tenasmon, treatment of, 72  
 Tendiculum, the dilator, xvii, 9, 15, 23, 24, 112  
 Tenesmus, *see* Tenasmon, 71  
 Tent, use of, for draining wounds, 32  
 Tent, wooden, 48  
 Tents, 34, 48, 100  
 Tents of lard, 48  
 Tents of linen, 32  
 Tents, to anchor, 34  
 Terebentyne, 31  
 Terra sigillata, or Lemnos earth, 27, 117  
 Testicles, cure of fistula in, 2  
 Testicles, means of cooling, 66  
 Testudo nigra, 53  
 Tetter, the, 83  
 Theodoric, 113, 119  
 Theriaca hyoscyami, 102  
 Thread, leech to keep a stock of, 30  
 Thread, the fourfold, 23  
 Thrombosed piles, 71  
 Thrush, treatment of, 32  
 Thumbs, fistulæ of, 42  
 Thus albus, 63, 95  
 Tickhill, near Brixtwell, 2, 108  
 Time measured by recitation of prayers, xxix, 91  
 Tinder, a styptic, 25, 66  
 Toad, skin coloured like that of a, 49  
 Tongs, Arderne's dilating, 35  
 Toulouse, 1; capture of, 108  
 Towell, 2; the meaning of the word, 109  
 Treacle of castoreum, 102  
 Treacle of hyoscyamus, 102  
 Trisantalorum, or confection of sandal, 130  
 Trochistes, a plaster made into, 91  
 Trowans and ribalds in France, 100  
 Truant, meaning of the word, 134  
 Turchill de Warwic, x  
 Turpentine, 31, 37  
 Tuxford in the Clay, 1, 107  
 Twelve Apostles, ointment of the, 130  
 ULCERATION, a cause of tenesmus, 72  
 Ulceration, chronic, of leg, a case of, 53  
 Ulceration of rectum, 37, 38  
 Ulcers, cancerous, 81, 86  
 Ulcers, fraudulent, 79  
 Ulcers not all buboes, 36  
 Ulcers not to be dressed too often, 87  
 Ulcus concavum, 133  
 Ulcus undesiccable, 13, 114  
 Unguentum Ægyptiacum, 119  
 Unguentum album, 28, 40, 47, 54, 119  
 Unguentum Apostolicon, 130  
 Unguentum Apostolorum, formula for, 130  
 Unguentum arabicum, 28, 35, 71, 92  
 Unguentum citrinum, 65  
 Unguentum dyuelyn, 53, 54  
 Unguentum fuscum, 50  
 Unguentum Gratia Dei, 130  
 Unguentum licium, 44  
 Unguentum Neyrbone, 33, 34  
 Unguentum nigrum, its composition and preparation of, 54  
 Unguentum ruptorium, 14, 33, 118  
 Unguentum sambuci, 114  
 Unguentum tapsivalentium, 69  
 Unguentum Veneris, 130  
 Unguentum vetus, 74  
 Unguentum viride, 27, 43, 44, 46, 54, 119  
 Unguentum viride græci, 53  
 Universities, approximate dates of, ix  
 Unkunnyng leeches, 37, 38, 42, 86  
 Untholefulness of patients, comment on, 58  
 Urethral fistula, 14, 32  
 Urinary fistula, 14  
 Urine, burning of the, 95  
 Urine in disease of the stomach peassyue, *i.e.* green or eruginous, 60  
 Urine in noli-me-tangere, 60  
 Urine, the condition of, in piles, 59  
 Urine the, in lupus, 60  
 Uve, piles, 56  
 VALENCE of scabious, 129  
 Valence of scabious, to prepare, 97, 129  
 Valence of scabious, why so called, 98  
 Valence of tapsibarbastus, 69  
 Valence of worinode, 98

- Valentia scabious, xxxi  
 Varone, Roger de, account of, 123  
 Veins, anatomy of saphenous, 61  
 Vena basilica, 54  
 Vena hepatica, explanation of the term, 121  
 Vena hepatica of arm, 121  
 Vena kilyu<sub>3</sub>, its anatomy, 57  
 Vena mesaraica, 78  
 Vena salvatella, anatomy of, 125  
 Vena salvatella, bleeding from, 61  
 Veneris pulv. sanguinis, xxix, 26, 28, 33, 89, 90,  
 Venomous apostemes, 81  
 Ventose, or cupping instruments, 120  
 Ventosyng, or cupping, 62  
 Verbum caro factum est, 104, 135  
 "Verbum caro factum," value of the words against evil, 135  
 Verdigris, 49, 50  
 Vermilion, 82  
 Vertgrese, 65, 86  
 Vertgrese, its properties, 82  
 Verucal<sub>3</sub> piles, 56  
 Vervain, 63, 74  
 Violet, 76  
 Violet oil, 67, 69, 73  
 Violet oil, a method of preparing, 93  
 Virga pastoris, or the Teasel, 40, 119  
 Virgins rare, 90  
 Viride es, 82  
 Viride græci ungt., 53  
 Virtues in woods, stones, and herbs, 104  
 Vitriol, 64, 65, 40, 41  
 Vitriol combust, 86  
 Vitriol plaster, preparation of, 81  
 Vitriol, uses of, 79, 80  
 Vitriol, varieties of, 79  
 Vitriole<sub>3</sub>, varieties of, 79  
 Vitriolum arabicum, 79  
 Vitriolum cipurinum, 79  
 Vitriolum combustum, 79  
 Vitriolum romanum, 79  
  
 WALES', Prince of, plumes, xxvii  
 Wales, Prince of (the Black Prince), mentioned, 2, 3  
 Walwort, juice of, 25, 97  
 Walwort, powder of, 25, 97  
 Walwort, the dwarf elder, 30, 49, 50, 66, 116, 117, 133  
 Walwort, the virtues of, 97  
 Warsop, hamlet of, 107  
 Water, cold, a styptic, 66  
 Watercress, 76  
 Water of almonds, to prepare, 95  
 Water of alun, 82  
 Water of plantain, 63, 74  
 Water of sulphur, 82  
 Wax, virgin, 30  
 Welked, meaning of word, 129  
 Wet cupping for piles, 62  
 Weybread, or Plantain, 117  
 Wheat bran for a clyster, 75  
 Wheat flour, 32  
 Wheaten meal, 48, 63  
 Whey, a good vehicle for myrobalsans, 62  
 White Friars church, a, John Arderne buried in, 134  
 White Friars, the church of the, 133  
 White of egg, 54  
 White ointment, varieties of, 54, 119  
 White poppy, 101  
 Whitlow, the, 42  
 Wild fire, an ointment for, 91  
 Wild fire, or eysipelas, 40, 133  
 Wilton, Lord Grey of, cured of fistula, 2  
 Wind relieved by a clyster, 28  
 Wine, great, 63  
 Wine to be used for wetting licium, 86  
 Wiseman, Richard, xiv  
 Witty men, 28, 30  
 Womb, 25, 26, 30, 39, 56, 59, 62, 63, 77, 78, 97  
 Womb, purging of, 71  
 Wombe, meaning of, 113  
 Women, medical, position of, at the school of Salerno, 119  
 Women, menstruating, hurtful to wounds, 88, 132  
 Woodall, John, xiv  
 Woodbine, 30  
 Woodbine, juice of, 44  
 Woodbynd, or woodbine, 117  
 Wooden tent, 48  
 Woodsour or alleluia, 68  
 Woods, stones and herbs, virtues in, 104, 135  
 Wormode, or wormwood, 30, 117, 174  
 Wormwood, valence of, 98  
 Wound, signs of a mundified, 27  
 Wounds, incurable, treatment of, 96



- Wounds not to be dressed too often, 87  
 Wounds, the drier the better, 28  
 Wounds, treatment of, 98, 100  
 Wounds, when to be re-dressed, 88  
 Wrayste, the, xvii, 9, 23, 24, 112  
 Wyne, great, 63
- YARD, burning of, 96  
 Ydropsy, piles a preservative from, 57  
 Yera pigra, 130
- Yerd, cancer of, 92  
 Yolks of egg, 11, 65. *See* Egg  
 Ypocras, 21, 115  
 Ypoquistid, or Hypocistis, for piles, 63, 126
- ZEKYNG, treatment of, 52  
 Zingiber, 68  
 Zizannie, or tares, 100, 134  
 Zodiac and surgery, 16  
 Zucaryne alum, 81  
 Zuccary, or sugar, 68



















